

HP Prime Graphing Calculator  
*User Guide*



Edition 1

Part Number NW280-200X

### **Legal Notices**

This manual and any examples contained herein are provided "as is" and are subject to change without notice. Hewlett-Packard Company makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this manual, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement and fitness for a particular purpose.

Hewlett-Packard Company shall not be liable for any errors or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this manual or the examples contained herein.

### **Product Regulatory & Environment Information**

Product Regulatory and Environment Information is provided on the CD shipped with this product.

Copyright © 2013 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation of this manual is prohibited without prior written permission of Hewlett-Packard Company, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

## Printing History

Edition 1

May 2013



# Contents

---

## Preface

Manual conventions .....	9
Notice .....	10

## 1 Getting started

Before starting .....	9
On/off, cancel operations.....	10
The display .....	11
Sections of the display .....	12
Navigation.....	14
Touch gestures .....	14
The keyboard .....	15
Context-sensitive menu .....	17
Entry and edit keys.....	17
Shift keys.....	19
Adding text.....	20
Math keys .....	20
Menus .....	25
Toolbox menus.....	26
Input forms .....	26
System-wide settings .....	27
Home settings .....	27
Specifying a Home setting.....	31
Mathematical calculations.....	32
Choosing an entry type .....	33
Entering expressions .....	34
Reusing previous expressions and results.....	36
Storing a value in a variable.....	39
Complex numbers .....	40
Sharing data .....	40
Online Help .....	42

## 2 Reverse Polish Notation (RPN)

History in RPN mode .....	44
Sample calculations.....	45
Manipulating the stack.....	47

## 3 Computer algebra system (CAS)

CAS view.....	51
---------------	----

CAS calculations .....	52
Settings .....	53

## 4 An introduction to HP apps

Application Library .....	61
App views .....	62
Symbolic view .....	63
Symbolic Setup view .....	64
Plot view .....	64
Plot Setup view .....	65
Numeric view .....	66
Numeric Setup view .....	68
Quick example.....	69
Common operations in Symbolic view.....	71
Symbolic view: Summary of menu buttons.....	76
Common operations in Symbolic Setup view.....	76
Common operations in Plot view .....	77
Zoom .....	78
Trace.....	84
Plot view: Summary of menu buttons.....	86
Common operations in Plot Setup view.....	86
Configure Plot view .....	86
Common operations in Numeric view .....	90
Zoom .....	90
Evaluating.....	92
Custom tables.....	93
Numeric view: Summary of menu buttons.....	94
Common operations in Numeric Setup view.....	95
Combining Plot and Numeric Views.....	96
Adding a note to an app.....	96
Creating an app.....	97
App functions and variables .....	99

## 5 Function app

Getting started with the Function app .....	103
Analyzing functions .....	109
The Function Variables .....	114
Summary of FCN operations.....	116

## 6 Advanced Graphing app

Getting started with the Advanced Graphing app .....	118
--	-----

## 7 Geometry

Getting started with the Geometry app.....	123
--	-----

Plot view in detail.....	129
Plot Setup view.....	134
Symbolic view in detail.....	136
Symbolic Setup view.....	138
Numeric view in detail.....	138
Geometric objects.....	141
Geometric transformations.....	148
Geometry functions and commands.....	151
Symbolic view: Cmds menu.....	152
Numeric view: Cmds menu.....	160
Other Geometry functions.....	164

## 8 Spreadsheet

Getting started with the Spreadsheet app.....	171
Basic operations.....	175
Navigation, selection and gestures.....	175
Cell references.....	176
Cell naming.....	176
Entering content.....	177
Copy and paste.....	180
External references.....	180
Referencing variables.....	181
Buttons and keys.....	183
Formatting options.....	184
Spreadsheet functions.....	186

## 9 Statistics 1Var app

Getting started with the Statistics 1Var app.....	187
Entering and editing statistical data.....	191
Computed statistics.....	194
Plotting.....	195
Plot types.....	196
Setting up the plot (Plot Setup view).....	197
Exploring the graph.....	197

## 10 Statistics 2Var app

Getting started with the Statistics 2Var app.....	199
Entering and editing statistical data.....	204
Numeric view menu items.....	205
Defining a regression model.....	206
Computed statistics.....	208
Plotting statistical data.....	210
Plot view: menu items.....	211

Plot setup .....	211
Predicting values .....	212
Troubleshooting a plot .....	213

## 11 Inference app

Getting started with the Inference app .....	215
Importing statistics .....	219
Hypothesis tests .....	221
One-Sample Z-Test .....	222
Two-Sample Z-Test .....	223
One-Proportion Z-Test .....	224
Two-Proportion Z-Test .....	225
One-Sample T-Test .....	227
Two-Sample T-Test .....	228
Confidence intervals .....	229
One-Sample Z-Interval .....	229
Two-Sample Z-Interval .....	230
One-Proportion Z-Interval .....	231
Two-Proportion Z-Interval .....	232
One-Sample T-Interval .....	232
Two-Sample T-Interval .....	233

## 12 Solve app

Getting started with the Solve app .....	235
One equation .....	235
Several equations .....	239
Limitations .....	240
Solution information .....	240

## 13 Linear Solver app

Getting started with the Linear Solver app .....	243
Menu items .....	245

## 14 Parametric app

Getting started with the Parametric app .....	247
---	-----

## 15 Polar app

Getting started with the Polar app .....	253
--	-----

## 16 Sequence app

Getting started with the Sequence app .....	257
Another example: A table of cubes .....	261

## 17 Finance app



Getting Started with the Finance app.....	263
Cash flow diagrams .....	265
Time value of money (TVM) .....	266
TVM calculations: Another example.....	267
Calculating amortizations.....	268
<b>18 Triangle Solver app</b>	
Getting started with the Triangle Solver app .....	271
Choosing triangle types .....	273
Special cases .....	273
<b>19 The Explorer apps</b>	
Linear Explorer app.....	275
Quadratic Explorer app.....	277
Trig Explorer app.....	280
<b>20 Functions and commands</b>	
Keyboard functions .....	285
Math menu.....	288
Numbers .....	288
Arithmetic.....	289
Trigonometry.....	291
Hyperbolic .....	292
Probability.....	292
List.....	297
Matrix.....	297
Special .....	297
CAS menu.....	298
Algebra .....	299
Calculus .....	299
Solve .....	302
Rewrite.....	304
Integer .....	306
Polynomial.....	307
Plot.....	311
App menu .....	312
Function app functions .....	312
Solve app functions .....	313
Spreadsheet functions .....	314
Statistics 1Var app functions .....	330
Statistics 2Var app functions .....	331
Inference app functions .....	332
Finance app functions .....	333

Linear Solver app functions .....	334
Triangle Solver app functions .....	335
Linear Explorer functions .....	336
Quadratic Explorer functions .....	336
Geometry app function .....	337
Common app functions .....	337
Ctlg menu .....	338
Creating your own functions .....	371

## 21 Variables

Home variables .....	377
App variables .....	378
Function app variables .....	378
Geometry app variables .....	379
Spreadsheet app variables .....	379
Advanced Graphing app variables .....	380
Solve app variables .....	380
Statistics 1Var app variables .....	381
Statistics 2Var app variables .....	383
Inference app variables .....	385
Parametric app variables .....	387
Polar app variables .....	387
Finance app variables .....	388
Linear Solver app variables .....	388
Triangle Solver app variables .....	389
Linear Explorer app variables .....	389
Quadratic Explorer app variables .....	389
Trig Explorer app variables .....	389
Sequence app variables .....	390

## 22 Units and constants

Units .....	391
Unit calculations .....	392
Unit tools .....	394
Physical constants .....	395
List of constants .....	396

## 23 Lists

Create a list in the List Catalog .....	399
The List Editor .....	401
Deleting lists .....	403
Lists in Home view .....	403
List functions .....	405

Finding statistical values for lists .....	408
<b>24 Matrices</b>	
Creating and storing matrices .....	412
Working with matrices .....	413
Matrix arithmetic .....	416
Solving systems of linear equations .....	419
Matrix functions and commands .....	421
Matrix functions .....	422
Examples .....	426
<b>25 Notes and Info</b>	
The Note Catalog .....	429
The Note Editor .....	430
<b>26 Programming</b>	
The Program Catalog .....	438
Creating a new program .....	441
The Program Editor .....	441
The HP Prime programming language .....	450
The User Keyboard: Customizing key presses .....	455
App programs .....	459
Program commands .....	464
Commands under the Tmpl menu .....	465
Block .....	465
Branch .....	465
Loop .....	466
Variable .....	470
Function .....	470
Commands under the Cmds menu .....	470
Strings .....	470
Drawing .....	473
Matrix .....	480
App Functions .....	482
Integer .....	483
I/O .....	485
More .....	489
Variables and Programs .....	492
<b>27 Integer arithmetic</b>	
The default base .....	514
Changing the default base .....	515
Examples of integer arithmetic .....	516
Integer manipulation .....	517

Base functions .....	518
<b>28 Limiting functionality</b>	
Exam configurations .....	519
Modifying the default configuration .....	520
Creating a new configuration .....	521
Activating Exam Mode .....	522
Cancelling exam mode .....	524
Modifying configurations .....	524
To change a configuration .....	524
Deleting configurations .....	524
<b>A Glossary</b>	
<b>B Troubleshooting</b>	
Calculator not responding .....	531
To reset .....	531
To restore factory settings .....	531
If the calculator does not turn on .....	531
Operating limits .....	532
Status messages .....	532
<b>C Product Regulatory Information</b>	
Federal Communications Commission Notice .....	535
European Union Regulatory Notice .....	537
<b>Index</b> .....	541

# Preface



---





## Manual conventions

The following conventions are used in this manual to represent the keys that you press and the menu options that you choose to perform operations.





- A key that initiates an unshifted function is represented by an image of that key:

 , etc.

- A key combination that initiates a shifted function (or inserts a character) is represented by the appropriate shift key ( or ) followed by the key for that function or character:

  initiates the natural exponential function and   inserts the pound character (#)

The name of the shifted function may also be given in parentheses after the key combination:

  (Clear),   (Setup)



- A key pressed to insert a digit is represented by that digit:

5, 7, 8, etc.

- All fixed on-screen text—such as screen and field names—appear in bold:

**CAS Settings**, **XSTEP**, **Decimal Mark**, etc.





- A menu item selected by touching the screen is represented by an image of that item:

, , .

Note that you must use your finger to select a menu item. Using a stylus or something similar will not select whatever is touched.

- Items you can select from a list, and characters on the entry line, are set in a non-proportional font, as follows:

Function, Polar, Parametric, Ans, etc.

- Cursor keys are represented by , , , and . You use these keys to move from field to field on a screen, or from one option to another in a list of options.
- Error messages are enclosed inverted commas:  
"Syntax Error"

## Notice

This manual and any examples contained herein are provided as-is and are subject to change without notice. Except to the extent prohibited by law, Hewlett-Packard Company makes no express or implied warranty of any kind with regard to this manual and specifically disclaims the implied warranties and conditions of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose and Hewlett-Packard Company shall not be liable for any errors or for incidental or consequential damage in connection with the furnishing, performance or use of this manual and the examples herein.

© 1994–1995, 1999–2000, 2003–2006, 2010–2013  
Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

The programs that control your HP Prime are copyrighted and all rights are reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation of those programs without prior written permission from Hewlett-Packard Company is also prohibited.

[For hardware warranty information, please refer to the HP Prime Quick Start Guide.](#)

Product Regulatory and Environment Information is provided on the CD shipped with this product.

# Getting started

---

The HP Prime Graphing Calculator is an easy-to-use yet powerful graphing calculator designed for secondary mathematics education and beyond. It offers hundreds of functions and commands, and includes a computer algebra system (CAS) for symbolic calculations.

In addition to an extensive library of functions and commands, the calculator comes with a set of HP apps. A HP app is a special application designed to help you explore a particular branch of mathematics or to solve a problems of a particular type. For example, there is a HP app that will help you explore geometry and another to help you explore parametric equations. There are also apps to help you solve systems of linear equations and to solve time-value-of-money problems.

The HP Prime also has its own programming language you can use to explore and solve mathematical problems.

Functions, commands, apps and programming are covered in detail later in this guide. In this chapter, the general features of the calculator are explained, along with common interactions and basic mathematical operations.

## Before starting

Charge the battery fully before using the calculator for the first time. To charge the battery, either:

- Connect the calculator to a computer using the USB cable that came in the package with your HP Prime. (The PC needs to be on for charging to occur.)
- Connect the calculator to a wall outlet using the HP-provided wall adapter.

When the calculator is on, a battery symbol appears in the title bar of the screen. Its appearance will indicate how much power the battery has. A flat battery will take approximately 4 hours to become fully charged.

### **Battery Warning**


- To reduce the risk of fire or burns, do not disassemble, crush or puncture the battery; do not short the external contacts; and do not dispose of the battery in fire or water.
- To reduce potential safety risks, only use the battery provided with the calculator, a replacement battery provided by HP, or a compatible battery recommended by HP.
- Keep the battery away from children.
- If you encounter problems when charging the calculator, stop charging and contact HP immediately.

### **Adapter Warning**


- To reduce the risk of electric shock or damage to equipment, only plug the AC adapter into an AC outlet that is easily accessible at all times.
- To reduce potential safety risks, only use the AC adapter provided with the calculator, a replacement AC adapter provided by HP, or an AC adapter purchased as an accessory from HP.

## On/off, cancel operations



### To turn on

Press  to turn on the calculator.

### To cancel

When the calculator is on, pressing the  key cancels the current operation. For example, it will clear whatever you have entered on the entry line. It will also close a menu and a screen.

### To turn off


Press   (Off) turn the calculator off.

To save power, the calculator turns itself off after several minutes of inactivity. All stored and displayed information is saved.



## The Home View

Home view is the starting point for many calculations. Most mathematical functions are available in the Home view. Some additional functions are available in the computer algebra system (CAS). A history of your previous calculation is retained and you can re-use a previous calculation or its result.

To display Home view, press .

## The CAS View

CAS view is the where you use the computer algebra system. CAS view enables you to perform symbolic calculations. It is largely identical to Home view—it even has its own history of past calculations—but the CAS view offers some additional functions.

To display CAS view, press .

## Protective cover






The calculator is provided with a slide cover to protect the display and keyboard. Remove the cover by grasping both sides of it and pulling down.

You can reverse the slide cover and slide it onto the back of the calculator. This will ensure that you do not misplace the cover while you are using the calculator.




To prolong the life of the calculator, always place the cover over the display and keyboard when you are not using the calculator.

## The display

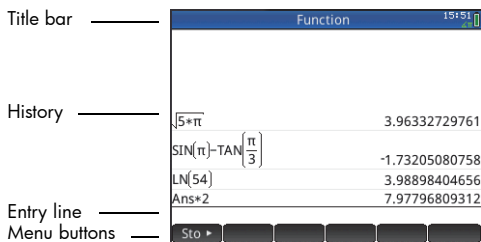
### To adjust the contrast


To adjust the contrast of the display, press and hold , then press the  or  key to increase or decrease the contrast. The contrast will change with each press of the  or  key.

### To clear the display

- Press  or  to clear the entry line.
- Press  (Clear) to clear the entry line and the history.


## Sections of the display




Home view has four sections (shown above). The **title bar** shows either the screen name or the name of the app you are currently using—`Function` in the example above. It also shows the time, a battery power indicator, and a number of symbols that indicate various calculator settings. These are explained below. The **history** displays a record of your past calculations. The **entry line** displays the object you are currently entering or modifying. The object could be a parameter, expression, list, matrix, line of programming code, etc. The **menu buttons** are options that are relevant to the current display. These options are selected by tapping the corresponding menu button. (Only a labeled button has a function.) You close a menu without making a selection from it by pressing .


**Annunciators.** Annunciators are symbols or characters that appear in the title bar. They indicate that certain settings are current, and also provide time and battery power information.







Annunciator	Meaning
$\sphericalangle^\circ$ [Lime green]	The angle mode setting is currently degrees.
$\sphericalangle\pi$ [Lime green]	The angle mode setting is currently radians.


<b>Annunciator</b>	<b>Meaning (Continued)</b>
<b>IS</b> [Cyan]	The Shift key is active. The function shown in blue on a key will be activated when a key is pressed. Press  to cancel shift mode.
<b>CAS</b> [White]	You are working in CAS view, not Home view.
<b>A...Z</b> [orange]	The Alpha key is active. The character shown in orange on a key will be entered in <i>uppercase</i> when a key is pressed. See “Adding text” on page 20 for more information.
<b>a...z</b> [orange]	The Alpha–Shift key combination is active. The character shown in orange on a key will be entered in <i>lowercase</i> when a key is pressed. See “Adding text” on page 20 for more information.
<b>IU</b> [Yellow]	The user keyboard is active. All the following key presses will enter the customized objects associated with the key. See “The User Keyboard: Customizing key presses” on page 455 for more information.
<b>IU</b> [Yellow]	The user keyboard is active. The next key press will enter the customized object associated with the key. See “The User Keyboard: Customizing key presses” on page 455 for more information.
[Time]	Current time. The default is 24-hour format, but you can choose AM–PM format. See “Home settings” on page 27 for more information.

Annunciator	Meaning (Continued)
	Battery-charge indicator.

## Navigation

The HP Prime offers two modes of navigation: touch and keys. In many cases, you can tap on an icon, field, menu, or object to select (or deselect) it. For example, you can open the Function app by tapping once on its icon in the Application Library. However, to open the Application Library, you will need to press a key: .

Selections can often be made either by tapping or by using the keys. For instance, as well as tapping an icon in the Application Library, you can also press the cursor keys—, , , —until the app you want to open is highlighted, and then press . In the Application Library, you can also type the first one or two letters of an app’s name to highlight the app. Then either tap the app’s icon or press  to open it.

Sometimes a touch or key–touch combination is available. For example, you can deselect a toggle option either by tapping twice on it, or by using the arrow keys to move to the field and then tapping a touch button along the bottom of the screen (in this case .

Note that you must use your finger to select an item by touch. Using a stylus or something similar will not select whatever is touched.

## Touch gestures

In addition to selection by tapping, there are other touch-related operations available to you:

To quickly move from page to page, **flick**:

Place a finger on the screen and quickly swipe it in the desired direction (up or down).

To pan, **drag** your finger horizontally or vertically across the screen.

To quickly zoom in, make an **open pinch**:

Place the thumb and a finger close together on the screen and move them apart. Only lift them from the screen when you reach the desired magnification.

To quickly zoom out, make an **closed pinch**:

Place the thumb and a finger some distance apart on the screen and move them toward each other. Only lift them from the screen when you reach the desired magnification.

Note that pinching to zoom only works in applications that feature zooming (such as where graphs are plotted). In other applications, pinching will do nothing, or do something other than zooming. For example, in the Spreadsheet app, pinching will change the width of a column or the height of a row.

## The keyboard

The numbers in the legend below refer to the parts of the keyboard described in the illustration below the legend.

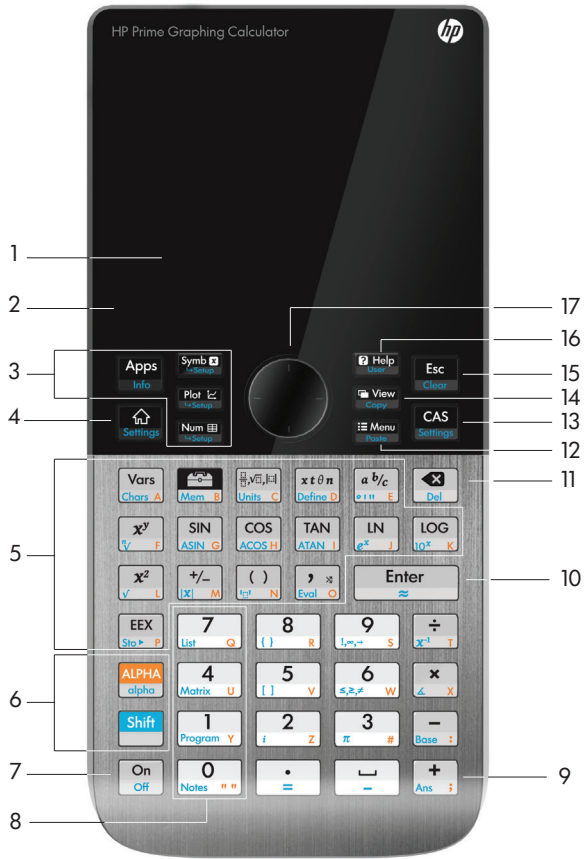
Number	Feature
1	LCD and touch-screen: 320 × 240 pixels
2	Context-sensitive touch-button menu
3	HP Apps keys
4	Home view and preference settings
5	Common math and science functions
6	Alpha and Shift keys
7	On, Cancel and Off key
8	List, matrix, program, and note catalogs
9	Last Answer key (Ans)
10	Enter key
11	Backspace and Delete key

---

**Number    Feature**

---

- 12    Menu (and Paste) key
  - 13    CAS (and CAS preferences) key
  - 14    View (and Copy) key
  - 15    Escape (and Clear) key
  - 16    Help key
  - 17    Rocker wheel (for cursor movement)
- 



## Context-sensitive menu

A context-sensitive menu occupies the bottom line of the screen.














The options available depend on the context, that is, the view you are in. Note that the menu items are activated by touch.

There are two types of buttons on the context-sensitive menu:

- menu button: tap to display a pop-up menu. These buttons have square corners along their top (such as **Zoom** in the illustration above).
- command button: tap to initiate a command. These buttons have rounded corners (such as **Go To** in the illustration above).















## Entry and edit keys

The primary entry and edit keys are:



Keys	Purpose
 to 	Enter numbers
 or 	Cancels the current operation or clears the entry line.
	Enters an input or executes an operation. In calculations,  acts like “=”. When  or  is present as a menu key,  acts the same as pressing  or  .












Keys	Purpose (Continued)
	For entering a negative number. For example, to enter $-25$ , press  25. <i>Note: this is not the same operation that is performed by the subtraction key ().</i>
	Math template: Displays a palette of pre-formatted templates representing common arithmetic expressions.
	Enters the independent variable (that is, either $X$ , $T$ , $\theta$ , or $N$ , depending on the app that is current).
	Relations palette: Displays a palette of comparison operators and Boolean operators.
	Special symbols palette: Displays a palette of common math and Greek characters.
	Automatically inserts the degree, minute, or second symbol according to the context.
	Backspace. Deletes the character to the left of the cursor. It will also return the highlighted field to its default value, if it has one.
	Delete. Deletes the character to the right of the cursor.
(Clear)	Clears all data on the screen (including the history). On a settings screen—for example Plot Setup—returns all settings to their default values.





Keys	Purpose (Continued)
   	<p>Cursor keys: Moves the cursor around the display. Press   to move to the end of a menu or screen, or   to move to the start.</p>
 	<p>Displays all the available characters. To enter a character, use the cursor keys to highlight it, and then tap . To select multiple characters, select one, tap , and continue likewise before pressing . There are many pages of characters. You can jump to a particular Unicode block by tapping  and selecting the block. You can also flick from page to page.</p>

















## Shift keys



There are two shift keys that you use to access the operations and characters printed on the bottom of the keys:  and .

Key	Purpose
	<p>Press  to access the operations printed in blue on a key. For instance, to access the settings for Home view, press  .</p>
	<p>Press the  key to access the characters printed in orange on a key. For instance, to type Z, press  and then press . For a lowercase letter, press   and then the letter. To type more than one letter, press  a second time to lock the alpha shift.</p>


# Adding text

The text you can enter directly is shown by the orange characters on the keys. These characters can only be entered in conjunction with the  and  keys. Both uppercase and lowercase characters can be entered, as explained in the following.

Keys	Effect
	Makes the next character uppercase
 	Lock mode: makes all characters uppercase until the mode is reset
	With uppercase locked, makes the next character lowercase
 	Makes the next character lowercase
  	Lock mode: makes all characters lowercase until the mode is reset
	With lowercase locked, makes the next character uppercase
 	With lowercase locked, makes all characters uppercase until the mode is reset
A	Reset uppercase lock mode
   	Reset lowercase lock mode

You can also enter text (and other characters) by displaying the characters palette:  .

# Math keys

The most common math functions have their own key on the keyboard (or a key in combination with the  key).

**Example 1:** To calculate  $\text{SIN}(10)$ , press  $\boxed{\text{SIN}}$  10 and press  $\boxed{\text{Enter}}$ . The answer displayed is  $-0,544\dots$  (if your angle measure setting is radians).

**Example 2:** To find the square root of 256, press  $\boxed{\text{Shift}}$   $\boxed{\sqrt{x^2}}$  256 and press  $\boxed{\text{Enter}}$ . The answer displayed is 16. Notice that the  $\boxed{\text{Shift}}$  key initiates the operator represented in blue on the next key pressed (in this case  $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$  on the  $\boxed{\sqrt{x^2}}$  key).

The mathematical functions not represented on the keyboard are on the **Math**, **CAS**, and **Catlg** menus (see chapter 20, “Functions and commands”, starting on page 283).

Note that the order in which you enter operands and operators is determined by the entry mode. By default, the entry mode is *textbook*, which means that you enter operands and operators just as you would if you were writing the expression on paper. If your preferred entry mode is Reverse Polish Notation, the order of entry is different. (See chapter 2, “Reverse Polish Notation (RPN)”, starting on page 43.)

## Math template

The math template key ( $\boxed{\frac{\sqrt{\phantom{x}}}{\text{num.}}} \boxed{\text{G}}$ ) helps you insert the framework for common calculations (and for vectors, matrices, and hexagesimal numbers). It displays a palette of



pre-formatted outlines to which you add the constants, variables, and so on. Just tap on the template you want (or use the arrow keys to highlight it and press  $\boxed{\text{Enter}}$ ). Then enter the components needed to complete the calculation.

**Example:** Suppose you want to find the cube root of 945:

1. In Home view, press  $\boxed{\frac{\sqrt{\phantom{x}}}{\text{num.}}} \boxed{\text{G}}$ .
2. Select  $\sqrt[3]{\phantom{x}}$ .

The skeleton or framework for your calculation now appears on the entry line:  $\sqrt[3]{\phantom{x}}$

3. Each box on the template needs to be completed:

4. Press  to display the result: 9.813...




The template palette can save you a lot of time, especially with calculus calculations.



You can display the palette at any stage in defining an expression. In other words, you don't need to start out with a template. Rather, you can embed one or more templates at any point in the definition of an expression.

## Math shortcuts


As well as the math template, there are other similar screens that offer a palette of math characters. For example,



!	→	∞	°	'	~	¯	∧
α	β	γ	Δ	δ	ε	θ	∩
μ	ρ	Σ	σ	τ	ψ	χ	Ω

pressing   displays the special symbols palette, shown at the right. Select a character by tapping it (or scrolling to it and pressing ).

A similar palette—the relations palette—is displayed if you press  . The palette displays operators useful in math and programming. Again, just tap the character you want.

<	≤	>	≥
≠	≠	AND	OR
NOT	XOR		


Other math shortcut keys include . Pressing this key inserts an  $X$ ,  $T$ ,  $\theta$ , or  $N$  depending on what app you are using. (This is explained further in the chapters describing the apps.)

Similarly, pressing   enters a degree, minute, or second character. It enters  $^\circ$  if no degree symbol is part of your expression; enters  $'$  if the previous entry is a value in degrees; and enters  $"$  if the previous entry is a value in minutes. Thus entering:

36   40   20  

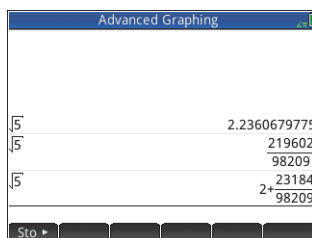
yields  $36^\circ 40' 20''$ . See “Hexagesimal numbers” on page 23 for more information.

## Fractions

The fraction key () cycles through three varieties of fractional display. If the current answer is the decimal

fraction 5.25, pressing  $\left[ \frac{a}{b/c} \right]$  converts the answer to the vulgar fraction  $21/4$ . If you press  $\left[ \frac{a}{b/c} \right]$  again, the answer is converted to a mixed number fraction ( $5 + 1/4$ ). If pressed again, the display returns to the decimal fraction (5.25).

The HP Prime will approximate fraction and mixed number representations in cases where it cannot find exact ones. For example, enter  $\sqrt{5}$  to see the decimal approximation:



2.236.... Press  $\left[ \frac{a}{b/c} \right]$  once to see  $\frac{930249}{416020}$  and again to see  $2 + \frac{98209}{416020}$ . Pressing  $\left[ \frac{a}{b/c} \right]$  a third time will cycle back to the original decimal representation.

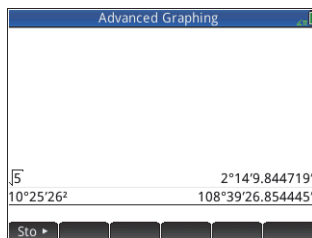
## Hexagesimal numbers

Any decimal result can be displayed in hexagesimal format; that is, in units subdivided into groups of 60. This includes degrees, minutes, and seconds as well as hours, minutes, and seconds. For example, enter  $\frac{11}{8}$  to see the decimal result: 1.375. Now press  $\left[ \text{Shift} \right] \left[ \frac{a}{b/c} \right]$  to see  $1^{\circ}22'30''$ . Press  $\left[ \text{Shift} \right] \left[ \frac{a}{b/c} \right]$  again to return to the decimal representation.

The HP Prime will produce the best approximation in cases where an exact result is not possible. Enter  $\sqrt{5}$  to see the decimal approximation: 2.236... Press  $\left[ \text{Shift} \right] \left[ \frac{a}{b/c} \right]$  to see  $2^{\circ}14'9.844719''$ .

Note that the degree and minute entries must be positive integers. Decimals are not allowed, except in the seconds.

Note too that the HP Prime treats a value in hexagesimal format as a single entity. Hence any operation performed on a hexagesimal value is performed on the entire value. For example, if



you enter  $10^{\circ}25'26''^2$ , the whole value is squared, not just the seconds component. The result in this case is  $108^{\circ}39'26.854445''$ .

## EEX key (powers of 10)

Numbers like  $5 \times 10^4$  and  $3.21 \times 10^{-7}$  are expressed in *scientific notation*, that is, in terms of powers of ten. This is simpler to work with than 50 000 or 0.000 000 321. To enter numbers like these, use the  $\left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{EEX} \\ \text{Sto} \cdot \text{P} \end{smallmatrix} \right]$  functionality. This is easier than using  $\left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \times \\ \downarrow \end{smallmatrix} \right] \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \times \\ \downarrow \end{smallmatrix} \right]$   $10 \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \times \\ \downarrow \end{smallmatrix} \right] \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \times \\ \downarrow \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ .

**Example:** Suppose you want to calculate

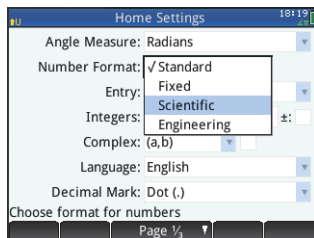
$$\frac{(4 \times 10^{-13})(6 \times 10^{23})}{3 \times 10^{-5}}$$

First select *Scientific* as the number format.

1. Open the **Home Settings** window.

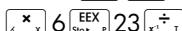


2. Select *Scientific* from the **Number Format** menu.



3. Return home:

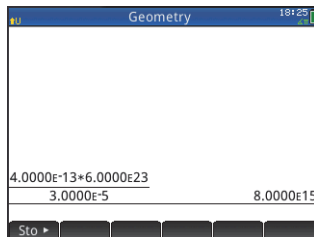
4. Enter  $4 \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{EEX} \\ \text{Sto} \cdot \text{P} \end{smallmatrix} \right] \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} + \\ - \\ \text{M} \end{smallmatrix} \right] 13$



$$3 \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{EEX} \\ \text{Sto} \cdot \text{P} \end{smallmatrix} \right] \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} + \\ - \\ \text{M} \end{smallmatrix} \right] 5$$

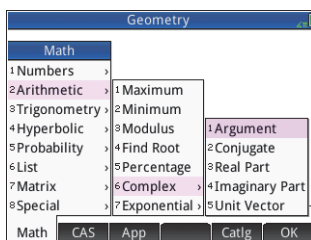
5. Press  $\left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{Enter} \\ = \end{smallmatrix} \right]$

The result is  $8.0000\text{E}15$ . This is equivalent to  $8 \times 10^{15}$ .



# Menus

A menu offers you a choice of items. As in the case shown at the right, some menus have sub-menus and sub-sub-menus.



## To select from a menu

There are two techniques for selecting an item from a menu:

- direct tapping and
- using the arrow keys to highlight the item you want and then either tapping **OK** or pressing **Enter**.

Note that the menu of buttons along the bottom of the screen can only be activated by tapping.

## Shortcuts


- Press **▲** when you are at the top of the menu to immediately display the last item in the menu.
- Press **▼** when you are at the bottom of the menu to immediately display the first item in the menu.
- Press **Shift** **▼** to jump straight to the bottom of the menu.
- Press **Shift** **▲** to jump straight to the top of the menu.
- Enter the first few characters of the item's name to jump straight to that item.
- Enter the number of the item shown in the menu to jump straight to that item.

## To close a menu

A menu will close automatically when you select an item from it. If you want to close a menu without selecting anything from it, use one of the following techniques:





- To close the last opened menu or sub-menu, press **On/Off**.
- To close all open menus, press **Esc/Clear**.

## Toolbox menus

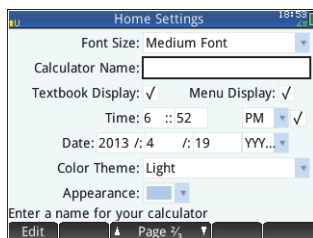
The Toolbox menus () are a collection of menus offering functions and commands useful in mathematics and programming. The **Math**, **CAS**, and **Catlg** menus offer over 400 functions and commands. The items on these menus are described in detail in chapter 20, “Functions and commands”, starting on page 283).

## Input forms

An input form is a screen that provides one or more fields for you to enter data or select an option. It is another name for a dialog box.




- If a field allows you to enter data of your choice, you can select it, add your data, and tap . (There is no need to tap  first.)
- If a field allows you to choose an item from a menu, you can tap on it (the field or the label for the field), tap on it again to display the options, and tap on the item you want. (You can also choose an item from an open list by pressing the cursor keys and pressing  when the option you want is highlighted.)
- If a field is a toggle field—one that is either selected or not selected—tap on it to select the field and tap on it again to select the alternate option. (Alternatively, select the field and tap .)

The illustration at the right shows an input form with all three types of field. **Calculator Name** is a free-form data-entry field, **Font Size** provides a menu of options, and **Textbook Display** is a toggle field.





## Reset input form fields

To reset a field to its default value, highlight the field and press . To reset all fields to their default values, press   (Clear).



## System-wide settings

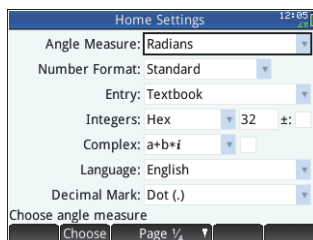
System-wide settings are values that determine the appearance of windows, the format of numbers, the scale of plots, the units used by default in calculations, and much more.

There are two system-wide settings: Home settings and CAS settings. Home settings control Home view and the apps. CAS settings control how calculations are done in the computer algebra system. CAS settings are discussed in chapter 3.

Although Home settings control the apps, you can override certain Home settings once inside an app. For example, you can set the angle measure to radians in the Home settings but choose degrees as the angle measure once inside the Polar app. Degrees then remains the angle measure until you open another app that has a different angle measure.

## Home settings

You use the **Home Settings** input form to specify the settings for Home view (and the default settings for the apps). Press   (Settings) to open the **Home Settings** input form. There are four pages of settings.



Setting	Options
Angle Measure	<p><b>Degrees:</b> 360 degrees in a circle.  <b>Radians:</b> <math>2\pi</math> radians in a circle.</p> <p>The angle mode you set is the angle setting used in both Home view and the current app. This is to ensure that trigonometric calculations done in the current app and Home view give the same result.</p>
Number Format	<p>The number format you set is the format used in all Home view calculations.</p> <p><b>Standard:</b> Full-precision display.</p> <p><b>Fixed:</b> Displays results rounded to a number of decimal places. If you choose this option, a new field appears for you to enter the number of decimal places. For example, 123.456789 becomes 123.46 in Fixed 2 format.</p> <p><b>Scientific:</b> Displays results with an exponent one digit to the left of the decimal point, and the specified number of decimal places. For example, 123.456789 becomes 1.23E2 in Scientific 2 format.</p> <p><b>Engineering:</b> Displays results with an exponent that is a multiple of 3, and the specified number of significant digits beyond the first one. Example: 123.456E7 becomes 1.23E9 in Engineering 2 format.</p>

Setting	Options (Continued)
Entry	<p><b>Textbook:</b> An expression is entered in much the same way as if you were writing it on paper (with some arguments above or below or others). In other words, your entry could be two-dimensional.</p> <p><b>Algebraic:</b> An expression is entered on a single line. Your entry is always one-dimensional.</p> <p><b>RPN:</b> Reverse Polish Notation. The arguments of the expression are entered first followed by the operator. The entry of an operator automatically evaluates what has already been entered.</p>
Integers	Sets the default base for integer arithmetic: binary, octal, decimal, or hex. You can also set the number of bits per integer and whether integers are to be signed.
Complex	Choose one of two formats for displaying complex numbers: $(a, b)$ or $a+bi$ .
Language	Choose the language you want for menus, input forms, and the online help.
Decimal Mark	Dot or Comma. Displays a number as 12456.98 (dot mode) or as 12456,98 (comma mode). Dot mode uses commas to separate elements in lists and matrices, and to separate function arguments. Comma mode uses periods (dots) as separators in these contexts.

Setting	Options
Font Size	Choose between small, medium, and large font for general display.
Calculator Name	Enter a name for the calculator.
Textbook Display	If selected, expressions and results are displayed in textbook format (that is, much as you would see in textbooks). If not selected, expressions and results are displayed in algebraic format (that is, in one-dimensional format). For example, $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 5 \\ 6 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ is displayed as $[[4, 5], [6, 2]]$ in algebraic format.
Menu Display	This setting determines whether the commands on the <b>Math</b> and <b>CAS</b> menus are presented descriptively or in common mathematical shorthand. The default is to provide the descriptive names for the functions. If you prefer the functions to be presented in mathematical shorthand, deselect this option.
Time	Set the time and choose a format: 24-hour or AM-PM format.
Date	Set the date and choose a format: YYYY/MM/DD, DD/MM/YYYY, or MM/DD/YYYY.
Color Theme	<b>Light:</b> black text on a light background <b>Dark:</b> white text on a dark background

Setting	Options (Continued)
Appearance	Choose a color for the shading (such as the color of the highlight).

### Page 3

Page 3 of the **Home Settings** input form is for setting Exam mode. This mode enables certain functions of the calculator to be disabled for a set period, with the disabling controlled by a password. This feature will primarily be of interest to those who supervise examinations and who need to ensure that the calculator is used appropriately by students sitting an examination. It is described in detail in chapter 28, “Limiting functionality”, starting on page 519.

### Page 4

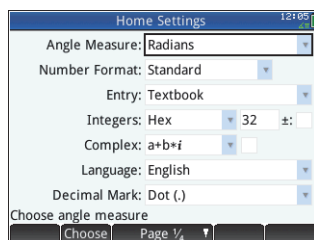
Page 4 of the **Home Settings** input form is for configuring your HP Prime to work on a wireless network. Visit [www.hp.com/support](http://www.hp.com/support) for further information.


## Specifying a Home setting

This example demonstrates how to change the number format from the default setting—Standard—to Scientific with two decimal places.

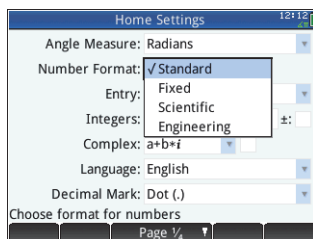
1. Press **Shift**  (Settings) to open the **Home Settings** input form.


The **Angle Measure** field is highlighted.



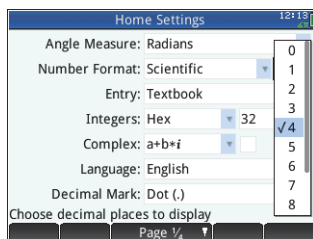
2. Tap on **Number Format** (either the field label or the field). This selects the field. (You could also have pressed  to select it.)

3. Tap on **Number Format** again. A menu of number format options appears.



4. Tap on **Scientific**. The option is chosen and the menu closes. (You can also choose an item by pressing the cursor keys and pressing  when the option you want is highlighted.)

5. Notice that a number appears to the right of the **Number Format** field. This is the number of decimal places currently set. To change the number to 2, tap on it twice, and then tap on 2 in the menu that appears.




6. Press  to return to Home view.

## Mathematical calculations

The most commonly used math operations are available from the keyboard (see “Math keys” on page 20). Access to the rest of the math functions is via various menus (see “Menus” on page 25).

Note that the HP Prime represents  $1 \times 10^{-499}$  (as well as all numbers smaller than this) as zero. The largest number displayed is  $9.999999999999 \times 10^{499}$ . A greater result is displayed as this number.

## Where to start

The home base for the calculator is the Home view (). You can do all your non-symbolic calculations here. You can also do calculations in CAS view (which uses the computer algebra system (see chapter 3, “Computer algebra system (CAS)”, starting on page 51). In fact, you can use functions from the **CAS** menu (one of the Toolbox

menus) in an expression you are entering in Home view, and use functions from the **Math** menu (another of the Toolbox menus) in an expression you are entering in CAS view.

## Choosing an entry type

The first choice you need to make is the style of entry. The three types are:

- Textbook

An expression is entered in much the same way as if you



$$\frac{\text{LN}(5)}{\pi}$$

were writing it on paper (with some arguments above or below or others). In other words, your entry could be two-dimensional, as in the example above.

- Algebraic

An expression is entered on a single line. Your entry is always one-dimensional.



$$\text{LN}(5) / \pi$$

- Advanced RPN (where RPN stands for *Reverse Polish Notation*). [Not available in CAS view.]

The arguments of the depression are entered first followed by the operator. The entry of an operator automatically evaluates what has already been entered. Thus you will need to enter a two-operator expression (as in the example above) in two steps, one for each operator:

Step 1:  $5 \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{LN} \\ e^x \end{smallmatrix} \right]$  – the natural logarithm of 5 is calculated and displayed in history.

Step 2:  $\left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{Shift} \\ \pi \end{smallmatrix} \right] \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} 3 \\ \# \end{smallmatrix} \right] \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} \div \\ x^1 \div \tau \end{smallmatrix} \right]$  –  $\pi$  is entered as a divisor and applied to the previous result.


More information about RPN mode can be found in chapter 2, “Reverse Polish Notation (RPN)”, starting on page 43.

Note that on page 2 of the **Home Settings** screen, you can specify whether you want to display your calculations





in Textbook format or not. This refers to the *appearance* of your calculations in the history section of both Home view and CAS view. This is a different setting to the *Entry* setting discussed above.

## Entering expressions

The examples that follow assume that the entry mode is Textbook.

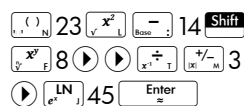
- An *expression* can contain numbers, functions, and variables.
- To enter a function, press the appropriate key, or open a Toolbox menu and select the function. You can also enter a function by using the alpha keys to spell out its name.
- When you have finished entering the expression, press  to evaluate it.

If you make a mistake while entering an expression, you can:

- delete the character to the left of the cursor by pressing 
- delete the character to the right of the cursor by pressing 
- clear the entire entry line by pressing  or .

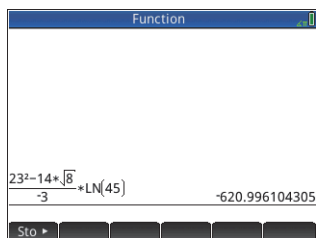
## Example

Calculate  $\frac{23^2 - 14\sqrt{8}}{-3} \ln(45)$



This example illustrates a number of important points to be aware of:

- the importance of delimiters (such as parentheses)
- how to enter negative numbers
- the use of implied versus explicit multiplication.





## Parentheses

As the example above shows, parentheses are automatically added to enclose the arguments of functions, as in  $\text{LN}()$ . However, you will need to manually add parentheses—by pressing  $\left[ \left( \right) \right]$ —to enclose a group of objects you want operated on as a single unit. Parentheses provide a way of avoiding arithmetic ambiguity. In the example above we wanted the entire numerator divided by  $-3$ , thus the entire numerator was enclosed in parentheses. Without the parentheses, only  $14\sqrt{8}$  would have been divided by  $-3$ .

The following examples show the use of parentheses, and the use of the cursor keys to move outside a group of objects enclosed within parentheses.

Entering ...	Calculates ...
$\text{SIN}$ $45$ $+$ $\text{Shift}$ $\pi$ $3$	$\sin(45 + \pi)$
$\text{SIN}$ $\left( \right)$ $45$ $+$ $\text{Shift}$ $\pi$ $3$	$\sin(45) + \pi$
$\left( \right)$ $\text{Shift}$ $\sqrt{x^2}$ $85$ $\times$ $9$	$\sqrt{85} \times 9$
$\text{Shift}$ $\sqrt{x^2}$ $85$ $\times$ $9$	$\sqrt{85 \times 9}$



## Algebraic precedence

The HP Prime calculates according to the following order of precedence. Functions at the same level of precedence are evaluated in order from left to right.

1. Expressions within parentheses. Nested parentheses are evaluated from inner to outer.
2. Prefix functions, such as SIN and LOG.
3. Postfix functions, such as !
4. Power function, ^, NTHROOT.
5. Negation, multiplication, and division.
6. Addition and subtraction.
7. AND and NOT.
8. OR and XOR.
9. Left argument of | (where).



10. Equals (=).

## Negative numbers



It is best to press  to start a negative number or to insert a negative sign. Pressing  instead will, in some situations, be interpreted as an operation to subtract the next number you enter from the last result. (This is explained in “To reuse the last result” on page 37.)







To raise a negative number to a power, enclose it in parentheses. For example,  $(-5)^2 = 25$ , whereas  $-5^2 = -25$ .

## Explicit and implied multiplication

*Implied* multiplication takes place when two operands appear with no operator between them. If you enter  $AB$ , for example, the result is  $A*B$ . Notice in the example on page 34 that we entered 14   8 without the multiplication operator after 14. For the sake of clarity, the calculator adds the operator to the expression in history, but it is not strictly necessary when you are entering the expression. You can, though, enter the operator if you wish (as was done in the examples on page 35). The result will be the same.

## Large results

If the result of a calculation is too long to fit on the display line in history, you can press  to scroll the display to the right. Pressing  scrolls the display to the left.

If the result is too tall to be seen in its entirety—for example, a many-rowed matrix—highlight it and then press . The result is displayed in full-screen view. You can now press  and  (as well as  and ) to bring hidden parts of the result into view. Tap  to return to the previous view.

## Reusing previous expressions and results

Being able to retrieve and reuse an expression provides a quick way of repeating a calculation that requires only a few minor changes to its parameters. You can retrieve and reuse any expression that is in history. You can also retrieve and reuse any result that is in history.

To retrieve an *expression* and place it on the entry line for editing, either:

- tap twice on it or its result, or
- use the cursor keys to highlight the expression and then either tap on it or tap **Copy**.

To retrieve a *result* and place it on the entry line, use the cursor keys to highlight it and then tap **Copy**. Note that double-tapping a result copies the associated expression to the entry line.

If the expression or result you want is not showing, press **▲** repeatedly to step through the entries and reveal those that are not showing. You can also swipe the screen to quickly scroll through history.

---

**TIP** Pressing **Shift** **▲** takes you straight to the very first entry in history, and pressing **Shift** **▼** takes you straight to the most recent entry.

---

## Using the clipboard

Your last four expressions are always copied to the clipboard and can easily be retrieved by pressing **Shift** **≡** **Menu** **Paste**. This opens the clipboard from where you can quickly choose the one you want.

Note that expressions and not results are available from the clipboard. Note too that the last four expressions remain on the clipboard even if you have cleared history.

## To reuse the last result

Press **Shift** **Ans** (Ans) to retrieve your last answer for use in another calculation. Ans appears on the entry



line. This is a shorthand for your last answer and it can be part of a new expression. You could now enter other components of a calculation—such as operators, number, variables, etc.—and create a new calculation.

---

**TIP** You don't need to first select **Ans** before it can be part of a new calculation. If you press a binary operator key to begin a new calculation, **Ans** is automatically added to

the entry line as the first component of the new calculation. For example, to multiply the last answer by 13, you could enter  $\text{Shift} \text{Ans} \times 13 \text{Enter}$ . But the first two keystrokes are unnecessary. All you need to enter is  $\times 13 \text{Enter}$ .

The variable `Ans` is always stored with full precision whereas the results in history will only have the precision determined by the current Number Format setting (see page 28). In other words, when you retrieve the number assigned to `Ans`, you get the result to its full precision; but when you retrieve a number from history, you get exactly what was displayed.

You can repeat the previous calculation simply by pressing  $\text{Enter}$ . This can be useful if the previous calculation involved `Ans`. For example, suppose you want to calculate the  $n$ th root of 2 when  $n$  is 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, and so on.

1. Calculate the square root of 2.

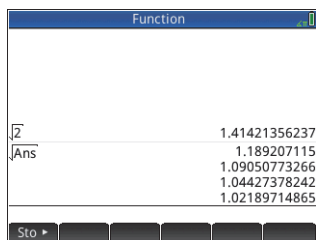
$\text{Shift} \sqrt{x^2} 2 \text{Enter}$

2. Now enter  $\sqrt[4]{\text{Ans}}$ .

$\text{Shift} \sqrt{x^2} \text{Shift} \text{Ans} \text{Enter}$

This calculates the fourth root of 2.

3. Press  $\text{Enter}$  repeatedly. Each time you press, the root is twice the previous root. The last answer shown in the illustration at the right is  $\sqrt[32]{2}$ .



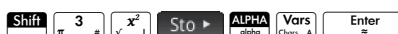
## To reuse an expression or result from the CAS

When you are working in Home view, you can retrieve an expression or result from the CAS by tapping  $\text{Menu}$  and selecting `Get from CAS`. The CAS opens. Press  $\uparrow$  or  $\downarrow$  until the item you want to retrieve is highlighted and press  $\text{Enter}$ . The highlighted item is copied to the cursor point in Home view.

## Storing a value in a variable

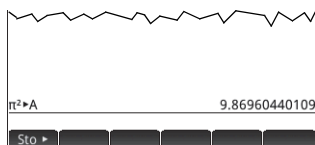
You can store a value in a variable (that is, assign a value to a variable). Then when you want to use that value in a calculation, you can refer to it by the variable's name. You can create your own variables, or you can take advantage of the built-in variables in Home view (named A to Z and  $\theta$ ) and in the CAS (named a to z, and a few others). CAS variables can be used in calculations in Home view, and Home variables can be used in calculations in the CAS. There are also built-in app variables and geometry variables. These can also be used in calculations.

**Example:** To assign  $\pi^2$  to the variable A:





Your stored value appears as shown at the right. If you then wanted to multiply your stored value by 5, you could

enter: 



You can also create your own variables in Home view. For example, suppose you wanted to create a variable called ME and assign  $\pi^2$  to it. You would enter:



A message appears asking if you want to create a variable called ME. Tap  or press  to confirm your intention. You can now use that variable in subsequent calculations:  $ME * 3$  will yield 303, for example.

You can also create variables in CAS view in the same way. However, the built-in CAS variables must be entered in lowercase. However, the variables you create yourself can be uppercase or lowercase.

See chapter 21, "Variables", starting on page 373 for more information.

As well as built-in Home and CAS variables, and the variables you create yourself, each app has variables that you can access and use in calculations. See “App functions and variables” on page 99 for more information.

## Complex numbers

You can perform arithmetic operations using complex numbers. Complex numbers can be entered in any one of the following forms, where  $x$  is the real part,  $y$  is the imaginary part, and  $i$  is the imaginary constant,  $\sqrt{-1}$  :

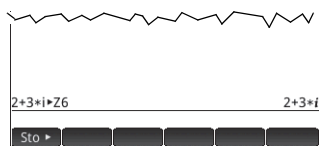
- $(x, y)$
- $x + iy$  or
- $x - iy$

To enter  $i$ :

- press **ALPHA** **Shift** **TAN**  
alpha i TAN
- or
- press **Shift** **i** **2** **Z**.

There are 10 built-in variables available for storing complex numbers. These are labeled Z0 to Z9. You can also assign a complex number to a variable you create yourself.

To store a complex number in a variable, enter the complex number, press **Sto** **▶**, enter the variable that



you want to assign the complex number to, and then press **Enter**. For example, to store  $2+3i$  in variable Z6:



## Sharing data

As well as giving you access to many types of mathematical calculations, the HP Prime enables you to

create various objects that can be saved and used over and over again. For example, you can create apps, lists, matrices, programs, and notes. You can also send these objects to other HP Primes. Whenever you encounter a screen with **Send** as a menu item, you can select an item on that screen to send it to another HP Prime.

You used the supplied USB cable to send objects from one HP Prime to another. Note



that the connectors on the ends of the USB cable are slightly different. The micro-A connector has a rectangular end and the micro-B connector has a trapezoidal end. To share objects with another HP Prime, the micro-A connector must be inserted into the USB port on the *sending* calculator, with the micro-B connector inserted into the USB port on the *receiving* calculator.

## General procedure

The general procedure for sharing objects is as follows:

1. Navigate to the screen that lists the object you want to send.

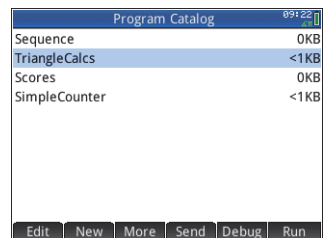
This will be the Application Library for apps, the List Catalog for lists, the Matrix Catalog for matrices, the Program Catalog for programs, and the Notes Catalog for notes.

2. Connect the USB cable between the two calculators.

The micro-A connector—with the rectangular end—must be inserted into the USB port on the *sending* calculator.

3. On the sending calculator, highlight the object you want to send and tap **Send**.

In the illustration at the right, a program named `TriangleCalcs` has been selected in the Program Catalog



and will be sent to the connected calculator when **Send** is tapped.

4. [What happens on the receiving calc?](#)

## Online Help

Press **Help User** to open the online help. The help initially provided is context-sensitive, that is, it is always about the current view and its menu items.

For example, to get help on the Function app, press **Apps Info**, select Function, and press **Help User**.

From within the help system you can navigate to other help topics. You can find help on any key, view, or command. And tapping **Tree** displays a hierarchical directory of all the help topics.



## Reverse Polish Notation (RPN)

---

The HP Prime provides you with three ways of entering objects in Home view:

- Textbook

An expression is entered in much the same way as if you were writing it on paper (with some arguments above or below or others). In other words, your entry could be two-dimensional, as in the following example:

$$\frac{\ln(5)}{\pi}$$

- Algebraic

An expression is entered on a single line. Your entry is always one-dimensional. The same calculation as above would appear like this in algebraic entry mode:

$$\ln(5) / \pi$$

- Advanced RPN (where RPN stands for *Reverse Polish Notation*).

The arguments of the expression are entered first followed by the operator. The entry of an operator automatically evaluates what has already been entered. Thus you will need to enter a two-operator expression (as in the example above) in two steps, one for each operator:







Step 1:  $5 \left[ \frac{\ln}{e^{\square}} \right]$  – the natural logarithm of 5 is calculated and displayed in history.

Step 2:  $\left[ \frac{\text{Shift}}{\pi} \right] \left[ \frac{3}{\#} \right] \left[ \frac{\div}{x^{\square} \div \tau} \right]$  –  $\pi$  is entered as a divisor and applied to the previous result.

You choose your preferred entry method from page 1 of the **Home Settings** screen ( $\left[ \frac{\text{Shift}}{\text{Settings}} \right]$ ). See “System-wide settings”, starting on page 27 for instructions on how to choose settings.

RPN is available in Home view, but not in CAS view.

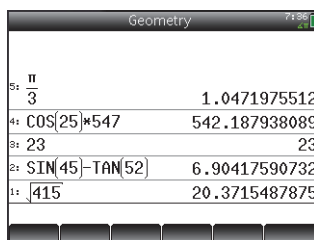
The same entry-line editing tools are available in RPN mode as in algebraic and textbook mode:

- Press  to delete the character to the left of the cursor.
- Press   to delete the character to the right of the cursor.
- Press  to clear the entire entry line.
- Press   to clear the entire entry line.

## History in RPN mode

The results of your calculations are kept in history. This history is displayed above the entry line (and by scrolling up to calculations that are no longer immediately visible). The calculator offers three histories: one for the CAS view and two for Home view. CAS history is discussed in chapter 3. The two histories in Home view are:

- non-RPN: visible if you have chosen algebraic or textbook as your preferred entry technique
- RPN: visible only if you have chosen RPN as your preferred entry technique. The RPN history is also called the *stack*. As shown in the illustration below, each entry in the stack is given a number. This is the stack level number.



Stack Level	Calculation	Result
5:	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	1.0471975512
4:	$\text{COS}(25) * 547$	542.187938089
3:	23	23
2:	$\text{SIN}(45) - \text{TAN}(52)$	6.90417590732
1:	415	20.3715487875

As more calculations are added, an entry's stack level number increases.

If you switch from RPN to algebraic or textbook entry, your history is not lost. It is just not visible. If you switch back to RPN, your RPN history is redisplayed. Likewise, if you switch to RPN, your non-RPN history is not lost.

When you are not in RPN mode, your history is ordered chronologically: oldest calculations at the top, most recent at the

bottom. In RPN mode, your history is ordered chronologically by default, but you can change the order of the items in history. (This is explained in “Manipulating the stack” on page 47.)

## Re-using results

There are two ways to re-use a result in history. Method 1 deselects the copied result after copying; method 2 keeps the copied item selected.

### Method 1

1. Select the result to be copied. You can do this by pressing  $\uparrow$  or  $\downarrow$  until the result is highlighted, or by tapping on it.
2. Press . The result is copied to the entry line and is deselected.

### Method 2

1. Select the result to be copied. You can do this by pressing  $\uparrow$  or  $\downarrow$  until the result is highlighted, or by tapping on it.
2. Tap  and select ECHO. The result is copied to the entry line and remains selected.

Although it might appear that only the result of the previous calculation is copied to the entry line, the calculation that produced that result is copied as well and becomes part of the new calculation. This is so regardless of the method chosen to copy the item.

Note that while you can copy an item from the CAS history to use in a Home calculation (and copy an item from the Home history to use in a CAS calculation), you cannot copy items from or to the RPN history. You can, however, use CAS commands and functions when working in RPN mode.

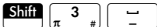
## Re-using calculations

As well as re-using results (discussed in the previous section), you can copy an entire calculation. The copy is placed on stack level 1 and thus can easily be incorporated in your next calculation. You can also move an item to stack level 1. These changes to the stack are explained in “Manipulating the stack” on page 47.

## Sample calculations

The general philosophy behind RPN is that arguments are placed before operators. The arguments can be on the entry line

(each separated by a space) or they can be in history. For example, to multiply  $\pi$  by 3, you could enter:

 3

on the entry line and then enter the operator ( $\boxed{\times}$ ). Thus your entry line would look like this before entering the operator:

$\pi$  3

However, you could also have entered the arguments separately and then, with a blank entry line, entered the operator ( $\boxed{\times}$ ). Your history would look like this before entering the operator:

2:	$\pi$	3.14159265359
1:	3	3

If there are no entries in history and you enter an operator or function, an error message appears. An error message will also appear if there is an entry on a stack level that an operator needs but it is not an appropriate argument for that operator. For example, pressing  $\boxed{\text{COS}}$  when there is a string on level 1 displays an error message.

An operator or function will work only on the minimum number of arguments necessary to produce a result. Thus if you enter on the entry line 2 4 6 8 and press  $\boxed{\times}$ , stack level 1 shows 48. Multiplication needs only two arguments, so the two arguments last entered are the ones that get multiplied. The entries 2 and 4 are not ignored: 2 is placed on stack level 3 and 4 on stack level 2.

Where a function can accept a variable number of arguments, you need to specify how many arguments you want it to include in its operation. You do this by specifying the number in parentheses straight after the function name. You then press



to evaluate the function. For example, suppose your stack looks like this:

Spreadsheet		16401
9:	.2254	.2254
8:	.2665	.2665
7:	.25547	.25547
6:	.25557	.25557
5:	.25117	.25117
4:	.25993	.25993
3:	.25547	.25547
2:	.255743	.255743
1:	.25514	.25514

Suppose further that you want to determine the minimum of just the numbers on stack levels 1, 2, and 3. You choose the MIN function from the MATH menu and complete the entry as MIN ( 3 ) . When you press  , the minimum of just the last three items on the stack is displayed.

## Manipulating the stack

A number of stack-manipulation options are available. Most appear as menu items across the bottom the screen. To see these items, you must first select an item in history:

Function		8821
4:	3	3
3:	4	4
2:	5	5
1:	{6,54,33,1}	{6,54,33,1}

Stack

### PICK


Copies the selected item to stack level 1. The item below the one that is copied is then highlighted. Thus if you tapped  four times, four consecutive items will be moved to the bottom four stack levels (levels 1–4).

### ROLL


There are two roll commands:

- Tap  to move the selected item to stack level 1. This is similar to PICK, but PICK duplicates the item, with the duplicate being placed on stack level 1. However, ROLL doesn't duplicate an item. It simply moves it.
- Tap  to move the item on stack level 1 to the currently highlighted level

## Swap

You can swap the position of the objects on stack level 1 with those on stack level 2. Just press . The level of other objects remains unchanged. Note that the entry line must not be active at the time, otherwise a comma will be entered.

## Stack

Tapping  displays further stack-manipulation tools.

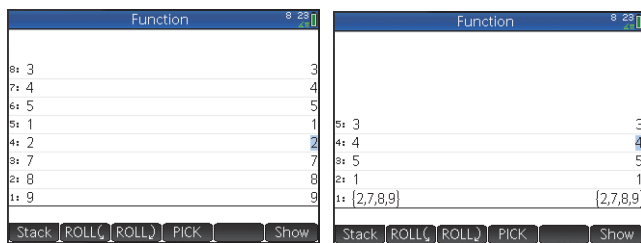
**DROPN** Deletes all items in the stack from the highlighted item down to and including the item on stack level 1. Items above the highlighted item drop down to fill the levels of the deleted items.

If you just want to delete a single item from the stack, see “Delete an item” below.

**DUPN** Duplicates all items between (and including) the highlighted item and the item on stack level 1. If, for example, you have selected the item on stack level 3, selecting **DUPN** duplicates it and the two items below it, places them on stack levels 1 to 3, and moves the items that were duplicated up to stack levels 4 to 6.

**Echo** Places a copy of the selected result on the entry line and leaves the source result highlighted. [\[Not working\]](#)

**→LIST** Creates a list of results, with the highlighted result the first element in the list and the item on stack level 1 the last.




Function	8 23
8: 3	3
7: 4	4
6: 5	5
5: 1	1
4: 2	2
3: 7	7
2: 8	8
1: 9	9

Stack [ROLL] [ROLL] [PICK] Show

Before

After



## Show an item

To show a result in full-screen textbook format, tap .

Tap  to return to the history.



## Delete an item

To delete an item from the stack:

1. Select it. You can do this by pressing  or  until the item is highlighted, or by tapping on it.

2. Press .

## Delete all items

To delete all items, thereby clearing the history, press  .





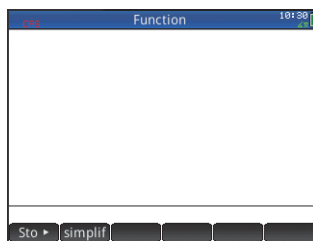
## Computer algebra system (CAS)

A computer algebra system (CAS) enables you to perform symbolic calculations. By default, CAS works in exact mode, giving you infinite precision. On the other hand, non-CAS calculations, such as those performed in HOME view or by an aplet, are numerical calculations and are often approximations limited by the precision of the calculator (to  $10^{-12}$  in the case of the HP Prime). For example,  $\frac{1}{3} + \frac{2}{7}$  yields the approximate answer .619047619047 in Home view (with Standard numerical format), but yields the exact answer  $\frac{13}{21}$  in the CAS.

The CAS offers many hundreds of functions, covering algebra, calculus, equation solving, polynomials, and more. You select a function from the **CAS** menu, one of the Toolbox menus discussed in chapter 20, “Functions and commands”, beginning on page 283. Consult that chapter for a description of all the CAS functions and commands.


### CAS view

CAS calculations are done in CAS view. CAS view is almost identical to Home view. A history of calculations is built and you can select and copy previous calculations just as you can in Home view, as well as store objects in variables.



To open CAS view, press **CAS Settings**. **CAS** appears in red at the left of the title bar to indicate that you are in CAS view rather than Home view.

The menu buttons in CAS view are:

- **Sto** : assigns an object to a variable

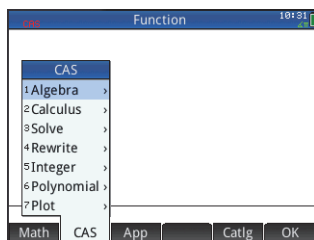
- **simplif**: applies common simplification rules to reduce an expression to its simplest form. For example,  $\text{simplify}(e^a + \text{LN}(b \cdot e^c))$  yields  $b \cdot \text{EXP}(a) \cdot \text{EXP}(c)$ .
- **Copy**: copies a selected entry ion history to the entry line
- **Show**: displays the selected entry in full-screen mode, with horizontal and vertical scrolling enabled. The entry is also presented in textbook format.

## CAS calculations

With one exception, you perform calculations in CAS view just as you do in Home view. (The exception is that there is no RPN entry mode in CAS view, just algebraic and textbook modes). All the keys work in the same way in CAS view as Home view. The primary difference is that the default display of answers is symbolic rather than numeric.

You can also use the template key ( $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{Units} \\ \text{Units} \end{array} \right]$ ) to help you insert the framework for common calculations (and for vectors and matrices). This is explained in detail in “Math template” on page 21.

The most commonly used CAS functions are available from the CAS menu, one of the Toolbox menus. To display the menu, press  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{CAS} \\ \text{Menu} \end{array} \right]$ . (If the CAS menu is not open by default, tap  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{CAS} \\ \text{CAS} \end{array} \right]$ .) Other CAS



commands are available from the CATLG menu (another of the Toolbox menus).

To choose a function, select a category and then a command.

### Example 1

To find the roots of  $2x^2 + 3x - 2$ :

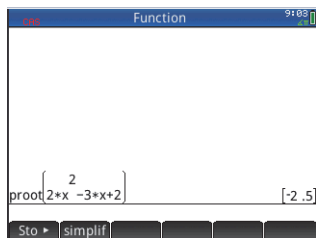
1. With the CAS menu open, select **Polynomial** and then **Find Roots**.

The function `root()` appears on the entry line.

- Between the parentheses, enter:

2  $\text{ALPHA}$   $\text{Shift}$   $\times$   $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$   $\text{Ans}$   $+$   
 3  $\text{ALPHA}$   $\text{Shift}$   $\times$   $-$   $\text{Base}$   $2$

- Press  $\text{Enter}$ .



## Example 2

To find the area under the graph of  $5x^2 - 6$  between  $x = 1$  and  $x = 3$ :

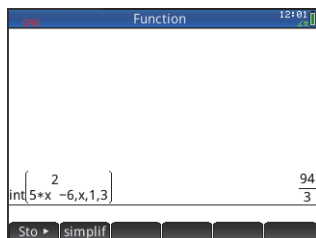
- With the CAS menu open, select **Calculus** and then **Integrate**.

The function `int()` appears on the entry line.

- Between the parentheses, enter:

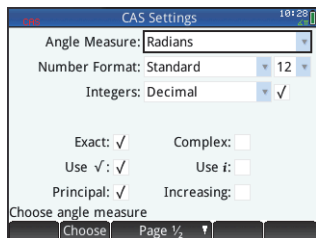
5  $\text{ALPHA}$   $\text{Shift}$   $\times$   $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$   $-$   $\text{Base}$   
 6  $\text{Eval}$   $\text{ALPHA}$   $\text{Shift}$   $\times$   $\text{Eval}$   
 1  $\text{Eval}$  3

- Press  $\text{Enter}$ .



## Settings

Various settings allow you to configure how the CAS works. To display the settings, press  $\text{Shift}$   $\text{CAS}$ . The modes are spread across two pages.



## Page 1

Setting	Purpose
Angle Measure	Select the units for angle measurements: Radians or Degrees.

<b>Setting</b>	<b>Purpose (Cont.)</b>
Number Format (first drop-down list)	Select the number format for displayed solutions: Standard or Scientific or Engineering
Number Format (second drop-down list)	Select the number of digits to display in approximate mode (mantissa + exponent).
Integers (drop-down list)	Select the integer base: Decimal (base 10) Hex (base 16) Octal (base 8)
Integers (check box)	If checked, any real number equivalent to an integer in a non-CAS environment will be converted to an integer in the CAS. (Real numbers not equivalent to integers are treated as real numbers in CAS whether or not this option is selected.)
Exact	If checked, the calculator is in exact mode and solutions will be symbolic. If not checked, the calculator is in approximate mode and solutions will be approximate. For example, $26 \sqrt[3]{5}$ yields $\frac{26}{5}$ in exact mode and 5.2 in approximate mode.
Complex	Select this to allow complex results in variables.
Use $\sqrt{\quad}$	If checked, second order polynomials are factorized in complex mode or in real mode if the discriminant is positive.

<b>Setting</b>	<b>Purpose (Cont.)</b>
Use $i$	If checked, the calculator is in complex mode and complex solutions will be displayed when they exist. If not checked, the calculator is in real mode and only real solutions will be displayed. For example, $\text{factors}(x^4-1)$ yields $(-1+x), (1+x), (i+x), (-i+x)$ in complex mode and $(-1+x), (1+x), (1+x^2)$ in real mode.
Principal	If checked, the principal solutions to trigonometric functions will be displayed. If not checked, the general solutions to trigonometric functions will be displayed.
Increasing	If checked, polynomials will be displayed with increasing powers (for example, $-4+x+3x^2+x^3$ ). If not checked, polynomials will be displayed with decreasing powers (for example, $x^3+3x^2+x-4$ ).

## Page 2

<b>Setting</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
Recursive Evaluation	Specify the maximum number of embedded variables allowed in an interactive evaluation. See also <code>Recursive Replacement</code> below.
Recursive Replacement	Specify the maximum number of embedded variables allowed in a single evaluation in a program. See also <code>Recursive Evaluation</code> above.
Recursive Function	Specify the maximum number of embedded function calls allowed.

Setting	Purpose (Cont.)
Epsilon	Any number smaller than the value specified for epsilon will be shown as zero.
Probability	Specify the maximum probability of an answer being wrong for non-deterministic algorithms. Set this to zero for deterministic algorithms.
Newton	Specify the maximum number of iterations when using the Newtonian method to find the roots of a quadratic.





### Setting the form of menu items

One setting that affects the CAS is made outside the **CAS Settings** screen. This setting determines whether the commands on the CAS menu are presented descriptively or by their command name. Here are some examples of identical functions that are presently differently depending on what presentation mode you select:

Descriptive name	Command name
Factors List	ifactors
Complex Zeros	cZeros
Groebner Basis	gbasis
Factor by Degree	factor_xn
Find Roots	proot

The default menu presentation mode is to provide the descriptive names for the CAS functions. If you prefer the functions to be presented by their command name, deselect the **Menu Display** option on the second page of the **Home Settings** screen (see "Home settings" on page 27).

### To use an expression or result from Home view

When your are working in CAS, you can retrieve an expression or result from Home view by tapping  and selecting Get from Home. Home view opens. Press  or  until the item you want to retrieve is highlighted and press .

The highlighted item is copied to the cursor point in CAS.

### **To use a Home variable in CAS**

You can access Home variables from within the CAS. Home variables are assigned uppercase letters; CAS variables are assigned lowercase letters. Thus  $\text{SIN}(x)$  and  $\text{SIN}(X)$  will yield different results.

To use a Home variable in the CAS, simply include its name in a calculation. For example, suppose in Home view you have assigned variable  $Q$  to 100. Suppose too that you have assigned variable  $q$  to 1000 in the CAS. If you are in the CAS and enter  $5*q$ , the result is 5000. If had entered  $5*Q$  instead, the result would be 500.


In a similar way, CAS variables can be used in calculations in Home view. Thus you can enter  $5*q$  in Home view and get 500, even though  $q$  is a CAS variable.





## An introduction to HP apps

---

Much of the functionality of the HP Prime is provided in packages called HP apps. The HP Prime comes with 18 HP apps: 10 dedicated to mathematical topics or tasks, three specialized Solvers, three function Explorers, a spreadsheet, and an app for recording data streamed to the calculator from an external sensing device. You launch an app by first pressing  (which displays the **Application Library** screen) and tapping on the icon for the app you want.

What each app enables you to do is outlined in the following, where the apps are listed in alphabetical order.

App name	Use this app to:
Advanced Graphing	Explore the graphs of symbolic open sentences in $x$ and $y$ . Example: $x^2 + y^2 = 64$
Data Streamer	Collect real-world data from scientific sensors and export it to a statistics app for analysis.
Finance	Solve time-value-of-money (TVM) problems and amortization problems.
Function	Explore real-valued, rectangular functions of $y$ in terms of $x$ . Example: $y = 2x^2 + 3x + 5$
Geometry	Explore geometric constructions and perform geometric calculations.
Inference	Explore confidence intervals and hypothesis tests based on the Normal and Student's- $t$ distributions.
Linear Explorer	Explore the properties of linear equations and test your knowledge.

<b>App name</b>	<b>Use this app to: (Cont.)</b>
Linear Solver	Find solutions to sets of two or three linear equations.
Parametric	Explore parametric functions of $x$ and $y$ in terms of $t$ . Example: $x = \cos(t)$ and $y = \sin(t)$ .
Polar	Explore polar functions of $r$ in terms of an angle $\theta$ . Example: $r = 2\cos(4\theta)$
Quadratics Explorer	Explore the properties of quadratic equations and test your knowledge.
Sequence	Explore sequence functions, where $U$ is defined in terms of $n$ , or in terms of previous terms in the same or another sequence, such as $U_{n-1}$ and $U_{n-2}$ . Example: $U_1 = 0$ , $U_2 = 1$ and $U_n = U_{n-2} + U_{n-1}$
Solve	Explore equations in one or more real-valued variables, and systems of equations. Example: $x + 1 = x^2 - x - 2$
Spreadsheet	To solve problems or represent data best suited to a spreadsheet.
Statistics 1Var	Calculate one-variable statistical data ( $x$ )
Statistics 2Var	Calculate two-variable statistical data ( $x$ and $y$ )
Triangle Solver	Find the unknown values for the lengths and angles of triangles.
Trig Explorer	Explore the properties of sinusoidal equations and test your knowledge.

As you use an app to explore a lesson or solve a problem, you add data and definitions in one or more of the app's views. All this information is automatically saved in the app. You can come back to the app at any time and all the information is still there. You can also save a version of the app with a name you give it and then use the original app for another problem or purpose. See "Creating an app" on page 97 for more information about customizing and saving apps.

With one exception, all the apps mentioned above are described in detail in this user guide. The exception is the DataStreamer app. A brief introduction to this app is given in the HP Prime *Quick Start Guide*. Full details can be found in the *HP StreamSmart 410 User Guide* ([available on the product CD](#)).

## Application Library

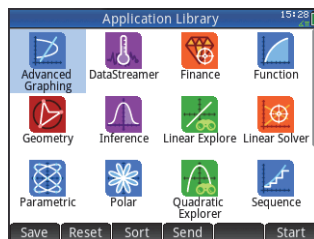
Apps are stored in the Application Library, displayed by pressing



### To open an app

1. Open the Application Library.
2. Find the app's icon and tap on it.

You can also use the cursor keys to scroll to the app and, when it is highlighted, either tap **Start** or press



### To reset an app

You can leave an app at any time and all the data and settings in it are retained. When you return to the app, you can continue as you left off.

However, if you don't want to use the previous data and settings, you can return the app to its default state, that is, the state it was in when you opened it for the first time. To do this:

1. Open the Application Library.
2. Use the cursor keys to highlight the app.
3. Tap **Reset**.
4. Tap **OK** to confirm your intention.

You can also reset an app from within the app. From the main view of the app—which is usually, but not always, the Symbolic view—press **Shift** **Esc** and tap **OK** to confirm your intention.

### To sort apps

By default, the apps in the Application Library are sorted chronologically, with the most recently used app shown first. You can change the sort order to:


- Alphabetically

The app icons are sorted alphabetically by name, and in ascending order: A to Z.

- Fixed



Apps are displayed in their default order: Function, Advanced Graphing, Geometry ... Polar, and Sequence. Customized apps are placed at the end, after all the built-in apps. They appear in chronological order: oldest to most recent.

To change the sort order:

1. Open the Application Library.
2. Tap .
3. From the **Sort Apps** list, choose the option you want.



## To delete an app

The apps that come with the HP Prime are built-in and cannot be deleted, but you can delete an app you have created. To delete an app:




1. Open the Application Library.
2. Use the cursor keys to highlight the app.
3. Tap .
4. Tap  to confirm your intention.




## Other options

The other options available in the Application Library are:

-   
Enables you to save a copy of an app under a new name. See “Creating an app” on page 97.
-   
Enables you to send an app to another HP Prime. See “Sharing data” on page 40.

## App views

Most apps have three major views: Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric. These views are based on the symbolic, graphic, and numeric representations of mathematical objects. They are accessed through the , , and  keys near the top left of the keyboard. Typically these views enable you to define a mathematical object—such as an expression or an open sentence—plot it, and see the values generated by it.

Each of these views has an accompanying setup view, a view that enables you to configure the appearance of the data in the accompanying major view. These views are called Symbolic Setup, Plot Setup, and Numeric Setup. They are accessed by pressing , , and .

Not all apps have all the six views outlined above. The scope and complexity of each app determines its particular set of views. For example, the Spreadsheet app has no Plot view or Plot Setup view, and the Quadratic Explorer has only a Plot view. What views are available in each app is outlined in the next six sections.

Note that the DataStreamr app is not covered in this chapter. See *HP StreamSmart 410 User Guide* for information about this app.

## Symbolic view

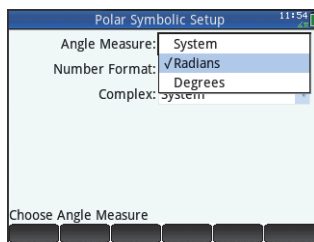
The table below outlines what is done in the Symbolic view of each app.

App	Use the Symbolic view to:
Advanced Graphing	Specify up to 10 open sentences.
Finance	Not used
Function	Specify up to 10 real-valued, rectangular functions of $y$ in terms of $x$ .
Geometry	View the symbolic definition of geometric constructions.
Inference	Choose to conduct a hypothesis test or test a confidence level, and select a type of test.
Linear Explorer	Not used
Linear Solver	Not used
Parametric	Specify up to 10 parametric functions of $x$ and $y$ in terms of $t$ .
Polar	Specify up to 10 polar functions of $r$ in terms of an angle $\theta$ .

<b>App</b>	<b>Use the Symbolic view to: (Cont.)</b>
Quadratics Explorer	Not used
Sequence	Specify up to 10 sequence functions.
Solve	Specify up to 10 equations.
Spreadsheet	Not used
Statistics 1Var	Specify up to 5 univariate analyses.
Statistics 2Var	Specify up to 5 multivariate analyses.
Triangle Solver	Not used
Trig Explorer	Not used

## Symbolic Setup view

The Symbolic Setup view is the same for each app. It enables you to override the system-wide settings for angle measure, number format, and complex-number entry. The override applies only to the current app.



To change the settings for all apps, see “System-wide settings” on page 27.

## Plot view

The table below outlines what is done in the Plot view of each app.

<b>App</b>	<b>Use the Polar view to:</b>
Advanced Graphing	Plot and explore the open sentences selected in Symbolic view.
Finance	Display an amortization graph.
Function	Plot and explore the functions selected in Symbolic view.
Geometry	Create and manipulate geometric constructions.

<b>App</b>	<b>Use the Polar view to: (Cont.)</b>
Inference	View a plot of the test results.
Linear Explorer	Explore linear equations and test your knowledge of them.
Linear Solver	Not used
Parametric	Plot and explore the functions selected in Symbolic view.
Polar	Plot and explore the functions selected in Symbolic view.
Quadratics Explorer	Explore quadratic equations and test your knowledge of them.
Sequence	Plot and explore the sequences selected in Symbolic view.
Solve	Plot and explore a single function selected in Symbolic view.
Spreadsheet	Not used
Statistics 1Var	Plot and explore the analyses selected in Symbolic view.
Statistics 2Var	Plot and explore the analyses selected in Symbolic view.
Triangle Solver	Not used
Trig Explorer	Explore sinusoidal equations and test your knowledge of them.

## Plot Setup view

The table below outlines what is done in the Plot Setup view of each app.

<b>App</b>	<b>Use the Polar view to:</b>
Advanced Graphing	Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment.
Finance	Not used

<b>App</b>	<b>Use the Polar view to: (Cont.)</b>
Function	Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment.
Geometry	Modify the appearance of the drawing environment.
Inference	Not used
Linear Explorer	Not used
Linear Solver	Not used
Parametric	Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment.
Polar	Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment.
Quadratics Explorer	Not used
Sequence	Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment.
Solve	Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment.
Spreadsheet	Not used
Statistics 1Var	Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment.
Statistics 2Var	Modify the appearance of plots and the plot environment.
Triangle Solver	Not used
Trig Explorer	Not used

## Numeric view

The table below outlines what is done in the Numeric view of each app.

<b>App</b>	<b>Use the Numeric view to:</b>
Advanced Graphing	View a table of numbers generated by the open sentences selected in Symbolic view.



<b>App</b>	<b>Use the Numeric view to: (Cont.)</b>
Finance	Enter values for time-value-of-money calculations.
Function	View a table of numbers generated by the functions selected in Symbolic view.
Geometry	Perform calculations on the geometric objects drawn in Plot view.
Inference	Specify the statistics needed to perform the test selected in Symbolic view.
Linear Explorer	Not used
Linear Solver	Specify the coefficients of the linear equations to be solved.
Parametric	View a table of numbers generated by the functions selected in Symbolic view.
Polar	View a table of numbers generated by the functions selected in Symbolic view.
Quadratics Explorer	Not used
Sequence	View a table of numbers generated by the sequences selected in Symbolic view.
Solve	Enter the known values and solve for the unknown value.
Spreadsheet	Enter numbers, text, formulas, etc. The Numeric view is the primary view for this app.
Statistics 1Var	Enter data for analysis.
Statistics 2Var	Enter data for analysis.
Triangle Solver	Enter known data about a triangle and solve for the unknown data.
Trig Explorer	Not used

## Numeric Setup view

The table below outlines what is done in the Numeric Setup view of each app.


<b>App</b>	<b>Use the Numeric Setup view to:</b>
Advanced Graphing	Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the open sentences specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor.
Finance	Not used.
Function	Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the functions specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor.
Geometry	Not used
Inference	Not used
Linear Explorer	Not used
Linear Solver	Not used
Parametric	Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the functions specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor.
Polar	Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the functions specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor.
Quadratics Explorer	Not used.
Sequence	Specify the numbers to be calculated according to the sequences specified in Symbolic view, and set the zoom factor.
Solve	Not used
Spreadsheet	Format cells, rows, columns, or the entire spreadsheet.
Statistics 1Var	Not used
Statistics 2Var	Not used
Triangle Solver	Not used

App	Use the Numeric Setup view to: (Cont.)
Trig Explorer	Not used

## Quick example

The following example uses all six app views and should give you an idea of the typical workflow involved in working with an app. The Polar app is used as the sample app.

### Open the app

1. Open the Application Library by pressing .
2. Tap once on the icon of the Polar app.

The Polar app opens in Symbolic View.

### Symbolic view

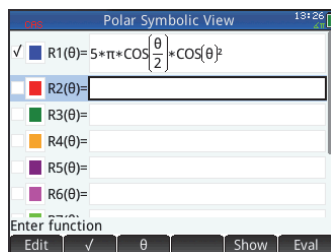
The Symbolic view of the Polar app is where you define or specify the polar equation you want to plot and explore. In this example we will plot and explore the equation  $r = 4\pi \cos(\theta/2) \cos(\theta)^2$ .

3. Define the equation  $r = 4\pi \cos(\theta/2) \cos(\theta)^2$  by entering:



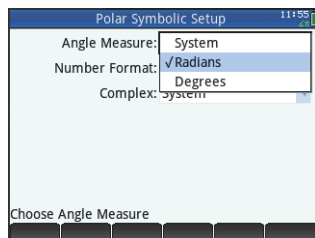
This equation will draw symmetrical petals provided that the angle measure is set to radians.

The angle measure for this app is set in the Symbolic Setup view.



### Symbolic Setup view

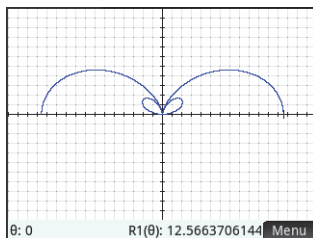
4. Press .
5. Select Radians from the **Angle Measure** menu.



## Plot view

6. Press **Plot** **←Setup**.

A graph of the equation is plotted. However, as the illustration at the right shows, only a part of the petals is visible. To see the rest you will need to change the plot setup parameters.

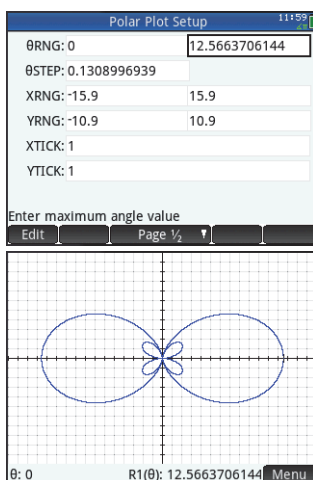


## Plot Setup View

7. Press **Shift** **Plot** **←Setup**.
8. Set the second **θRNG** field to  $4\pi$  by entering:

**▶** 4 **Shift** **π** **3** **⊘** ( $\pi$ ) **OK**

9. Press **Plot** **←Setup** to return to Plot view and see the complete plot.



## Numeric View

The values generated by the equation can be seen in Numeric view.

10. Press **Num** **←Setup**.

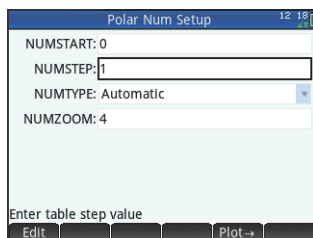
Suppose you want to see just whole numbers for  $\theta$ ; in other words, you want the increment between consecutive values in the  $\theta$  column to be 1. You set this up in the Numeric Setup view.

$\theta$	R1		
0	12.56637061		
0.1	12.42557706		
0.2	12.01008057		
0.3	11.34013828		
0.4	10.44821798		
0.5	9.377139084		
0.6	8.177628974		
0.7	6.905441877		
0.8	5.618213519		
0.9	4.372240164		
1	3.219374434		
0			
<b>Zoom</b>		<b>Big</b>	<b>Defn</b> <b>Width</b>

## Numeric Setup View

11. Press **Shift** **Num** **Setup**.
12. Change the **NUMSTEP** field to 1.
13. Press **Num** **Setup** to return to Numeric view.

You will see that the  $\theta$  column now contains consecutive integers starting from zero, and the corresponding values calculated by the equation specified in Symbolic view are listed in the R1 column.



## Common operations in Symbolic view

[Scope: Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve. See dedicated app chapters for information about the other apps.]

Symbolic view functionality that is common to many apps is described in detail in this section. Functionality that is available only in a particular app is described in the chapter dedicated to that app.

Symbolic view is typically used to define a function or open sentence that you want to explore (by plotting and/or evaluating). In this section, the term *definition* will be used to cover both functions and open sentences.

Press **Symb** **Setup** to open Symbolic view.

### Add a definition

With the exception of the Parametric app, there are 10 fields for entering definitions. In the Parametric app there are 20 fields, two for each paired definition.

1. Highlight an empty field you want to use, either by tapping on it or scrolling to it.
2. Enter your definition.

If you need help, see “Definitional building blocks” on page 72.

3. Tap **OK** or press **Enter** when you have finished.

Your new definition is added to the list of definitions.

Note that variables used in definitions must be in uppercase. A variable entered in lowercase will cause an error message to appear.

## Modify a definition

1. Highlight the definition you want to modify, either by tapping on it or scrolling to it.
2. Tap **Edit**.  
The definition is copied to the entry line.
3. Modify the definition.
4. Tap **OK** or press **Enter** when you have finished.

## Definitional building blocks

The components that make up a symbolic definition can come from a number of sources.

- From the keyboard

You can enter components directly from the keyboard. To enter  $2X^2 - 3$ , just press 2 **ALPHA** **X** **x<sup>2</sup>** **-** 3.

- From user variables

If, for example, you have created a variable called **COST**, you could incorporate that into a definition either by typing it or choosing it from the **User** menu (one of the sub-menus of the Variables menu). Thus you could have a definition that reads  $F1(X) = X^2 + \text{COST}$ .



To select a user variable, press **Vars**, tap **User**, select **User Variables**, and then select the variable of interest.

- From Home variables

Some Home variables can be incorporated into a symbolic definition. To access a Home variable, press **Vars**, tap **Home**, select a category of variable, and select the variable of interest. Thus you could have a definition that reads  $F1(X) = X^2 + Q$ . ( $Q$  is on the **Real** sub-menu of the **Home** menu.)

Home variables are discussed in detail in chapter 28, "Troubleshooting", beginning on page 507.


- From app variables

All settings, definitions, and results, for all apps, are stored as variables. Many of these variables can be incorporated into a symbolic definition. To access app variables, press  (Vars), tap  (App), select the app, select the category of variable, and then select the variable of interest. You could, for instance, have a definition that reads

$F2(X) = X^2 + X - \text{Root}$ . The value of the last root calculated in the Function app is substituted for `Root` when this definition is evaluated.


App variables are discussed in detail in chapter 28, “Troubleshooting”, beginning on page 507.

- From math functions

Some of the functions on the **Math** menu can be incorporated into a definition. The **Math** menu is one of the Toolbox menus (). The following definition combines a math function (`Size`) with a Home variable (`L1`):


$F4(X) = X^2 - \text{SIZE}(L1)$ . It is equivalent to  $x^2 - n$  where  $n$  is the number of elements in the list named `L1`. (`Size` is an option on the **List** menu, which is a sub-menu of the **Math** menu.)

- From CAS functions

Some of the functions on the **CAS** menu can be incorporated into a definition. The **CAS** menu is one of the Toolbox menus (). The following definition incorporates the CAS


function `irem`:  $F5(X) = X^2 + \text{CAS.irem}(45, 7)$ . (`irem` is entered by choosing `Remainder`, an option on the **Division** menu, which is a sub-menu of the **Integer** menu. Note that any CAS command or function selected to operate outside the CAS is given the `CAS.` prefix.)

- From app functions

Some of the functions on the **App** menu can be incorporated into a definition. The **App** menu is one of the Toolbox menus (). The following definition incorporates the app function `PredY`:

$F9(X) = X^2 + \text{Statistics\_2Var.PredY}(6)$ .

- From the **Catlg** menu

Some of the functions on the **Catlg** menu can be incorporated into a definition. The **Catlg** menu is one of the Toolbox menus (). The following definition incorporates

a command from that menu and an app variable:

$F_6(X) = X^2 + \text{INT}(\text{Root})$ . The integer value of the last root calculated in the Function app is substituted for  $\text{INT}(\text{Root})$  when this definition is evaluated.

- From other definitions

You could, for example, define  $F_3(X)$  as  $F_1(X) * F_2(X)$ .

## Evaluate a dependent definition

If you have a dependent definition—that is, one defined in terms of another definition—you can combine all the definitions into one by evaluating the dependent definition.

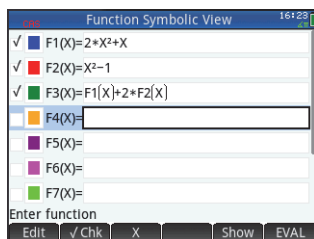
1. Select the dependent expression.

2. Tap **Eval**.

Consider the example at the right. Notice that  $F_3(X)$  is defined in terms of two other functions. It is a dependent definition and can be evaluated.

If you highlight  $F_3(X)$  and tap

**Eval**,  $F_3(X)$  becomes  $2 * X^2 + X + 2 * (X^2 - 1)$ .



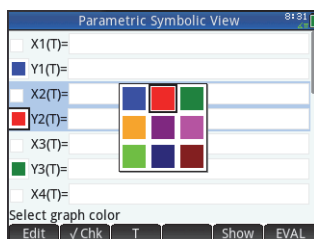
## Select or deselect a definition to explore

In the Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, and Solve apps you can enter up to 10 definitions. However, only those definitions that are selected in Symbolic view will be plotted in Plot view and evaluated in Numeric view.




You can tell if a definition is selected by the tick (or checkmark) beside it. A checkmark is added by default as soon as you create a definition. So if you don't want to plot or evaluate a particular definition, highlight it and tap **√**. (Do likewise if you want to re-select a deselected function.)

## Choose a color for plots

Each function and open sentence can be plotted in a different color. If you want to change the default color of a plot:










1. Tap the colored square to the left of the function's definition.  
You can also select the square by pressing  while the definition is selected. Pressing  moves the selection from the definition to the colored square and from the colored square to the definition.
2. tap .
3. Select the desired color from the color-picker.

## Delete a definition




















To delete a single definition:

1. Tap once on it (or highlight it using the cursor keys).
2. Press .

To delete all the definitions:

1. Press  .
2. Tap  or press  to confirm your intention.

## Symbolic view: Summary of menu buttons

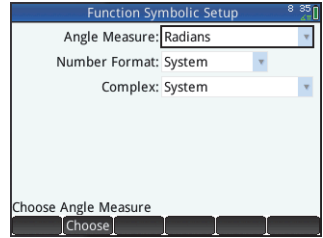
Button	Purpose
	Copies the highlighted definition to the entry line for editing. Tap  when done. To add a new definition—even one that is replacing an existing one—highlight the field and just start entering your new definition.
	Selects (or deselects) a definition.
 [Function only]	Enters the independent variable in the Function app. You can also press  .
 [Advanced Graphing only]	Enters an X in the Advanced Graphing app. You can also press  .
 [Advanced Graphing only]	Enters an Y in the Advanced Graphing app.
 [Parametric only]	Enters the independent variable in the Parametric app. You can also press  .
 [Polar only]	Enters the independent variable in the Polar app. You can also press  .
 [Sequence only]	Enters the independent variable in the Sequence app. You can also press  .
 [Solve only]	Enters the equals sign in the Solve app. A shortcut equivalent to pressing   .
	Displays the selected definition in full-screen mode. See “Large results” on page 36 for more information.
	Evaluates dependent definitions. See “Evaluate a dependent definition” on page 74.

## Common operations in Symbolic Setup view

[Scope: all apps]

The Symbolic Setup view is the same for all apps. Its primary purpose is to allow you to override three of the system-wide settings specified on the **Home Settings** window.

Press **Shift** **Symb** **↳ Setup** to open Symbolic Setup view.



## Override system-wide settings

1. Tap once on the setting you want to change.  
You can tap on the field name or the field.
2. Tap again on the setting.  
A menu of options appears.
3. Select the new setting.

Note that selecting the *Fixed*, *Scientific*, or *Engineering* option on the **Number Format** menu displays a second field for you to enter the required number of significant digits.

You could also select a field, tap **Choose**, and select the new setting.

## Restore default settings

To restore default settings is to return precedence to the settings on the **Home Settings** screen.

To restore one field to its default setting:

1. Select the field.
2. Press **Del**.

To restore all default settings, press **Shift** **Esc** **Clear**.

## Common operations in Plot view

Plot view functionality that is common to many apps is described in detail in this section. Functionality that is available only in a particular app is described in the chapter dedicated to that app.

Press **Plot** **↳ Setup** to open Plot view.




# Zoom

[Scope: Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve, Statistics 1 Var, and Statistics 2Var. Also, to a limited degree, Geometry.]

Zooming redraws the plot on a larger or smaller scale. It is a shortcut for changing the range settings in Plot Setup view. The extent of most zooms is determined by two zoom factors: a horizontal and a vertical factor. By default, these factors are both 2. Zooming out *multiplies* the scale by the factor, so that a greater scale distance appears on the screen. Zooming in *divides* the scale by the factor, so that a shorter scale distance appears on the screen.

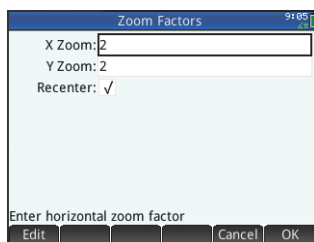
## Zoom factors



To change the default zoom factors:

1. Open the Plot view of the app (  ).
2. Tap  to open the Plot view menu.
3. Tap  to open the Zoom menu.

4. Scroll and select **Set Factors**.

The **Zoom Factors** screen appears.





5. Change one or both zoom factors.
6. If you want the plot to be centered around the current position of the cursor in Plot view, select **Recenter**.
7. Tap  or press .

## Zoom options

Zoom options are available from three sources:

- the keyboard
- the  menu in Plot view
- the **Views** menu (  ).

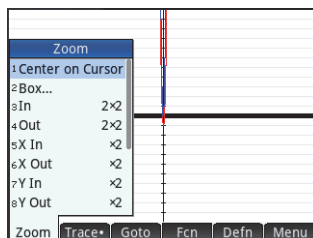
## Zoom keys



There are two zoom keys: pressing  zooms in and pressing  zooms out. The extent of the scaling is determined by the **ZOOM FACTOR** settings (explained above).

## Zoom menu

In Plot view, tap **Zoom** and tap an option. (If **Zoom** is not displayed, tap **Menu**.)

The zoom options are explained in the following table. Examples are provided on “Zoom examples” on page 81.



Option	Result
Center on Cursor	Redraws the plot so that the cursor is in the center of the screen. No scaling occurs.
Box	Explained in “Box zoom” on page 80.
In	Divides the horizontal and vertical scales by <b>X Zoom</b> and <b>Y Zoom</b> (values set with the <b>Set Factors</b> option explained on page 78). For instance, if both zoom factors are 4, then zooming in results in 1/4 as many units depicted per pixel. (Shortcut: press  .)
Out	Multiplies the horizontal and vertical scales by the <b>X Zoom</b> and <b>Y Zoom</b> settings. (Shortcut: press  .)
X In	Divides the horizontal scale only, using the <b>X Zoom</b> setting.
X Out	Multiplies the horizontal scale only, using the <b>X Zoom</b> setting.
Y In	Divides the vertical scale only, using the <b>Y Zoom</b> setting.
Y Out	Multiplies the vertical scale only, using the <b>Y Zoom</b> setting.
Square	Changes the vertical scale to match the horizontal scale. This is useful after you have done a box zoom, X zoom or Y zoom.

Option	Result (Cont.)
Autoscale	Rescales the vertical axis so that the display shows a representative piece of the plot given the supplied x axis settings. (For Sequence and Statistics apps, autoscaling rescales both axes.) The autoscale process uses the first selected function to determine the best scale to use.
Decimal	Rescales both axes so each pixel is 0.1 units. This is equivalent to resetting the default values for <b>XRNG</b> and <b>YRNG</b> .
Integer	Rescales the horizontal axis only, making each pixel equal to 1 unit.
Trig	Rescales the horizontal axis so that 1 pixel equals $\pi/24$ radians or 7.5 degrees; rescales the vertical axis so that 1 pixel equals 0.1 units.
Undo Zoom	Returns the display to the previous zoom, or if there has been only one zoom, displays the graph with the original plot settings.

### Box zoom

A box zoom enables you to zoom in on an area of the screen that you specify.

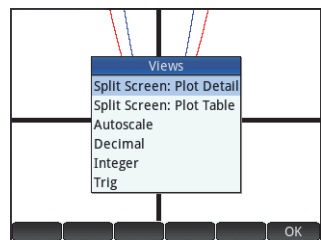
1. With the Plot view menu open, tap **Zoom** and select **Box**.
2. Tap one corner of the area you want to zoom in on and then tap **OK**.
3. Tap the diagonally opposite corner of the area you want to zoom in on and then tap **OK**.

The screen fills with the area you specified. To return to the default view, tap **Zoom** and select **Decimal**.

### Views menu

The most commonly used zoom options are also available on the **Views** menu. These are:

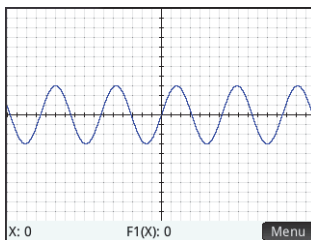
- Autoscale
- Decimal
- Integer
- Trig.



These options—which can be applied whatever view you are currently working in—are explained in the table immediately above.

## Testing a zoom with split-screen viewing

A useful way of testing a zoom is to divide the screen into two halves, with each half showing the plot, and then to apply a zoom only to one side of the screen. The illustration at the right is a plot of  $y = 3\sin x$ . To split the screen into two halves:

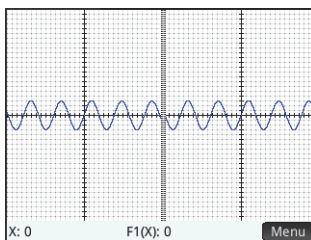


1. Open the **Views** menu.

Press

2. Select Split Screen: Plot Detail.

The result is shown at the right. Any zoom operation you undertake will be applied only to the copy of the plot in the right-hand half of the screen. This will help you test and then choose an appropriate zoom.



Note that you can replace the original plot on the left with the zoomed plot on the right by tapping .

To un-split the screen, press .

## Zoom examples

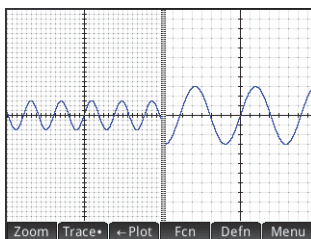
The following examples show the effects of the zooming options on a plot of  $3\sin x$  using the default zoom factors ( $2 \times 2$ ). Split-screen mode (described above) has been used to help you see the effect of zooming.

Note that there is an **Unzoom** option on the **Zoom** menu. Use this to return a plot to its pre-zoom state. If the **Zoom** menu is not shown, tap .

### Zoom In


In

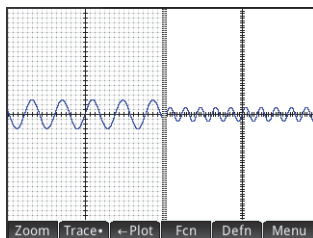
Shortcut: press



## Zoom Out

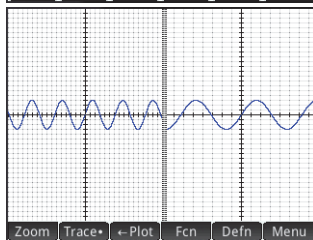
**Menu** **Zoom** Out

Shortcut: press  ;



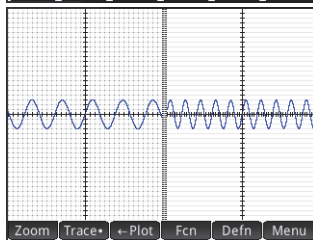
## X In

**Zoom** X In



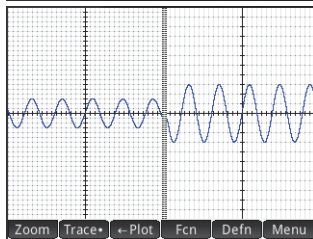
## X Out

**Zoom** X Out



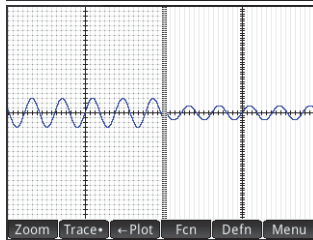
## Y In

**Zoom** Y In



## Y Out

**Zoom** Y Out

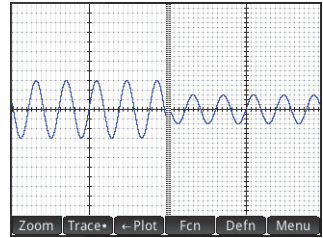




## Square

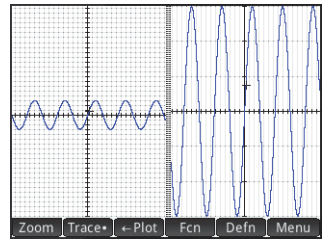
**Zoom** Square

Notice that in this example, the plot on left has had a **Y In** zoom applied to it. The **Square** zoom has returned the plot to its default state where the **X** and **Y** scales are equal.



## Autoscale

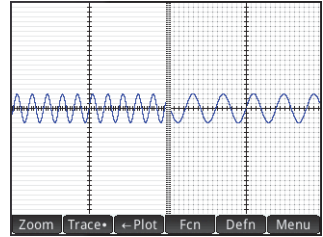
**Zoom** Autoscale



## Decimal

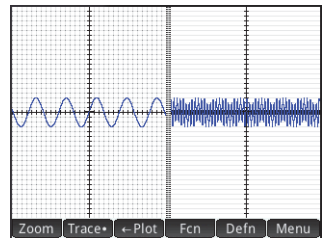
**Zoom** Decimal

Notice that in this example, the plot on left has had a **X In** zoom applied to it. The **Decimal** zoom has reset the default values for the **x**-range and **y**-range.



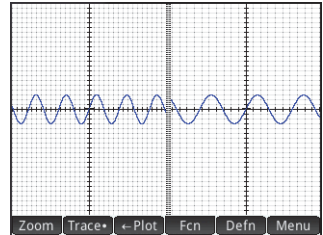
## Integer

**Zoom** Integer



## Trig

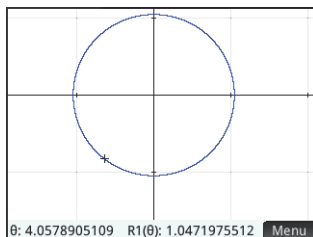
**Zoom** Trig



## Trace

[Scope: Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve, Statistics 1 Var, and Statistics 2Var.]

The tracing functionality enables you to move a cursor (the *trace cursor*) along the current graph. You move the trace cursor by pressing  $\blacktriangleleft$  or  $\blacktriangleright$ . You can also move the trace cursor by tapping on or near the current plot. The trace cursor jumps to the point on the plot that is closest point to where you tapped.



The current coordinates of the cursor are shown at the bottom of the screen. (If menu buttons are hiding the coordinates, tap **Menu** to hide the buttons.)

Trace mode and coordinate display are automatically turned on when a plot is drawn.

### To select a plot

If there is more than one plot displayed, press  $\blacktriangleup$  or  $\blacktriangledown$  until the trace cursor is on the plot you are interested in.

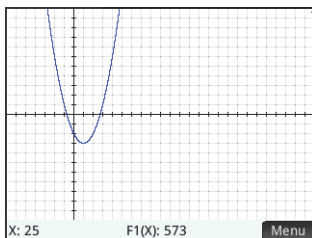
### To evaluate a definition

One of the primary uses of the trace functionality is to evaluate a plotted definition. Suppose in Symbolic view you have defined  $F1(X)$  as  $(X - 1)^2 - 3$ . Suppose further that you want to know what the value of that function is when  $X$  is 25.

1. Open Plot view (**Plot**  $\rightarrow$  **Setup**).
2. If the menu at the bottom of the screen is not open, tap **Menu**.
3. If more than one definition is plotted, ensure that the trace cursor is on the plot of the definition you want to evaluate. You can press **Defn** to see the definition of a plot, and press  $\blacktriangleup$  or  $\blacktriangledown$  to move the trace cursor from plot to plot.
4. If you pressed **Defn** to see the definition of a plot, the menu at the bottom of the screen will be closed. Tap **Menu** to re-open it.
5. Tap **Go To**.
6. Enter 25 and tap **OK**.
7. Tap **Menu**.

The value of  $F1(X)$  when  $X$  is 25 is shown at the bottom of the screen. .

This is one of many ways the HP Prime provides for you to evaluate a function for a specific independent variable. You can also evaluate a function in Numeric view (see page 92). Moreover, any expression you define in Symbolic view can be evaluated in Home view. For example, suppose  $F1(X)$  is defined as  $(x-1)^2-3$ . If you enter  $F1(4)$  in Home view and press  you get 6, since  $(4-1)^2-3 = 6$ .









### To turn tracing on or off

- To turn off tracing, tap .
- To turn on tracing, tap .

If these options are not displayed, tap .

When tracing is off, pressing the cursor keys no longer constrains the cursor to a plot.

## Plot view: Summary of menu buttons

Button	Purpose
	Displays a menu of zoom options. See “Zoom options” on page 78.
	A toggle button for turning off and turning on trace functionality. See “Trace” on page 84.
	Displays an input form for you to specify a value you want the cursor to jump to. The value you enter is the value of the independent variable.
 [Function only]	Displays a menu of options for analyzing a plot. See “Analyzing functions” on page 109.
	Displays the definition responsible for generating the selected plot.
	A toggle button that shows and hides the other buttons across the bottom of the screen.

## Common operations in Plot Setup view

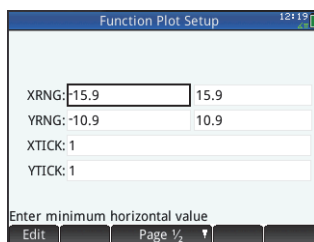
This section covers only operations common to the apps mentioned. See the chapter dedicated to an app for the app-specific operations done in Plot Setup view.



Press   to open Plot Setup view.

## Configure Plot view


[Scope: Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Statistics 1 Var, Statistics 2Var]

The Plot Setup view is used to configure the appearance of Plot view and to set the method by which graphs are plotted. The



configuration options are spread across two pages. Tap  to move from the first to the second page, and  to return to the first page.

**Tip**

When you go to Plot view to see the graph of a definition selected in Symbolic view, there may be no graph shown. The likely cause of this is that the spread of plotted values is outside the range settings in Plot Setup view. A quick way to bring the graph into view is to press  and select **Autoscale**. This also changes the range settings in Plot Setup view.

**Page 1**

Setup field	Purpose
<b>TRNG</b> [Parametric only]	Sets the range of T-values to be plotted. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value.
<b>TSTEP</b> [Parametric only]	Sets the increment between consecutive T-values.
<b>θRNG</b> [Polar only]	Sets the range of angle values to be plotted. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value.
<b>θSTEP</b> [Polar only]	Sets the increment between consecutive angle values.
<b>SEQPLOT</b> [Sequence only]	Sets the type of plot: Stairstep or Cobweb.
<b>NRNG</b> [Sequence only]	Sets the range of N-values to be plotted. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value.
<b>HWIDTH</b> [Stats 1 Var only]	Sets the width of the bars in a histogram.
<b>HRNG</b> [Stats 1 Var only]	Sets the range of values to be included in a histogram. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value.

<b>Setup field</b>	<b>Purpose (Cont.)</b>
<b>S*MARK</b> [Stats 2 Var only]	Sets the graphic that will be used to represent a data point in a scatter plot. A different graphic can be used for each of the five analyses that can be plotted together.
<b>XRNG</b>	Sets the initial range of the x-axis. Note that here are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value. In Plot view the range can be changed by panning and zooming.
<b>YRNG</b>	Sets the initial range of the y-axis. Note that there are two fields: one for the minimum and one for the maximum value. In Plot view the range can be changed by panning and zooming.
<b>XTICK</b>	Sets the increment between tickmarks on the x-axis.
<b>YTICK</b>	Sets the increment between tickmarks on the y-axis.

## Page 2

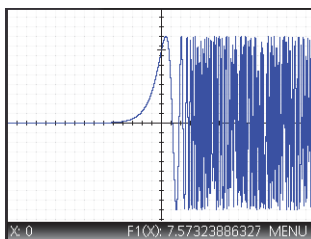
<b>Setup field</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<b>AXES</b>	Shows or hides the axes.
<b>LABELS</b>	Places values at the ends of each axis to show the current range of values.
<b>GRID DOTS</b>	Places a dot at the intersection of each horizontal and vertical grid line.
<b>GRID LINES</b>	Draws a horizontal and vertical grid line at each integer x-value and y-value.
<b>CURSOR</b>	Sets the appearance of the trace cursor: standard, inverting, or blinking.
<b>CONNECT</b> [Stats 2 Var only]	Connects the data points with straight segments.

Setup field	Purpose (Cont.)
<b>METHOD</b> [Not in either statistics app]	Sets the graphing method to adaptive, fixed-step segments, or fixed-step dots. Explained below.

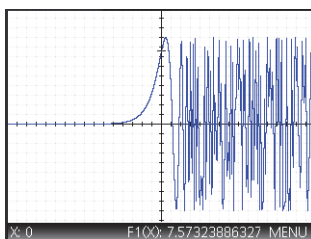
## Graphing methods

The HP Prime gives you the option of choosing one of three graphing methods. The methods are described below, with each applied to the function  $f(x) = 9 \cdot \sin(e^x)$ .

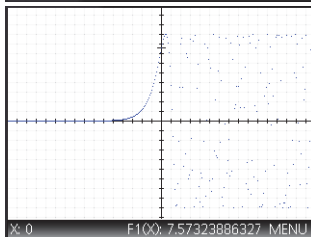
- *adaptive*: this gives very accurate results and is used by default. With this method active, some complex functions may take a while to plot. In these cases, **Stop** appears on the menu bar, enabling you to stop the plotting process if you wish.



- *fixed-step segments*: this method samples x-values, computes their corresponding y-values, and then plots and connects the points.



- *fixed-step dots*: this works like fixed-step segments method but does not connect the points.





## Restore default settings

[Scope: Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve, Statistics 1 Var, Statistics 2Var, Geometry.]

To restore one field to its default setting:

1. Select the field.

2. Press .

To restore all default settings, press  .

## Common operations in Numeric view

[Scope: Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar]

Numeric view functionality that is common to many apps is described in detail in this section. Functionality that is available only in a particular app is described in the chapter dedicated to that app.

Numeric view provides a table of evaluations. Each definition in Symbolic view is evaluated for a range of values for the independent variable. You can set the range and fineness of the independent variable, or leave it to the default settings.

X	F1	F2		
0	-2	-5		
0.1	-2.19	-4.99		
0.2	-2.36	-4.96		
0.3	-2.51	-4.91		
0.4	-2.64	-4.84		
0.5	-2.75	-4.75		
0.6	-2.84	-4.64		
0.7	-2.91	-4.51		
0.8	-2.96	-4.36		
0.9	-2.99	-4.19		
1	-3	-4		
0				

Zoom      Big      Defn      Width

Press  to open Numeric view.

## Zoom

Unlike in Plot view, zooming in Numeric view does not affect the size of what is displayed. Instead, it changes the increment between consecutive values of the independent variable (that is, the **NUMSTEP** setting in the Numeric Setup view: see page 95). Zooming in decreases the increment; zooming out increases the increment. The row that was highlighted before the zoom remains unchanged.

For the ordinary zoom in and zoom out options, the degree of zooming is determined by the zoom factor. In Numeric view this is the **NUMZOOM** field in the Numeric Setup view. The default value is 4. Thus if the current increment (that is, the **NUMSTEP** value) is 0.4, zooming in will further divide that interval by four smaller intervals. So instead of  $x$ -values of 10, 10.4, 10.8, 11.2 etc., the  $x$ -values will be 10, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, etc. (Zooming out



does the opposite: 10, 10.4, 10.8, 11.2 etc. becomes 10, 11.6, 13.2, 14.8, 16.4, etc.).

X	F1		
10	78		
10.4	85.36		
10.8	93.04		
11.2	101.04		
11.6	109.36		
12	118		
12.4	126.96		
12.8	136.24		
13.2	145.84		
13.6	155.76		
14	166		
10			
Zoom		Big	Defn Width


Before zooming

After zooming

## Zoom options



In Numeric view, zoom options are available from two sources:

- the keyboard
- the **Zoom** menu in Numeric view.

Note that any zooming you do in Numeric view does not affect Plot view, and vice versa. However, if you choose a zoom option from the **Views** menu () while you are in Numeric view, Plot view is displayed with the plots zoomed accordingly. In other words, the zoom options on the **Views** menu apply only to Plot view.

Zooming in Numeric view automatically changes the **NUMSTEP** value in the Numeric Setup view.

## Zoom keys



There are two zoom keys: pressing  zooms in and pressing  zooms out. The extent of the scaling is determined by the **NUMZOOM** setting (explained above).

## Zoom menu




In Numeric view, tap **Zoom** and tap an option.

X	F1		
10	78		
10.1	79.81		
10.2	81.64		
10.3	83.49		
10.4	85.36		
10.5	87.25		
10.6	89.16		
10.7	91.09		
10.8	93.04		
10.9	95.01		
11	97		
10			
Zoom			Width


The zoom options are explained in the following table.

Option	Result
In	The increment between consecutive values of the independent variable becomes the current value divided by the <b>NUMZOOM</b> setting. (Shortcut: press  .)
Out	The increment between consecutive values of the independent variable becomes the current value multiplied by the <b>NUMZOOM</b> setting. (Shortcut: press  .)
Decimal	Restores the default <b>NUMSTART</b> and <b>NUMSTEP</b> values: 0 and 0.1 respectively.
Integer	The increment between consecutive values of the independent variable is set to 1.
Trig	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the angle measure setting is radians, sets the increment between consecutive values of the independent variable to <math>\pi/24</math> (approximately 0.1309).</li><li>• If the angle measure setting is degrees, sets the increment between consecutive values of the independent variable to 7.5.</li></ul>
Undo Zoom	Returns the display to the previous zoom, or if there has been only one zoom, displays the graph with the original plot settings.

## Evaluating

You can step through the table of evaluations in Numeric view by pressing  or . You can also quickly jump to an evaluation by entering the independent variable of interest in the independent variable column and tapping .

For example, suppose in the Symbolic view of the Function app, you have defined  $F1(X)$  as  $(X - 1)^2 - 3$ . Suppose further that you want to know what the value of that function is when  $X$  is 625.

1. Open Numeric view (.
2. Anywhere in the independent column—the left-most column—enter 625.

3. Tap **OK**.

Numeric view is refreshed, with the value you entered in the first row and the result of the evaluation in a cell to the right. In this example, the result is 389373.

X	F1		
625	389373		
625.1	389497.81		
625.2	389622.64		
625.3	389747.49		
625.4	389872.36		
625.5	389997.25		
625.6	390122.16		
625.7	390247.09		
625.8	390372.04		
625.9	390497.01		
626	390622		

625

Zoom      Big      Defn      Width

## Custom tables

If you choose **Automatic** for the **NUMTYPE** setting, the table of evaluations in Numeric view will follow the settings in the Numeric Setup view. That is, the independent variable will start with the **NUMSTART** setting and increment by the **NUMSTEP** setting. (These settings are explained in “Common operations in Numeric Setup view” on page 95.) However, you can choose to build your own table where just the values you enter appear as independent variables.

1. Open Numeric Setup view.



2. Choose **BuildYourOwn** from the **NUMTYPE** menu.

3. Open Numeric view.

Numeric view will be empty.

4. In the independent column—the left-most column—enter a value of interest.

X	F1		
21	397		
22	438		
100	9798		
1000	997998		

Edit      Ins      Sort      Big      Defn      Width

5. Tap **OK**.

6. If you still have other values to evaluate, repeat from step 4.

## Deleting data

To delete one row of data in your custom table, place the cursor in that row and press **Del**.



To delete all the data in your custom table:

1. Press **Shift Esc Clear**.

2. Tap **OK** or press **Enter** to confirm your intention.

# Numeric view: Summary of menu buttons

Button	Purpose
<b>Zoom</b>	To modify the increment between consecutive values of the independent variable in the table of evaluations. See page 90.
<b>Edit</b> [BuildYourOwn only]	To edit the value in the selected cell. To overwrite the value in the selected cell, you can just start entering a new value without first tapping <b>Edit</b> . Only visible if <b>NUMTYPE</b> is set to BuildYourOwn. See "Custom tables" on page 93.
<b>Ins</b> [BuildYourOwn only]	To create a new row above the currently highlighted cell, with zero as the independent value. You can immediately start typing a new value. Only visible if <b>NUMTYPE</b> is set to BuildYourOwn. See "Custom tables" on page 93.
<b>Sort</b> [BuildYourOwn only]	To sort the values in the selected column in ascending or descending order. Move the cursor to the column of interest, tap <b>Sort</b> , select Ascending or Descending, and tap <b>OK</b> . Only visible if <b>NUMTYPE</b> is set to BuildYourOwn. See "Custom tables" on page 93.
<b>BIG</b>	Toggles the display between medium and large font.
<b>Defn</b>	Toggles between showing the value of the cell and the definition that generated the value.

Button	Purpose (Cont.)
<b>WIDTH</b>	Displays a menu for you to choose to display the evaluations of 1, 2, 3, or 4 definitions. If you have more than four definitions selected in Symbolic view, you can press  to scroll rightwards and see more columns. Pressing  scrolls the columns leftwards.

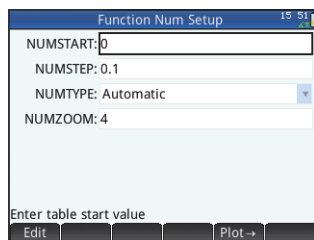
## Common operations in Numeric Setup view

[Scope: Advanced Graphing, Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence]

Press   to open Numeric Setup view.

The Numeric Setup view is used to:

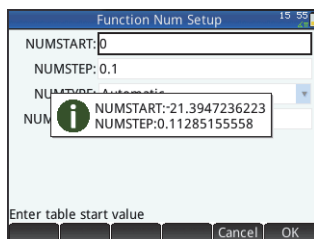
- set the starting number for the independent variable in automatic tables displayed in Numeric view: the **NUMSTART** field.
- set the increment between consecutive numbers in automatic tables displayed in Numeric view: the **NUMSTEP** field.
- specify whether the table of data to be displayed in Numeric view is to be based on the specified starting number and increment (automatic table) or to be based on particular numbers for the independent variable that you specify (build-your-own table): the **NUMTYPE** field.
- set the zoom factor for zooming in or out on the table displayed in Numeric view: the **NUMZOOM** field.



### Modifying Numeric Setup

Select the field you want to change and either specify a new value, or if you are choosing a type of table for Numeric view—automatic or build-your-own—choose the appropriate option from the **NUMTYPE** menu.

To help you set a starting number and increment that matches the current Plot view, tap **PLOT**.



## Restore default settings

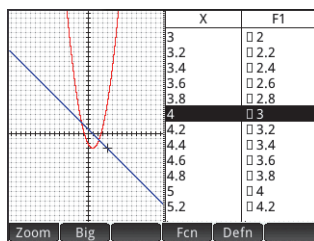
To restore one field to its default setting:

1. Select the field.
2. Press **Del**.

To restore all default settings, press **Shift Esc**.

## Combining Plot and Numeric Views

You can display Plot view and Numeric view side-by-side. Moving the tracing cursor causes the table of values in Numeric view to scroll. You can also enter a value in the  $x$  column. The table scrolls to that value, and the tracing cursor jumps to the corresponding point on the selected plot.



To combine Plot and Numeric view in a split screen, press **View Copy** and select **Split Screen: Plot Table**.

To return to Plot view, press **Num L-Setup**. To return to Numeric view by pressing **Num L-Setup**.

## Adding a note to an app

You can add a note to an app. Unlike general notes—those created via the Note Catalog: see chapter 25—an app note is not listed in the Note Catalog. It can only be accessed when the app is open.


An app note remains with the app if the app is sent to another calculator.

To add a note to an app:

1. Open the app.

2. Press   (Info).


If a note has already been created for this app, its contents are displayed.

3. Tap  and start writing (or editing) your note.

The format and bullet options available are the same as those in the Note Editor (described in “The Note Editor” on page 430).

4. To exit the note screen, press any key. Your note is automatically saved.

## Creating an app

The apps that come with the HP Prime are built in and cannot be deleted. They are always available (simply by pressing ). However, you can create any number of customized instances of most apps. You can also create an instance of an app that is based on a previously customized app. Customized apps are opened from the application library in the same way that you open a built-in app.

The advantage of creating a customized instance of an app is that you can continue to use the built-in app for some other problem and return to the customized app at any time with all its data still in place. For example, you could create a customized version of the Sequence app that enables you to generate and explore the Fibonacci series. You could continue to use the built-in Sequence app to build and explore other sequences and return, as needed, to your special version of the Sequence app when you next want to explore the Fibonacci series. Or you could create a customized version of the Solve app—named, for example, *Triangles*—in which you set up, just once, the equations for solving common problems involving right-angled triangles (such as  $H=O/\sin(\theta)$ ,  $A=H*\cos(\theta)$ ,  $O=A*\tan(\theta)$ , etc.). You could continue to use the Solve app to solve other types of problems but use your Triangle app to solve problems involving right-angled triangles. Just open *Triangles*, select which equation to use—you won’t need to re-enter them—enter the variables you know, and then solve for the unknown variable.

Like built-in apps, customized apps can be sent to another HP Prime calculator. This is explained in “Sharing data” on page 40.

Customized apps can also be reset, deleted, and sorted just as built-in apps can (as explained earlier in this chapter).

Note that the only apps that cannot be customized are the:

- Linear Explorer
- Quadratic Explorer and
- Trig Explorer apps.

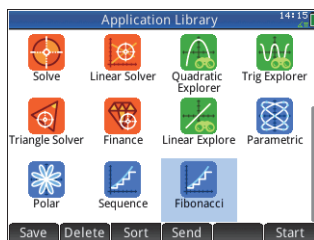
## Example

Suppose you want to create a customized app that is based on the built-in Sequence app. The app will enable you to generate and explore the Fibonacci series.

1. Press **Apps Info** and use the cursor keys to highlight the Sequence app. Don't open the app.
2. Tap **Save**. This enables you to create a copy of the built-in app and save it under a new name. Any data already in the built-in app is retained, and you can return to it later by opening the Sequence app.
3. In the **Name** field, enter a name for your new app—say, Fibonacci—and press **Enter** twice.



Your new app is added to the Application Library. Note that it has the same icon as the parent app—Sequence—but with the name you gave it: Fibonacci in this example.



4. If you want to clear the new app of any data that was in the parent app, make sure your new app is highlighted in the Application Library and tap **Reset**. Tap **OK** when you are asked to confirm your intention.

Note that this step is entirely optional. If you want to keep building on data that was in the parent app, then don't reset your new app.

5. You are now ready to use this app just as you would the built-in Sequence app. Tap on the icon of your new app to



open it. You will see in it all the same views and options as in the parent app.

In this example we have used the Fibonacci series as a potential topic for a customized app. To see how to create the Fibonacci series once inside the Sequence app—or an app based on the Sequence app—see chapter 16, “Sequence app”, beginning on page 257.



As well as cloning a built-in app—as described above—you can modify the internal workings of a customized app using the HP Prime programming language. See “Customizing an app” on page 460.

## App functions and variables

### Functions

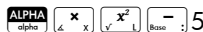
App functions are used in HP apps to perform common calculations. For example, in the Function app, the Plot view **Fcn** menu has a function called `SLOPE` that calculates the slope of a given function at a given point. The `SLOPE` function can also be used from the Home view or a program.

For example, suppose you want to find the derivative of  $x^2 - 5$  at  $x = 2$ . One way, using an app function, is as follows:

1. Press .
2. Tap  and select `Function > SLOPE`.

`SLOPE()` appears on the entry line, ready for you to specify the function and the  $x$ -value.

3. Enter the function:



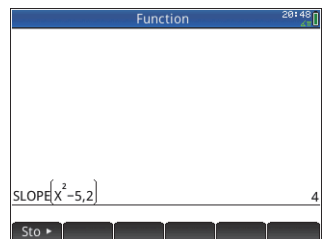
4. Enter the parameter separator:



5. Enter the  $x$ -value and press



The slope (that is the derivative) at  $x = 2$  is calculated: 4.



All the app functions are described in “App menu”, beginning on page 312.

## Variables

All apps have variables, that is, placeholders for various values that are unique to a particular app. These include symbolic expressions and equations, settings for the Plot and Numeric views, and the results of some calculations such as roots and intersections.

Suppose you are in Home view and want to retrieve the mean of a data set recently calculated in the Statistics 1Var app.

1. Press **Vars** Chars A.

This opens the Variables menu. From here you can access Home variables, user-defined variables, and app variables.

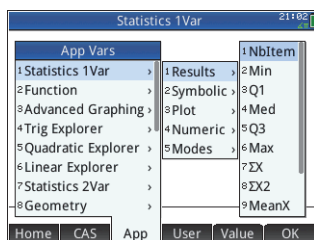
2. Tap **App**.

This opens a menu of app variables.

3. Select **Statistics 1Var**  
> **results** > **MeanX**.

The current value of the variable you chose now

appears on the entry line. You can press **Enter** to see its value. Or you can include the variable in an expression that you are building. For example, if you wanted to calculate the square root of the mean computed in the Statistics 1Var app, you would first press **Shift** **x<sup>2</sup>**, follow steps 1 to 3 above, and then press **Enter**.



See appendix A, "Glossary", beginning on page 527 for a complete list of app variables.

## Qualifying variables

You can qualify the name of any app variable so that it can be accessed from anywhere on the HP Prime. For example, both the Function app and the Parametric app have an variable named  $X_{min}$ . If the app you last had open was the Parametric app and enter  $X_{min}$  in Home view, you will get the value of  $X_{min}$  from the Parametric app. To get the value of  $X_{min}$  in the Function app instead, you could open the Function app and then return to Home view. Alternatively, you could qualify the name of the variable by preceding it with the app name and a period, as in  $Function.X_{min}$ .





## Function app

---

The Function app enables you to explore up to 10 real-valued, rectangular functions of  $y$  in terms of  $x$ ; for example,  $y = 1 - x$  and  $y = (x - 1)^2 - 3$ .

Once you have defined a function you can:

- create graphs to find roots, intercepts, slope, signed area, and extrema, and
- create tables that show how functions are evaluated at particular values.

This chapter demonstrates the basic functionality of the Function app by stepping you through an example. More-complex functionality is described in chapter 4, “An introduction to HP apps”, beginning on page 59.

## Getting started with the Function app

The Function app uses the customary app views: Symbolic, Plot and Numeric described in chapter 4.

For a description of the menu buttons available in this app, see:

- “Symbolic view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 76
- “Plot view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 86, and
- “Numeric view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 94.


Throughout this chapter, we will explore the linear function  $y = 1 - x$  and the quadratic function  $y = (x - 1)^2 - 3$ .

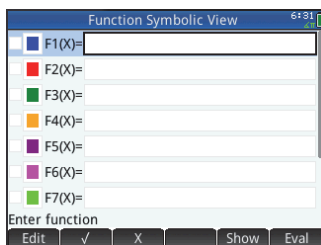
## Open the Function app

1. Open the Function app.

 Select Function

Recall that you can open an app just by tapping its icon.

You can also open it by using the cursor keys to highlight it and then pressing .






The Function app starts in Symbolic view. This is the *defining view*. It is where you symbolically define (that is, specify) the functions you want to explore.

The graphical and numerical data you see in Plot view and Numeric view are derived from the symbolic expressions defined here.

## Define the expressions


There are 10 fields for defining functions. These are labelled  $F_1(X)$  through  $F_9(X)$  and  $F_0(X)$ .

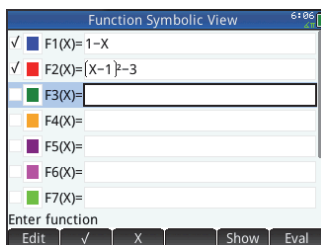
2. Highlight the field you want to use, either by tapping on it or scrolling to it. If you are entering a new expression, just start typing. If you are editing an existing expression, tap  and make your changes. When you have finished defining or changing the expression, press .
3. Enter the linear function in  $F_1(X)$ .

1   




4. Enter the quadratic function in  $F_2(X)$ .

     1 

  3 



### NOTE

You can tap the  button to assist in the entry of equations. In the Function app, it has the same effect as pressing . (In other apps,  enters a different character.)

5. Decide if you want to:
  - give one or more function a custom color when it is plotted
  - evaluate a dependent function
  - deselect a definition that you don't want to explore
  - incorporate variables, math commands and CAS commands in a definition.

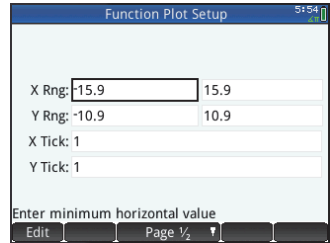
For the sake of simplicity we can ignore these operations in this example. However, they can be useful and are described in detail in “Common operations in Symbolic view” on page 71.



## Set up the plot

You can change the range of the  $x$ - and  $y$ -axes and the spacing of the tick marks along the axes

6. Display Plot Setup view.

  (Setup)



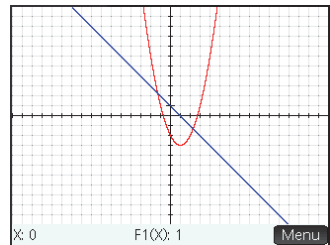
For this example, you can leave the plot settings at their default values. If your settings do not match those in the illustration above, press   (Clear) to restore the default values.

See “Common operations in Plot Setup view” on page 86 for more information about setting the appearance of plots.

## Plot the functions

7. Plot the functions.





## Trace a graph

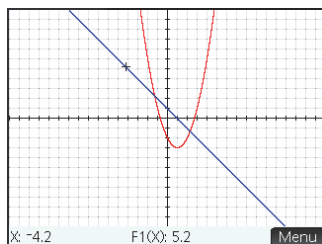
8. By default, the trace functionality is active. This enables you to move a cursor along the contour of a plot. If more than two plots are shown, the plot that is the highest in the list of functions in Symbolic view is the plot that will be traced by default. Since the linear equation is higher than the quadratic function in Symbolic view, it is the plot on which the tracing cursor appears by default

9. Trace the linear function.

▶ or ◀

Note how a cursor moves along the plot as you press the buttons. Note too that the

coordinates of the cursor appear at the bottom of the screen and change as you move the cursor.



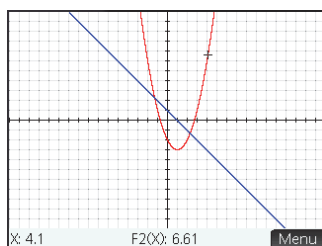
10. Move the tracing cursor from the linear function to the quadratic function.

▲ or ▼

11. Trace the quadratic function.

▶ or ◀

Again notice how the coordinates of the cursor appear at the bottom of the screen and change as you move the cursor.




Tracing is explained in more detail in "Trace" on page 84.

## Change the scale

You can change the scale to see more or less of your graph. This can be done in four ways:

- Press  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} + \\ \text{Ans} \end{array} \right]$  to zoom in or  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} - \\ \text{Base} \end{array} \right]$  to zoom out on the current cursor position. This method uses the zoom factors set in the **Zoom** menu. The default for both x and y is 2.



- Use the Plot Setup view to specify the exact x-range (XRNG) and y-range (YRNG) you want.
- Use options on the **Zoom** menu to zoom in or out, horizontally or vertically, or both, etc.
- Use options on the **View** menu (  ) to select a pre-defined view. Note that the Autoscale option attempts to provide a best fit, showing as many of the critical features of each plot as possible.

## NOTE

By dragging a finger horizontally or vertically across the screen, you can quickly see parts of the plot that are initially outside the set x and y ranges. This is easier than resetting the range of an axis.

Zoom options—with numerous examples—are explained in more detail in “Zoom” on page 78.

## Display Numeric view

12. Display the Numeric view:



The Numeric view displays data generated by the expressions you defined in Symbolic

view. For each expression selected in Symbolic view, Numeric view displays the value that results when the expression is evaluated for various x-values.

X	F1	F2	
0	1	-2	
0.1	0.9	-2.19	
0.2	0.8	-2.36	
0.3	0.7	-2.51	
0.4	0.6	-2.64	
0.5	0.5	-2.75	
0.6	0.4	-2.84	
0.7	0.3	-2.91	
0.8	0.2	-2.96	
0.9	0.1	-2.99	
1	0	-3	
0			

Zoom Big Defn Width

## Set up Numeric view

13. Display the Numeric Setup view:



You can set the starting value and step value (that is, the increment) for the x-column, as

well as the zoom factor for zooming in or out on a row of the table. Note that in Numeric view, zooming does not affect the size of what is displayed. Instead, it changes the **Num Step** setting (that is, the increment between consecutive x-values). Zooming in

Function Num Setup 14 08

NUMSTART: 0

NUMSTEP: 0.1

NUMTYPE: Automatic

NUMZOOM: 4

Enter table start value

Edit Plot

decreases the increment; zooming out increases the increment. This is further explained in “Zoom” on page 90.

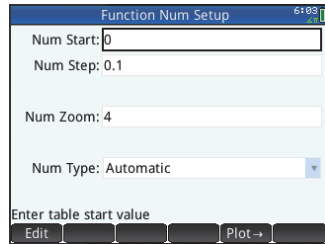
You can also choose whether the table of data in Numeric view is automatically populated or whether it is populated by you typing in the particular  $x$ -values you are interested in. These options—Automatic or BuildYourOwn—are available from the **Num Type** list. They are explained in detail in “Custom tables” on page 93.

14. Press **Shift** **Esc** (Clear) to reset all the settings to their defaults.

15. Make the Numeric view settings match the axes range in Plot view:

Tap **PLOT** **OK**.

For example, if you have zoomed in on the plot in Plot view so that the visible  $x$ -range is now  $-4$  to  $4$ , this option will set **NUMSTART** to  $-4$ .



## Explore Numeric view

16. Re-display Numeric view:



X	F1	F2	
-4	5	22	
-3.376101	4.37610063	1.6150257e1	
-2.752201	3.75220126	1.1079014e1	
-2.128302	3.12830189	6.78627269	
-1.504403	2.50440252	3.27203196	
-8.805e-1	1.88050314	5.362921e-1	
-2.566e-1	1.25660377	-1.42094696	
3.6730e-1	6.327044e-1	-2.59968514	
9.9119e-1	8.805031e-3	-2.99992247	
1.615094	-6.150943e-1	-2.62165895	
2.238994	-1.23899371	-1.46489458	
-4			

## To navigate around a table

17. Using the cursor keys, scroll through the values in the independent column (column  $x$ ). Note that the values in the F1 and F2 columns match what you would get if you substituted the values in the  $x$  column for  $x$  in the

X	F1	F2	
-4	5	22	
-3.974843	4.97484277	2.1749061e1	
-3.949686	4.94968553	2.1499387e1	
-3.924528	4.92452830	2.1250979e1	
-3.899371	4.89937107	2.1003837e1	
-3.874214	4.87421384	2.0757961e1	
-3.849057	4.84905660	2.0513350e1	
-3.823899	4.82389937	2.0270005e1	
-3.798742	4.79874214	2.0027926e1	
-3.773585	4.77358491	1.9787113e1	
-3.748428	4.74842767	1.9547565e1	
-3.79874213836			

expressions selected in Symbolic view:  $1 - x$  and  $(x - 1)^2 - 3$ . You can also scroll through the columns of the dependant variables (labeled F1 and F2 in the illustration above).

### To go directly to a value

18. Place the cursor in the X column and type the desired value. For example, to jump straight to the row where  $x = 10$ :




X	F1	F2	
10	-9	78	
10.4	-9.4	85.36	
10.8	-9.8	93.04	
11.2	-10.2	101.04	
11.6	-10.6	109.36	
12	-11	118	
12.4	-11.4	126.96	
12.8	-11.8	136.24	
13.2	-12.2	145.84	
13.6	-12.6	155.76	
14	-13	166	

10

Zoom Big Defn Width

1 0 

### To access the zoom options

Numerous zoom options are available by tapping . These are explained in “Zoom” on page 90. A quick way to zoom in (or zoom out) is to press  (or ). This zooms in (or out) by the **Num Zoom** value set in the Numeric Setup view (see page 107). The default value is 4. Thus if the current increment (that is, the **Num Step** value) is 0.4, zooming in will further divide that interval by four smaller intervals. So instead of  $x$ -values of 10, 10.4, 10.8, 11.2 etc., the  $x$ -values will be 10, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, etc. (Zooming out does the opposite: 10, 10.4, 10.8, 11.2 etc. becomes 10, 11.6, 13.2, 14.8, 16.4, etc.)


### Other options

As explained on page 94, you can also:

- change the size of the font from medium to large
- display the definition responsible for generating a column of values
- choose to show 1, 2, 3, or 4 columns of data.

You can also combine Plot and Numeric view. See “Custom tables” on page 93.

## Analyzing functions

The **Function** menu () in Plot view enables you to find roots, intersections, slopes, signed areas, and extrema for any function defined in the Function app. If

you have more than one function plotted, you may need to choose the function of interest beforehand.

## Display the Plot view menu

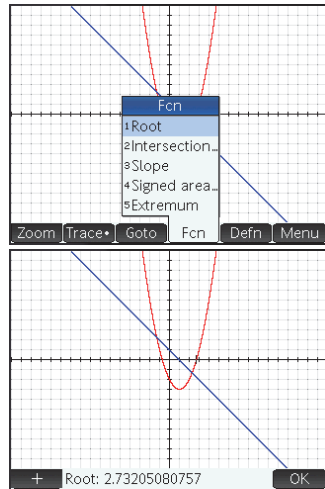
### To find a root of the quadratic function

The **Function** menu is a sub-menu of the Plot view menu. First, display the Plot view menu:



Suppose you want to find the root of the quadratic equation defined earlier. Since a quadratic equation can have more than one root, you will need to move the cursor closer to the root you are interested in than to any other root. In this example, you will find the root of the quadratic close to where  $x = 3$ .

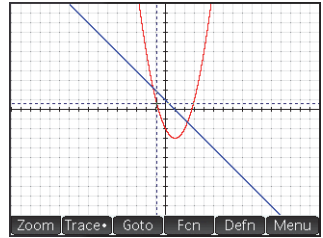
1. If it is not already selected, select the quadratic equation:  
▲ or ▼
2. Press ► or ◀ to move the cursor near to where  $x = 3$ .
3. Tap **Fcn** and select **Root**



The root is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

If you now move the trace cursor close to  $x = -1$  (the other place where the quadratic crosses the  $x$ -axis) and selected **Root** gain, the other root is displayed.

Note the **+** button. If you tap this, one or two dotted lines pick out the point of interest (in this case a root). If, while this button is active, you tap



elsewhere on the screen, a set of dotted lines appears on the screen. The dotted lines intersect the currently selected plot closest to the point you tapped. Their point of intersection is a tracing cursor. If you make another calculation where there is more than one answer, the answer that applies to the point closest to this tracing cursor is the answer provided. This is a faster way of choosing a point of interest than using the trace cursor. (You can move this tracing cursor using the cursor keys if you need finer precision.)

## To find an intersection of the two functions

Just as there are two roots of the quadratic equation, there are two points at which both functions intersect. As with roots, you need to position your cursor closer to the point you are interested in. In this example, the intersection close to  $x = 1$  will be determined.

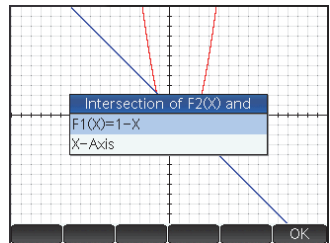
The **Go To** command is another way of moving the trace cursor to a particular point.

1. Tap **OK** to re-display the menu, tap **Go To**, enter  $\frac{+/-}{x} 1$ , and tap **OK**.

The tracing cursor will now be on one of the functions at  $x = 1$ .

2. Tap **Fcn** and select Intersection.

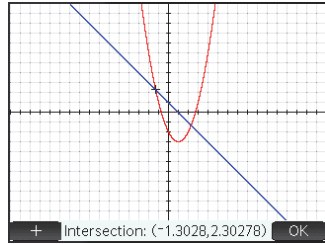
A list appears giving you a choice of functions and axes.



3. Choose the function whose point of intersection with the currently selected function you wish to find.

The coordinates of the intersection are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Tap **+** on the screen near the other intersection, and repeat from step 2. The coordinates of the intersection nearest to where you tapped are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

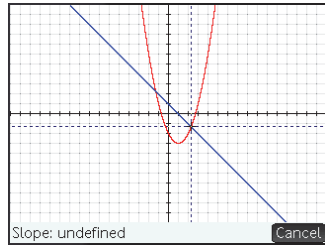


### To find the slope of the quadratic function

We will now find the slope of the quadratic function at the intersection point.

1. Tap **OK** to re-display the menu, tap **Fcn** and select **Slope**.

The slope (that is, the gradient) of the function at the intersection point is displayed at the bottom of the screen.



You can press **⏪** or **⏩** to trace along the curve and see the slope at other points. You can also press **⏴** or **⏵** to jump to another function and see the slope at points on it.

2. Press **Cancel** to re-display the Plot menu.

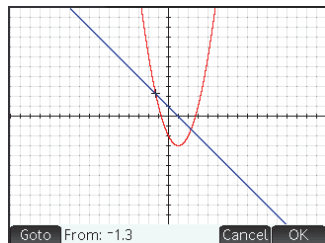
### To find the signed area between the two functions

We'll now find the area between the two functions in the range  $-1.3 \leq x \leq 2.3$ .

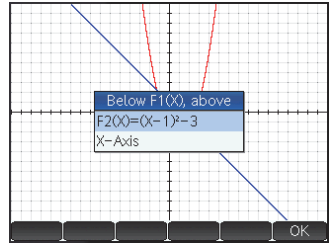
1. Tap **Fcn** and select **Signed area**.
2. Specify the start value for x:

Tap **Go To** and press  $\frac{+}{-}$  | 1 |  $\frac{\cdot}{\div}$  | 3 | **Enter**.

3. Tap **OK**.



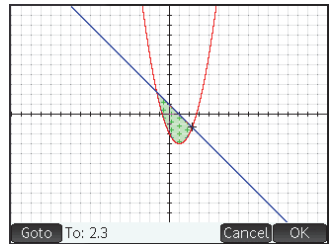
- Select the other function as the boundary for the integral. (If  $F1(X)$  is the currently selected function, you would choose  $F2(X)$  here, and vice versa.)



- Specify the end value for  $x$ :

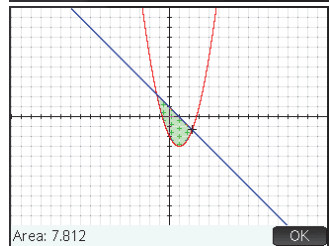
Tap **Go To** and press  $2 \cdot 3$  **Enter**.

The cursor jumps to  $x = 2.3$  and the area between the two functions is shaded.



- To display the numerical value of the integral, tap **OK**.

- Tap **OK** to return to the Plot menu.

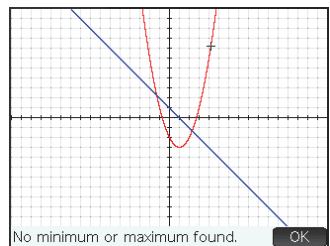


**Shortcut.** When the **Goto** option is

available, you can display the **Go To** screen simply by typing a number. The number you type appears on the entry line. Just tap **OK** to accept it.

## To find the extremum of the quadratic

- To calculate the coordinates of the extremum of the quadratic equation, move the tracing cursor near to it (if necessary), tap **Fcn** and select **Extremum**.



The coordinates of the extremum are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

**NOTE** The **ROOT INTERSECTION**, and **EXTREMUM** operations return only one value even if the function in question has more than one root, intersection, or extremum. The app will only return values that are closest to the cursor. You will need to move the cursor closer to other roots, intersections, or extrema if you want the app to calculate values for those.

## The Function Variables



The result of each numerical analysis in the Function app is assigned to a variable. These variables are named:

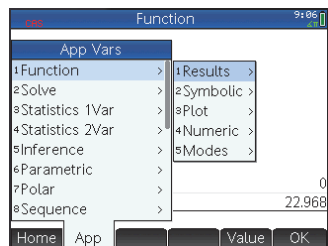
- Root
- Isect (for Intersection)
- Slope
- SignedArea
- Extremum

The result of each new analysis overwrites the previous result. For example, if you find the second root of a quadratic equation after finding the first, the value of **Root** changes from the first to the second root.

### To access Function variables

The Function variables are available in Home view and in the CAS, where they can be included as arguments in calculations. They are also available in Symbolic view.

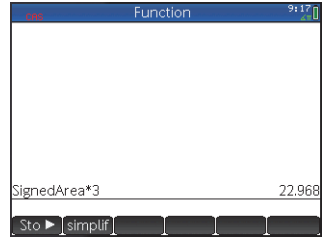
1. To access the variables, press  Chars: A, tap  **App** and select **Function**.
2. Select **Results** and then the variable of interest.



The variable's name is copied to the insertion point and its value is used in evaluating the expression that contains it.



For example, in Home view or the CAS you could select `SignedArea` from the **Vars** menus, press  $\times$  3  $\text{Enter}$  and get the current value of `SignedArea` multiplied by three.



Function variables can also be made part of a function's definition in Symbolic view. For example, you could define a function as  $x^2 - x - \text{Root}$ .

The full range of variables, and their use in calculations, is covered in detail in chapter 21, "Variables", beginning on page 373.

## Summary of FCN operations

Operation	Description
Root	Select <code>Root</code> to find the root of the current function nearest to the tracing cursor. If no root is found, but only an extremum, then the result is labeled <code>Extremum</code> instead of <code>Root</code> . The cursor is moved to the root value on the x-axis and the resulting x-value is saved in a variable named <code>Root</code> .
Extremum	Select <code>Extremum</code> to find the maximum or minimum of the current function nearest to the tracing cursor. The cursor moves to the extremum and the coordinate values are displayed. The resulting value is saved in a variable named <code>Extremum</code> .
Slope	Select <code>Slope</code> to find the numeric derivative of the current function at the current position of the tracing cursor. The result is saved in a variable named <code>Slope</code> .
Signed area	Select <code>Signed area</code> to find the numeric integral. (If there are two or more expressions checkmarked, then you will be asked to choose the second expression from a list that includes the x-axis.) Select a starting point and an ending point. The result is saved in a variable named <code>SignedArea</code> .
Intersection	Select <code>Intersection</code> to find the intersection of the graph you are currently tracing and another graph. You need to have at least two selected expressions in Symbolic view. Finds the intersection closest to the tracing cursor. Displays the coordinate values and moves the cursor to the intersection. The resulting x-value is saved in a variable named <code>Isect</code> .

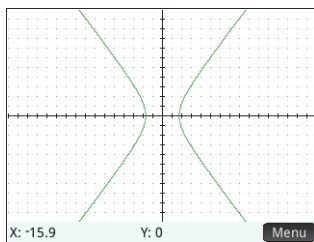
## Advanced Graphing app

The Advanced Graphing app enables you to define and explore the graphs of symbolic open sentences in  $x$ ,  $y$ , both or neither. You can plot conic sections, polynomials in standard or general form, inequalities, and functions. The following are examples of the sorts of open sentences you can plot:

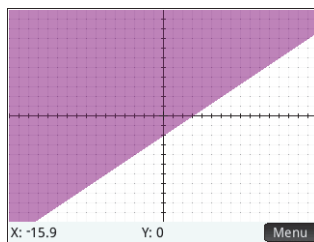
1.  $x^2/3 - y^2/5 = 1$
2.  $2x - 3y \leq 6$
3.  $y \text{ MOD } x = 3$
4.  $\sin((\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} - 5)^2) > \sin\left(8 \cdot \text{atan}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right)$
5.  $x^2 + 4x = -4$
6.  $1 < 0$

The illustrations below show what these open sentences look like when plotted:

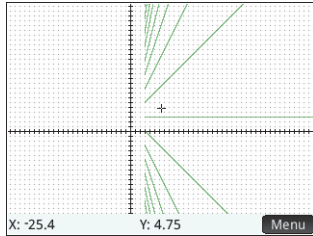
Example 1



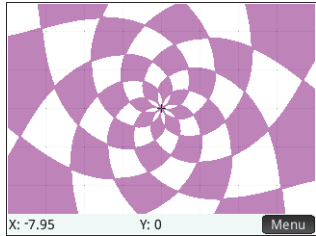
Example 2



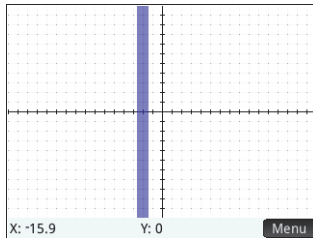
Example 3



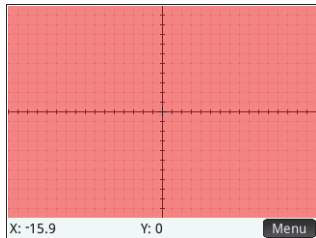
Example 4



Example 5



Example 6



## Getting started with the Advanced Graphing app

The Advanced Graphing app uses the customary app views: Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric described in chapter 4.

For a description of the menu buttons available in this app, see:

- “Symbolic view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 76
- “Plot view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 86, and
- “Numeric view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 94.


The Trace option in the Advanced Graphing app works differently than in other apps and is described in detail in this chapter.

In this chapter, we will explore the rotated conic defined by:

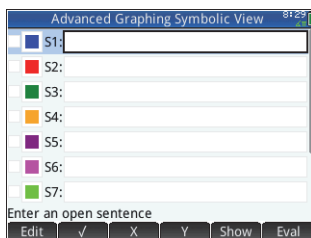
$$\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{7xy}{10} + \frac{3y^2}{4} - \frac{x}{10} + \frac{y}{5} - 10 < 0$$

## Open the app

1. Open the Advanced Graphing app:

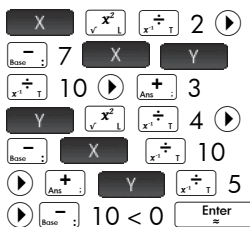
 Select Advanced Graphing

The app opens in the Symbolic view.

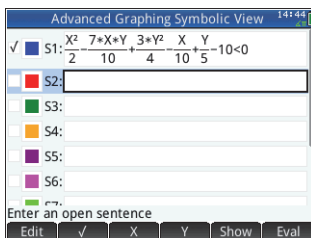


## Define the open sentence

2. Define the open sentence:



Note that  $<$  can be easily selected from the relations palette:  .



3. Decide if you want to:

- give one or more open sentence a custom color when it is plotted
- evaluate a dependent function
- deselect a definition that you don't want to explore
- incorporate variables, math commands and CAS commands in a definition.

For the sake of simplicity we can ignore these operations in this example. However, they can be useful and are described in detail in "Common operations in Symbolic view" on page 71.

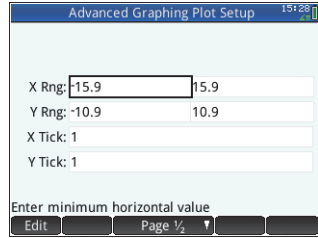
## Set up the plot

You can change the range of the  $x$ - and  $y$ -axes and the spacing of the interval marks along the axes.

4. Display Plot Setup view:

**Shift** **Plot Setup** (Setup)

For this example, you can leave the plot settings at their default values. If your settings do not match those in the illustration at the right example, press **Shift** **Esc** (Clear) to restore the default values.

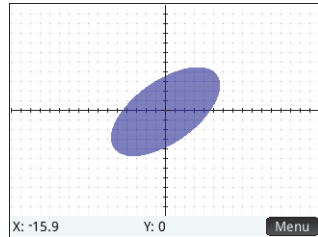


See “Common operations in Plot Setup view” on page 86 for more information about setting the appearance of plots.

## Plot the selected definitions

5. Plot the selected definitions:

**Plot Setup**

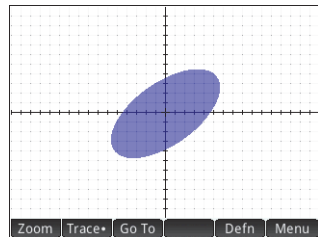


## Explore the graph

6. Display the Plot view menu items:

**Menu**

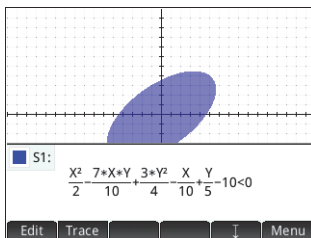
Note that you have options to zoom, trace, go to a specified x- or y-value, and display the definition of the selected graph.



You can use the zoom and split screen functionality discussed in chapter 5.

A special feature of the Advanced Graphing app enables you to edit the definition of a graph from within the Plot view.

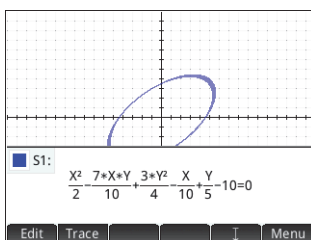
7. Tap **Defn**. The definition as you entered it in Symbolic view appears at the bottom of the screen.



8. Tap **Edit**. The definition is now editable.

9. Change the < to = and tap **OK**.

Notice that the graph changes to match the new definition. The definition in Symbolic view also changes.



10. Tap **↓** to drop the definition to the bottom of the screen so that you can see the full graph. The definition is converted from textbook mode to algebraic mode to save screen space.

## Trace a graph

[This functionality is not available as of build 3015]

## Display the Numeric view

11. Press **Num** **↳ Setup** to display the Numeric view.

Unlike in many other apps, the Numeric view in the Advanced Graphing app does not give a table of values generated by the

X	Y	S1		
0	0	False		
0.1	0.1	False		
0.2	0.2	False		
0.3	0.3	False		
0.4	0.4	False		
0.5	0.5	False		
0.6	0.6	False		
0.7	0.7	False		
0.8	0.8	False		
0.9	0.9	False		
1	1	False		

Independent Variable X

Zoom Trace Size Defn Column

definitions selected in Symbolic view. Instead, for various combinations of  $x$  and  $y$ , Numeric view shows whether the open sentence is satisfied.

## Explore Numeric view

12. With the cursor in the X column, type a new value and tap **OK**. The table scrolls to the value you entered.

You can also enter a value in the Y column and tap **OK**. Press **←** and **→** to move between the columns in Numeric view.

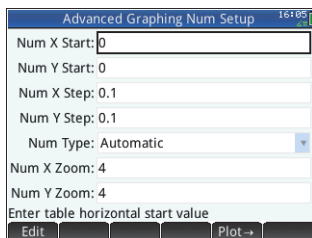
## Set up Numeric view

You can also zoom in or out on the X variable or Y variable (thereby decreasing or increasing the increment between consecutive values). This and other options are explained in “Common operations in Numeric view” on page 90.


13. Display the Numeric Setup view:

  (Setup)

You can set the starting value and step value (that is, the increment) for both the X-column and the Y-column, as well as the zoom factor for zooming in or out on a row of the table. Note that in Numeric view, zooming does not affect the size of what is displayed. Instead, it changes the **Num Step** setting (that is, the increment between consecutive x-values). Zooming in decreases the increment; zooming out increases the increment. This is further explained in “Zoom” on page 90.



You can also choose whether the table of data in Numeric view is automatically populated or whether it is populated by you typing in the particular x-values and y-values you are interested in. These options—*Automatic* or *BuildYourOwn*—are available from the **Num Type** list. They are explained in detail in “Custom tables” on page 93.

To make the Numeric view settings match the axes range in Plot view, tap  .



# Geometry


---

The Geometry app enables you to draw and explore geometric constructions. A geometric construction can be composed of any number of geometric objects, such as points, lines, polygons, curves, tangents, and so on. You can take measurements (such as areas and distances), manipulate objects, and note how measurements change.

There are five app views:

- Plot view: provides drawing tools for you to construct geometric objects
- Symbolic view: provides editable definitions of the objects in Plot view
- Numeric view: for making calculations about the objects in Plot view
- Plot Setup view: for customizing the appearance of Plot view
- Symbolic Setup view: for overriding certain system-wide settings

There is no Numeric Setup view in this app.

To open the Geometry app, press  and select **Geometry**. The app opens in Plot view.

## Getting started with the Geometry app

The following example shows how you can graphically represent the derivative of a curve, and have the value of the derivative automatically update as you move a point of tangency along the curve. The curve to be explored is  $y = 3\sin(x)$ .

Since the accuracy of our calculation in this example is not too important, we will first change the number format to fixed at 3 decimal places. This will also help keep our geometry workspace uncluttered.

## Preparation

1. Press **Shift** **Settings**.
2. On the **Home Setting** screen set the number format to **Fixed** and the number of decimal places to 3.

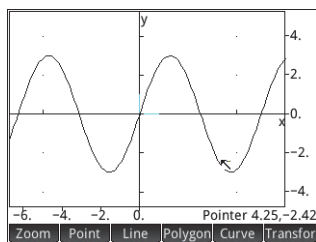
## Open the app and plot the graph

3. Press **Apps info** and select **Geometry**.  
If there are objects showing that you don't need, press **Shift** **Esc** **Clear** and confirm your intention by tapping **OK**.
4. Select the type of graph you want to plot. In this example we are plotting a simple sinusoidal function, so choose: **Curve** > Plot > Function
5. With `plotfunc(` on the entry line, enter  $3*\sin(x)$ :

3 **x** **SIN** **ALPHA** **Shift** **x** **Enter**

Note that  $x$  must be entered in lowercase in the Geometry app.

If your graph doesn't resemble the illustration at the right, adjust the **X Rng** and **Y Rng** values in Plot Setup view (**Shift** **Plot Setup**).

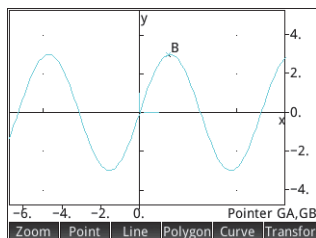


We'll now add a point to the curve, a point that will be constrained always to follow the contour of the curve.

## Add a constrained point

6. Tap **Point** and select **Point On**.  
Choosing **Point On** rather than **Point** means that the point will be constrained to whatever it is placed on.
7. Tap anywhere on the graph, press **Enter** and then press **Esc**.

Notice that a point is added to the graph and given a name (B in this example). Tap a blank area of the screen to deselect everything. (Objects colored cyan are selected.)



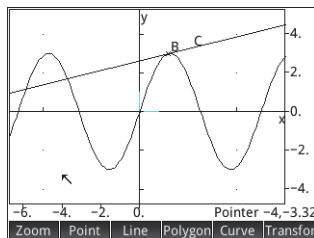
## Add a tangent

- We will now add a tangent to the curve, making point B the point of tangency:

**Line** > More > Tangent

- Tap on point B, press **Enter** and then press **Esc**.

A tangent is drawn through point B. (Depending on where you placed point B, your illustration might be different from the one at the right.)



We'll now make the tangent stand out by giving it a bright color.

- If the curve is selected, tap a blank area of the screen to deselect, and then tap on the tangent to select it.
- Press **Menu Paste** and select Change Color.
- Pick a color from the color-picker, press **Esc** and then tap on a blank area of the screen. Your tangent should now be colored.
- Press **Enter** to select point B.

If there is only one point on the screen, pressing **Enter** automatically selects it. If there is more than one point, a menu will appear asking you to choose a point.

- With point B selected, use the cursor keys to move it about.

Note that whatever you do, point B remains constrained to the curve. Moreover, as you move point B, the tangent moves as well. (If the moves off the screen, you can always bring it back by dragging your finger across the screen in the appropriate direction.)

- Press **Esc** to deselect point B.

## Create a derivative point

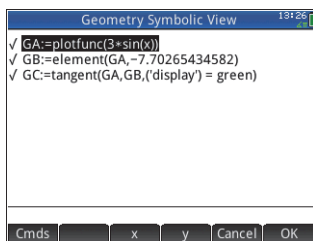
The derivative of a graph at any point is the slope of its tangent at that point. We'll now create a new point that will be constrained to point B and whose ordinate value is the derivative of the graph at point B. We'll constrain it by forcing its x coordinate (that is, its abscissa) to always match that of

point  $B$ , and its  $y$  coordinate (that is, its ordinate) to always equal the slope of the derivative at that point.

16. To define a point in terms of the attributes of other geometric objects, you need to go to Symbolic view:



Note that each object you have so far created is listed in Symbolic view. Note too that the name for an object in Symbolic view is the name it was given in Plot view but prefixed with a “G”. Thus the graph—labeled  $A$  in Plot view—is labeled  $GA$  in Symbolic view.



17. Highlight  $GC$  and tap **New**.

When creating objects that are dependent on other objects, the order in which they appear in Symbolic view is important. Objects are drawn in Plot view in the order in which they appear in Symbolic view. Since we are about to create a new point that is dependent on the attributes of  $GB$  and  $GC$ , it is important that we place its definition after that of both  $GB$  and  $GC$ . That is why we made sure we were at the bottom the list of definitions before tapping **New**. If our new definition appeared higher up in Symbolic view, the point we are about to create wouldn't be drawn in Plot view.

18. Tap **Cmds** and choose `Point > point`

You now need to specify the  $x$  and  $y$  coordinates of the new point. The former is to be constrained to abscissa of point  $B$  (referred to as  $GB$  in Symbolic view) and the later is to be constrained to the slope of  $C$  (referred to as  $GC$  in Symbolic view).

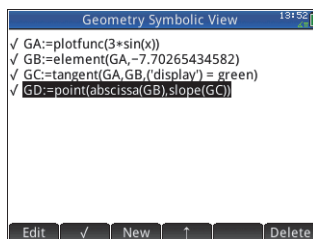
19. You should have `point()` on the entry line. Between the parentheses, add:

`abscissa(GB), slope(GC)`

You can enter the commands by hand, or choose them from the **Catlg** menu (one of the five Toolbox menus).

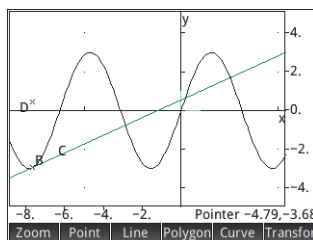
20. Tap **OK**.

The definition of your new point is added to Symbolic view. When you return to Plot view, you will see a point named D and it will have the same x coordinate as point B.



21. Press **Plot** **Setup**.

If you can't see point D, pan until it comes into view. The y coordinate of D will be the derivative of the curve at point B.



Since it's difficult to read coordinates off the screen, we'll add a calculation that will give the exact derivative (to three decimal places) and which we can display in Plot view.

## Add some calculations

22. Press **Num** **Setup**.

Numeric view is where you enter calculations.

23. Tap **New**.

24. Tap **Cmnds** and choose **Measure > slope**

25. Between parentheses, add the name of the tangent, namely GC, and tap **OK**.

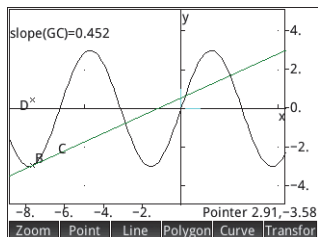
Notice that the current slope is calculated and displayed. The value here is dynamic, that is, if the slope of the tangent changes in Plot view, the value of the slope is automatically updated in Numeric view.

26. With the new calculation highlighted in Numeric view, tap **✓**.

Selecting a calculation in Numeric view means that it will also be displayed in Plot view.

27. Press **Plot**  to return to Plot view.

Notice the calculation that you have just created in Numeric view is displayed at the top left of the screen.



Let's now add two more calculations to Numeric view and have them displayed in Plot view.


28. Press **Num**  to return to Numeric view.

29. Tap **New** , enter GB, and tap **OK** .

Entering just the name of a point will show its coordinates.

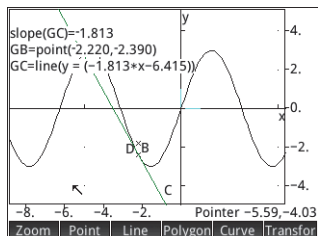
30. Tap **New** , enter GC, and tap **OK** .


Entering just the name of a line will show its equation.

31. Make sure both of these new equations are selected (by choosing each one and pressing **✓** ).

32. Press **Plot**  to return to Plot view.

Notice that your new calculations are displayed.



33. Press **Enter**  and choose point GB.







34. Use the cursor keys to move point B along the graph.

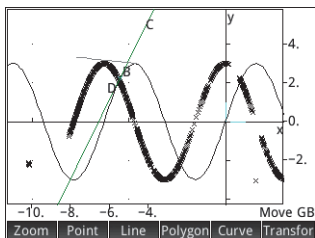
Note that with each move, the results of the calculations shown at the top left of the screen change.

## Trace the derivative


Point D is the point whose ordinate value matches the derivative of the curve at point B. It is easier to see how the derivative changes by looking at a plot of it rather than comparing subsequent calculations. We can do that by tracing point D as it moves in response to movements of point B.

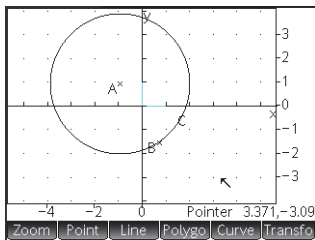
First we'll hide the calculations so that we can better see the trace curve.



35. Press  to return to Numeric view.
36. Select each calculation in turn and tap . All calculations should now be deselected.
37. Press  to return to Plot view.
38. Press  and select point GD.
39. Tap  and select More > Trace
40. Press  and select point GB.
41. Using the cursor keys, move B along the curve. You will notice that a shadow curve is traced out as you move B. This is the curve of the derivative of  $3\sin(x)$ .






## Plot view in detail

In Plot view you can directly draw objects on the screen using various drawing tools. For example, to draw a circle, tap  and select Circle. Now tap where you want the center of the circle to be and




press . Next, tap a point that is to be on the circumference and press . A circle is drawn with a center at the location of your first tap, and with a radius equal to the distance between your first tap and second tap.

Creating or selecting an object always involves at least two steps: tap and press . Only by pressing  do you confirm your intention to create the point or select an object. When creating a point, you can tap on the screen and then use the cursor keys to accurately position the point before pressing .

Note that there are on-screen instructions to help you. For example, Hit Center means tap where you want the center

of your object to be, and Hit Point 1 means tap at the location of the first point you want to add.

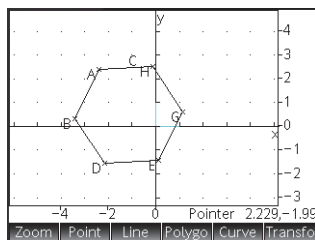
You can draw any number of geometric objects in Plot view. See “Geometric objects” on page 141 for a list of the objects you can draw. The drawing tool you choose—line, circle, hexagon, etc.—remains selected until you deselect it. This enables you to quickly draw a number of objects of the same type (such as a number of hexagons). Once you have finished drawing objects of a particular type, deselect the drawing tool by press . (You can tell if a drawing tool is still active by the presence of on-screen help at the top left-side corner of the screen, help such as Hit Point 1.)

An object in Plot view can be manipulated in numerous ways, and its mathematical properties can be easily determined (see page 138).

## Object naming

Each geometric object you create is given a name. In the example shown on page 129, note that the circle has been named C. Each defining point is also been named: the center point has been named A, and the point tapped to set the radius of the circle has been named B.

It is not only the points that define a geometric object that are given a name. Every component of the object that has any geometric significance is also named. If, for example, you create a hexagon, the hexagon is



given a name as is each point at each vertex. In the example at the right, the pentagon is named C, the points used to define the hexagon are named A and B, and the remaining four vertices are named D, E, G, and H. Moreover, each of the six segments is also given a name: I, J, K, L, M, and N. These names are not displayed in Plot view, but you can see them if you go to Symbolic view (see “Symbolic view in detail” on page 136).


Naming objects and parts of objects enables you to refer to them in calculations. This is explained in “Numeric view in detail” on page 138.



You can rename an object. See “Renaming an object” on page 137.



## Selecting an object

To select an object, just tap on it. The color of a selected item changes to cyan.

To select a point in Plot view, just press . A list of all the points appears. Select the one you want.



## Hiding names

You can choose to hide the name of an object in Plot view:

1. Press .
2. Select `Toggle Caption`.  
The **Select Object** menu appears.
3. Select the object whose label (that is, caption) you want to hide.
4. Press .

Redisplay a hidden name by repeating this procedure.



## Moving objects

**Points** To move a point press . A list of all the points appears. Select the one you want to move, then tap on the new location for it, and press . You can also press the arrow keys to move a selected point. A point can be selected directly by tapping on it. (If the bottom-right of the screen shows the name of the point, you have accurately tapped the point; otherwise the pointer coordinates are shown, indicating that the point is not selected.)

**Composite objects** To move a multi-point object, see “Translation” on page 148.

## Coloring objects


An object is colored black by default (and cyan when it is selected). If you want to change the color of an object:

1. Press .
2. Select `Change Color`.  
The **Select Object** menu appears.
3. Select the object whose color you want to change.  
The **Choose Color** palette appears.
4. Select the color you want.
5. Press .

Note that for object with closed contours (such as a circle or polygon) it is the fill color that is changed.

## Filling objects

An object with closed contours (such as a circle or polygon) can be filled with color.

1. Press .
2. Select `Fill with Color`.  
The **Select Object** menu appears.

3. Select the object you want to fill.

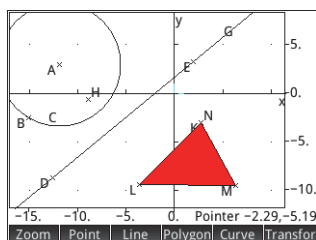
The object is highlighted.

1. Press .
2. Select `Change Color`.

The **Choose Color** palette appears.


3. Select the color you want.

4. Press .




## Removing fill



To remove the fill from an object:




1. Press .
2. Select `Fill with Color`.  
The **Select Object** menu appears.
3. Select the object.

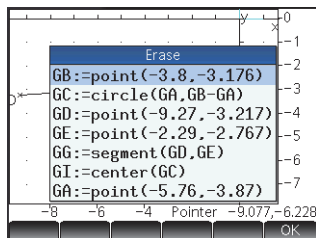
## Undoing

You can undo your last addition or change to Plot view by pressing . However, you must have keyboard shortcuts activated for this to work. See page 135.

## Clearing an object




To clear one object, select it and tap . Note that an object is distinct from the points you entered to create it. Thus deleting the object does not delete the points that define it. Those points remain in the app. For example, if you select a circle and press , the circle is deleted but the center point and radius point remain.

If you tap  when no object is selected, a list of objects appears. Tap on the one you want to delete, and tap  to confirm your intention. If you don't want to delete an object, press  to close the list.



Note that points you add to an object once the object has been defined are cleared when you clear the object. Thus if you place a point (say D) on a circle and delete the circle, the circle and D are deleted, but the defining points—the center and radius points—remain.


### Clearing all objects

To clear the app of all geometric objects, press . You will be asked to confirm your intention to do so. Tap  to clear the app, or  to keep the app as it is,





### Moving about the Plot view






You can pan by dragging a finger across the screen: either up, down, left, or right. You can also use the cursor keys to pan once the cursor is at the edge of the screen.

### Zooming

You can zoom using touch gestures (see page 3) or by tapping  and choosing a zoom option. The zoom options are the same as you find in the Plot view of many apps in the calculator (see “Zoom” on page 78).

## Plot view: buttons and keys


Button or key	Purpose
	Various scaling options. See “Zoom” on page 78.
	Tools for creating various types of points. See “Points” on page 141
	Tools for creating various types of lines. See “Line” on page 143
	Tools for creating various types of polygons. See “Polygon” on page 145

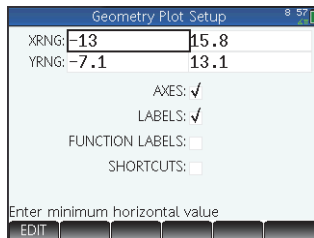
Button or key	Purpose (Continued)
	Tools for creating various types of curves and plots. See “Curve” on page 146
	Tools for geometric transformations of various kinds. See “Geometric transformations” on page 148.
	Deletes a selected object (or the character to the left of the cursor if the entry line is active).
	De-activate the current drawing tool
	Clears the Plot view of all geometric objects.
Shortcut keys	To quickly add an object, and undo what you’ve done. See page 135.

## Plot Setup view

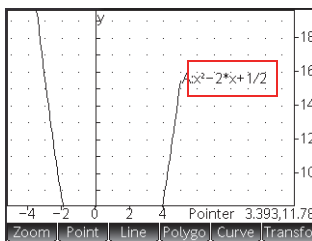
The Plot Set view enables you to configure the appearance of Plot view and to take advantage of keyboard shortcuts. The fields and options are:

- **X Rng:** Two fields for entering the minimum and maximum x-values, thereby giving the default horizontal range. As well as changing this range on the **Geometry Plot Setup** screen, you can change it by panning and zooming.
- **Y Rng:** Two fields for entering the minimum and maximum y-values, thereby giving the default vertical range. As well as changing this range on the **Geometry Plot Setup** screen, you can change it by panning and zooming.
- **Axes:** A toggle option to hide (or reshown) the axes in Plot view.


Keyboard shortcut: 




- **Labels:** A toggle option to hide (or reshown) the names of the geometric objects (A, B, C, etc.) in Plot view.
- **Function Labels:** A toggle option to hide (or reshown) the expression that generated a plot with the plot. These should not be confused with calculation labels. You can show function labels without also showing calculation labels and vice versa).
- **Shortcuts:** A toggle option to enable (or disable) keyboard shortcuts (that is, hot keys) in Plot view. With this option enabled, the following shortcuts become available:

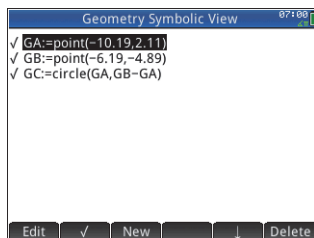


Key	Result in Plot view
	Hide (or reshown) the axes.
	Selects the circle drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see page 146).
	Erases all trace lines (see page 142)
	Selects the intersection drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see page 142).
	Selects the line drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see page 143).
	Selects the point drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see page 141).
	Selects the segment drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see page 143).
	Selects the triangle drawing tool. Follow the instructions on the screen (or see page 145).


Key	Result in Plot view (Continued)
	Undo.

## Symbolic view in detail

Every object—whether a point, segment, line, polygon, or curve—is given a name, and its definition is displayed in Symbolic view (). The name is the name for it you see in Plot view, but prefixed by “G”.






Thus a point labeled A in Plot view is given the name GA in Symbolic view.



The G-prefixed name is a variable that can be read by the computer algebra system (CAS). Thus in the CAS you can include such variables in calculations. Note in the illustration above that GC is the name of the variable that represents a circle drawn in Plot view. If you are working in the CAS and wanted to know what the area of that circle is, you could enter `area(GC)` and press . (The CAS is explained in chapter 3.)

### NOTE

Calculations referencing geometry variables can only be made in the CAS or in the Numeric view of the Geometry app (explained below on page 138). They cannot be made in Home view.

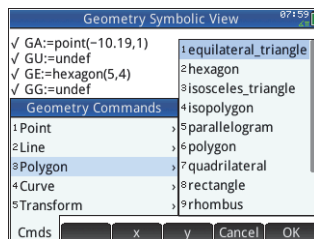
You can change the definition of an object by selecting it, tapping , and altering one or more of its defining parameters. The object is modified accordingly in Plot view. For example, if you selected point GB in the illustration above, tapped , changed one or both of the point's coordinates, and tapped , you would find, on returning to Plot view, a circle of a different size.

### Creating objects

You can also create an object in Symbolic view. Tap , define the object—for example, `point(4,6)`—and press . The object is created and can be seen in Plot view.

Another example: to draw a line through points P and Q, enter  $\text{line}(GP, GQ)$  in Symbolic view and press . When you return to Plot view, you will see a line passing through points P and Q.

The object-creation commands available in Symbolic view can be seen by tapping . The syntax for each command is given in "Geometry functions and commands" on page 151



## Re-ordering entries

You can re-order the entries in Symbolic view. Objects are drawn in Plot view in the order in which they are defined in Symbolic view. To change the position of an entry, highlight it and tap either  (to move it down the list) or  (to move it up).

## Hiding an object

To prevent an object displaying in Plot view, deselect it in Symbolic view:

1. Highlight the item to be hidden.
2. Tap .

Repeat the procedure to make the object visible again.

## Deleting an object

As well as deleting an object in Plot view (see page 132) you can delete an object in Symbolic view.

1. Highlight the definition of the object you want to delete.
2. Tap  or press .

To delete all objects, press  .

## Renaming an object

You can change the name that is automatically given to an object. For example, you could rename a circle from  $G_C$  to  $G_{Circle}$ , or rename one square from  $G_J$  to  $G_{House}$  and another from  $G_L$  to  $G_{Paddock}$ . The new names will also appear in Plot view (and can also be referenced in Numeric view and in the CAS).

Note that a name must be a single string of characters (that is, it must contain no spaces). Also, the G prefix must be retained.

1. Highlight the definition of the object you want to rename.
2. Tap **Renam**.
3. Make your change and tap **OK**. [Functionality removed as at 3015]

## Symbolic Setup view

The Symbolic view of the Geometry app is common with many apps. It is used to override certain some system-wide settings. For details, see “Symbolic Setup view” on page 64.

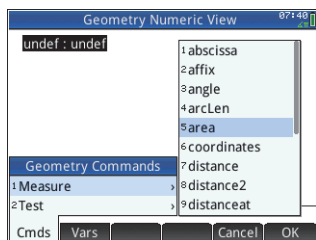
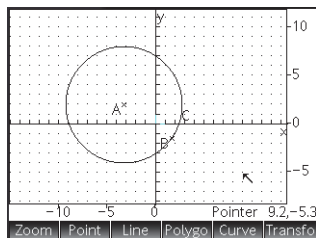
## Numeric view in detail

Numeric view (**Num**) enables you to do calculations in the Geometry app. The results displayed are dynamic—if you manipulate an object in Plot view or Symbolic view, any calculations in Numeric view that refer to that object are automatically updated to reflect the new properties of that object.

Consider circle  $C$  in the illustration at the right. To calculate the area and radius of  $C$ :

1. Press **Num** to open Numeric view.
2. Tap **New**.
3. Tap **Cmds** and choose Measure > Area.

Note that `area()` appears on the entry line, ready for you to specify the object whose area you are interested in.



All the Geometry commands are explained in “Geometry functions and commands” on page 151.



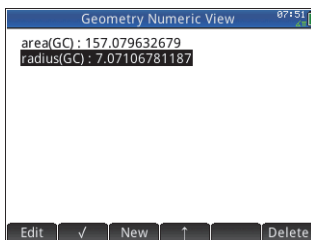
4. Tap **Vars**, choose **Curves** and then the curve whose area you are interested in.

The name of the object is placed between the parentheses.

You could have entered the command and object name manually, that is, without choosing them from menus. If you enter object names manually, remember that the name of the object in Plot view must be given a “G” prefix if it is used in any calculation. Thus the circle named **C** in Plot view must be referred to as **GC** in Numeric view and Symbolic view.

5. Press **Enter** or tap **OK**. The area is displayed.
6. Tap **New**.
7. Enter **radius(GC)** and tap **OK**. The radius is displayed.

Note that the syntax used here is the same as you use in the CAS to calculate the properties of geometric objects.



The Geometry functions and their syntax are described in “Geometry functions and commands” on page 151.

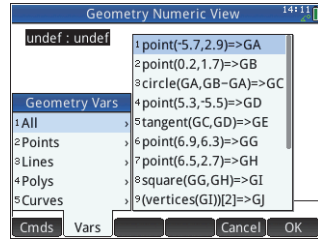
8. Press **Plot** to go back to Plot view. Now manipulate the circle in some way that changes its area and radius. For example, select the center point (**A**) and use the cursor keys to move it to a new location. (Remember to press **Enter** when you have finished.)
9. Press **Num** to go back to Numeric view. Notice that the area and radius calculations have been automatically updated.

## NOTE

If an entry in Numeric view is too long for the screen, you can press **Down Arrow** to scroll the rest of the entry into view. Press **Up Arrow** to scroll back to the original view.

## Listing all objects

When you are creating a new calculation in Numeric view, the **Vars** menu item appears. Tapping **Vars** gives you a list of all the objects in your Geometry workspace. These are also grouped according to their type, with each group given its own menu.



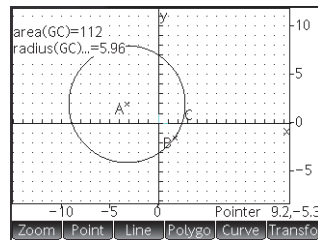
If you are building a calculation, you can select an object from one of these variables menus. The name of the selected object is placed at the insertion point on the entry line.

## Getting object properties

As well as employing functions to make calculations in Numeric view, you can also get various parameters of objects just by tapping **New** specifying the object's name. For example, you can get the exact coordinates of a point by entering the point and pressing **Enter**. Another example: if you can get the formula for a line just by entering its name, or the center point and radius of a circle just by entering the name of the circle.

## Displaying calculations in Plot view

To have a calculation made in Numeric view appear in Plot view, just highlight it in Numeric view and tap **✓**. A checkmark appears beside the calculation.



Repeat the procedure to prevent the calculation being displayed in Plot view. The checkmark is cleared.

## Editing a calculation

1. Highlight the calculation you want to delete.
2. Tap **Edit**.
3. Make your change and tap **OK**.

## Deleting a calculation

1. Highlight the calculation you want to delete.
2. Tap **Delete**.

To delete all calculations, press **Shift** **Esc** **Clear**. Note that deleting a calculation does not delete any objects from Plot or Symbolic view.

## Geometric objects

The geometric objects discussed in this section are those that can be created in Plot view. Objects can also be created in Symbolic view—more, in fact, than in Plot view—but these are discussed in “Geometry functions and commands” on page 151.

In Plot view, you choose a drawing tool to draw an object. The tools are listed in this section. Note that once you select a drawing tool, it remains selected until you deselect it. This enables you to quickly draw a number of objects of the same type (such as a number of circles). To deselect the current drawing tool, press **Esc** **Clear**. (You can tell if a drawing tool is still active by the presence of on-screen help in the top left-side corner of the screen, help such as `Hit Point 1`.)

The steps provided in this section are based on touch entry. For example, to add a point, the steps will tell you to *tap* on the screen where you want the point to be. However, you can also use the cursor keys to position the cursor where you want the point to be and then press **Enter**.

The drawing tools for the geometric objects listed in this section can be selected from the menu buttons at the bottom of the screen. Some objects can also be entered using a keyboard shortcut. For example, you can select the triangle drawing tool by pressing **x** **+** **r**. (Keyboard shortcuts are only available if they have been turned on in Plot Setup view. See page 134.)

## Points


Tap **Point** to display a menu and submenus of options for entering various types of points. The menus and submenus are:


### Point

Tap where you want the point to be and press **Enter**.



Keyboard shortcut: **EEX** **Sto** **P**


## Point On

Tap the object where you want the new point to be and press . If you select a point that has been placed on an object and then move that point, the point will be constrained to the object on which it was placed. For example, a point placed on a circle will remain on that circle regardless of how you move the point.



If there is no object where you tap, a point is created if you then press .


## Midpoint

Tap where you want one point to be and press . Tap where you want the other point to be and press . A point is automatically created midway between those two points.

If you choose an object first—such as a segment—choosing the Midpoint tool and pressing  adds a point midway between the ends of that object. (In the case of a circle, the midpoint is created at the circle's center.)

## Intersection

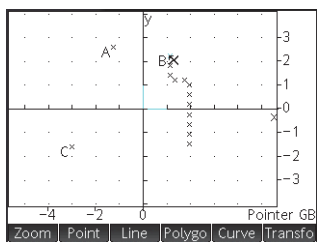
Tap one of the two intersecting objects and press . Tap the other object and press . A point is created at one of the points of intersection.

Keyboard shortcut: 

More

## Trace

Displays a list of points for you to choose the one you want to trace. If you subsequently move that point, a trace line is drawn on the screen to show its path. In the example at the right, point B was chosen to be traced. When that point was moved—up and to the left—a path of its movement was created.



Trace creates an entry in Symbolic view. In the example above, the entry is `Trace(GB)`.

## Stop Trace

Turns off tracing and deletes the definition of the trace point from Symbolic view. If more than one point is being traced, a

menu of trace points appears so that you can choose which one to untrace.

Untrace does not erase any existing trace lines. It merely prevents any further tracing should the point be moved again.

## Erase Trace

Erases all trace lines, but leaves the definition of the trace points in Symbolic view. While a Trace definition is still in Symbolic view, if you move the point again, a new trace line is created.

## Center

Tap a circle and press

## Element 0 .. 1

???????????

## Intersections

Tap one object and press . Tap another object and press . Each point of intersection is labeled (and labeled) identically. Note that an intersections object is created in Symbolic view even if the two objects selected do not intersect.

## Random pts

Displays a palette for you to choose to add 1, 2, 3, or 4 points. The points are placed randomly.

## Line

### Segment

Tap where you want one endpoint to be and press . Tap where you want the other endpoint to be and press . A segment is drawn between the two end points.

Keyboard shortcut:

### Ray

Tap where you want the endpoint to be and press . Tap a point that you want the ray to pass through and press . A ray is drawn from the first point and through the second point.

### Line

Tap at a point you want the line to pass through and press . Tap at another point you want the line to pass through and press . A line is drawn the two points.

Keyboard shortcut:

## Vector

Tap where you want one endpoint to be and press . Tap where you want the other endpoint to be and press . A vector is drawn between the two end points.

## Angle bisector

1 ↻ Bisector

Tap the point that is the vertex of the angle to be bisected (A) and press . Tap another point (B) and press . Tap a third point (C) and press . A line is drawn through A bisecting the angle formed by  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$ .

## Perpend-icular bisector

2 ⊥ Bisector

Tap one point on the line ( $L$ ) you want to bisect and press . Tap another point on  $L$  and press . A line is drawn perpendicular to  $L$  and equidistant from the two points you tapped.

You can also draw a perpendicular bisector to a line that doesn't exist. Just tap and press  at one point and do the same at another point. A line is drawn perpendicular to the imaginary line between the two points and equidistant from both points.

If you are drawing a perpendicular bisector to a segment, choose the segment first and then select **Perp. Bisector** from the **Line** menu. The bisector is drawn immediately without you having to select any points. Just press  to save the bisector.

## Parallel

3 //

Tap on a point ( $P$ ) and press . Tap on a line ( $L$ ) and press . A new line is drawn parallel to  $L$  and passing through  $P$ .

## Perpend-icular

4 ⊥

Tap on a point ( $P$ ) and press . Tap on a line ( $L$ ) and press . A new line is drawn perpendicular to  $L$  and passing through  $P$ .

## Tangent

Tap on a curve ( $C$ ) and press . Tap on a point ( $P$ ) and press . A one or more lines are drawn from  $P$  tangent to  $C$ .

## Median

Tap on a vertex (A) and press . Tap on the line opposite the vertex and press . A line is drawn through A that crosses segment  $\overline{BC}$  equidistant from both endpoints.

## Altitude

Tap on a vertex (A) and press . Tap on the line opposite the vertex and press . A line is drawn through A that crosses segment  $\overline{BC}$  at right angles.

## Polygon

The **Polygon** menu provides tools for drawing various polygons.

## Triangle

Tap at each vertex, pressing  after each tap.

Keyboard shortcut:

## Quadrilateral

Tap at each vertex, pressing  after each tap.

## Ngon

### Polygon5

Produces a pentagon. Tap at each vertex, pressing  after each tap.

### Polygon6

Produces a hexagon. Tap at each vertex, pressing  after each tap.

## Hexagon

Produces a regular hexagon (that is, one with sides of equal length). Tap at each vertex, pressing  after each tap.

## Special

### Eq. triangle

Produces an equilateral triangle. Tap at one vertex and press . Tap at another vertex and press . The location of the third vertex is automatically calculated and the triangle is drawn.

### Square

Tap at one vertex and press . Tap at another vertex and press . Tap at a third vertex and press . The location of the fourth vertex is automatically calculated and the square is drawn.

### Parallel-ogram

Tap at one vertex and press . Tap at another vertex and press . Tap at a third vertex and press . The location of the fourth vertex is automatically calculated and the parallelogram is drawn.

# Curve

## Circle

Tap at the center of the circle and press . Tap at point on the circumference and press . A circle is drawn about the center point with a radius equal to the distance between the two tapped points.

Keyboard shortcut:

You can also create a circle by first defining in Symbolic view. The syntax is `circle(GA, GB)` where A and B are two points. A circle is drawn in Plot view such that A and B are on the circumference.

## Ellipse

Tap at one focus point and press . Tap at the second focus point and press . Tap at point on the circumference and press .

## Hyperbola

Tap at one focus point and press . Tap at the second focus point and press . Tap at point on one branch of the hyperbola and press .

## Parabola

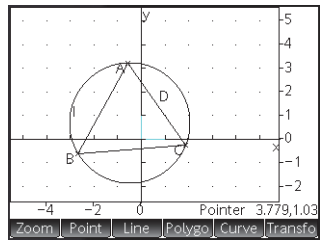
Tap at the focus point and press . Tap either on a line (the directrix) or a point (the vertex) and press .

### Special

## Circumcircle

A circumcircle is the circle that passes through each of the triangle's three vertices, thus enclosing the triangle.

Tap at each vertex of the triangle, pressing  after each tap.

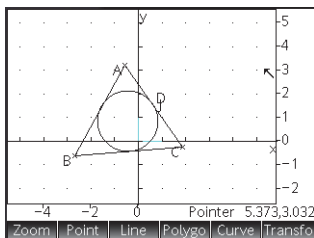




## Incircle

An incircle is a circle that is tangent to each of a polygon's sides. The HP Prime can draw an incircle that is tangent to the sides of a triangle.

Tap at each vertex of the triangle, pressing  after each tap.

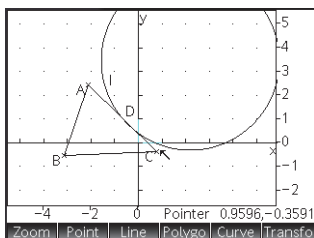


## Excircle

If you extend two sides of a triangle in the direction opposite their common vertex and then draw a circle tangent both to these lines and to the third side of the triangle, you have an excircle.

Tap at each vertex of the triangle, pressing  after each tap.

The excircle is drawn tangent to the side defined by the last two vertices tapped. In the example at the right, the last two vertices tapped were A and C (or C and A). Thus the excircle is drawn tangent to the segment  $\overline{AC}$ .



## Locus

???????????

## Plot

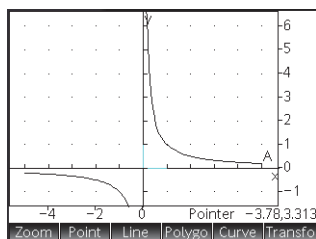
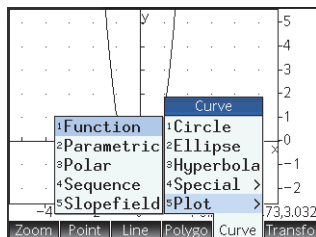
You can plot expressions of the following types in Plot view:

- Function
- Parametric
- Polar
- Sequence
- Slopefield

Tap **Curve**, select **Plot**, and then the type of expression you want to plot. The entry line is enabled for you to define the expression.

Note that the variables you specify for an expression must be in lowercase.

In this example, **Function** has been selected as the plot type and the graph of  $y = 1/x$  is plotted.



## Geometric transformations

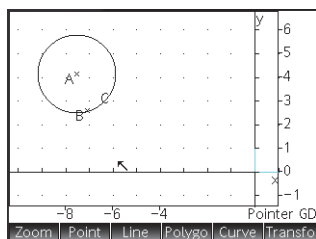
The **Transform** menu—displayed by tapping **Transfor**—provides numerous tools for you to transform a geometric object in Plot view.

### Translation

Translation is moving each point of an object the same distance and in the same direction. You create a vector to indicate the distance and direction of the translation, choose the object to be translated, and copy of the object to be moved in line with the vector.

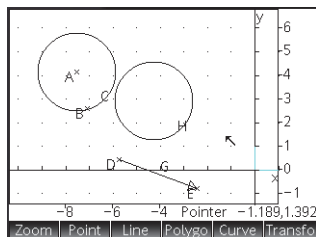
Suppose you want to move circle B at the right down a little and to the right:

1. Tap **Line** and select **Vector**.
2. Draw a vector in the direction you want to move the circle and of the same length as move you intend. (If you need help, see “Vector” on page 144.)
3. Tap **Transfor**.
4. Tap the vector and press **Enter**.



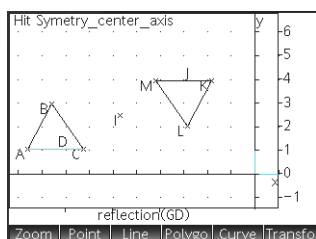
- Tap the object to be moved and press

The object is moved the same length as the vector and in the same direction. The original object is left in place.



## Reflection

Reflection is a transformation in which a copy of an object is made and every point on the new object is the same distance from a symmetry axis (or mirror line) as the original point. In the example at the right, the original triangle D is reflected an imaginary symmetry axis that passes through point I.

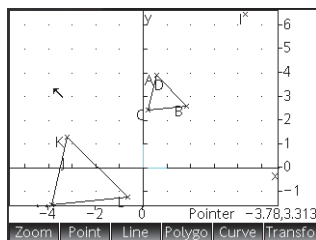


- Tap  and select **Reflection**.
- Tap a point that will be in the symmetry axis (that is, mirror line) and press .
- Tap the object that is to be reflected across the symmetry axis and press . The object is reflected across the symmetry axis defined by the point created at step 2.

## Dilation

Dilation is a transformation where an object is enlarged or reduced by a given factor around a given center point. The factor is sometimes referred to as the homothetic ratio (or scale factor) and the center point is called the homothetic center (or center of dilation).

the illustration at the right, the scale factor is 2 and the center of dilation is indicated by a point near the top right of the screen (named I). Each point on the new triangle is in line with its corresponding point on the original triangle and point I. Further, the distance from point I



to each new point will be twice the distance to the original point (since the scale factor is 2).

1. Tap **Transform** and select **Dilation**.
2. Tap the point that is to be the center of dilation and press .
3. Enter the homothetic ratio (that is, the scale factor) and press .
4. Tap the object that is to be dilated and press .

## Rotation

Rotates a specified object about a specified point a specified number of degrees or radians.

[Not in Plot view, but available in Symbolic view. Broken as at May 18.]

More

## Projection

Creates an projection of the points on one object onto another object. The projection is orthogonal, that is, each projected point meets the object onto which it is projected at right angles.

Broken as at 18 May

1. Tap **Transform** and select **Projection**.
  2. Tap the object onto which points are to be projected and press .
  3. Tap the object that is to be projected and press .
- Note the new points added to the target object.

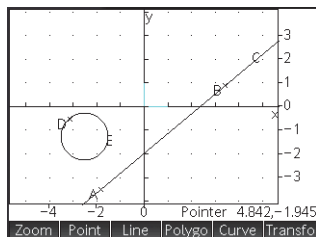
## Inversion

Creates an inversion circle based on a specified center point, inversion ratio, and an inversion point on a line.

1. Tap **Transform** and select **Inversion**.
2. Tap the point that is to be the center (C) of the inversion circle and press .

3. Enter the inversion ratio ( $r$ ) and press .

4. Tap on a line where you want the inversion point (B) to be and press .



In the example at the right, the inversion ratio is 6 and the inversion point was a point tapped on line AB. Note that the center point and inversion point are not created as separate points.

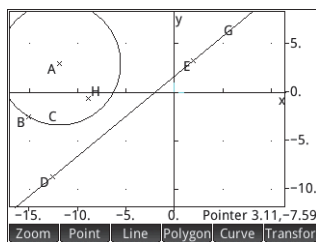
## Reciprocation

To create a point that is the reciprocation of another point (or a line) with respect to a circle:

1. Tap  and select **Reciprocation**.

2. Tap the circle and press .

3. Tap the point or line that is to generate the reciprocation point and press .



In the example at the right, point H is the reciprocation of line G on circle C.

## Geometry functions and commands

The list of geometry-specific functions and commands in this section covers those that can be found by tapping  in both Symbolic and Numeric view and those that are only available from the Catlg menu.

The sample syntax provided has been simplified. Geometric objects are referred to by a single uppercase character (such as A, B, C and so on). However, calculations referring to geometric objects—in the Numeric view of the Geometry app and in the CAS—must use the G-prefixed name given for it in Symbolic view. For example:

$\text{altitude}(A, B, C)$  is the simplified form given in this section

`altitude(GA, GB, GC)` is the form you need to use in calculations

Further, in many cases the specified parameters in the syntax below— $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  etc.—can be the name of a point (such as  $GA$ ) or a complex number representing a point. Thus `angle(A, B, C)` could be:

- `angle(GP, GR, GB)`
- `angle(3+2i, 1-2i, 5+i)` or
- a combination of named points and points defined by a complex number, as in `angle(GP, i1-2i, i)`.

## Symbolic view: Cmds menu

### Point

#### **barycenter**

`barycenter([point1,coeff1],...)` draws the barycenter of point 1 with weight coeff1...

```
barycenter([Pnt,Real],[Pnt,Real],[Pnt,Real])
```

#### **center**

Gives the coordinates of the center of circle  $A$ .

```
center(A)
```

#### **division\_point**

Returns the point  $M$  such that  $(z-a)=k*(z-b)$  and  $z$ =affix of  $M$  ( $MA=k*MB$ ).

```
division_point(Pnt or Cplx(a), Pnt or  
Cplx(b), Cplx(k))
```

#### **element**

Shows a point chosen on a curve or a real chosen in an interval

```
element((Curve or Real_interval), [Val])
```

#### **inter**

With 2 arguments gives the intersection of 2 curves or surfaces as a vector. If a third argument is given, the intersection returned is the one closest to that argument.

```
inter(Curve, Curve, [Pnt])
```

## isobarycenter

isobarycenter(A,B,C,...) draws the isobarycenter of the n points A,B,C,...

## midpoint

midpoint(A,B) draws the midpoint of the segment AB

```
midpoint((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx))
```

## orthocenter

Shows the orthocenter of a triangle or of the triangle made with 3 points.

```
orthocenter((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx))
```

## point

A:=point(za) (resp A:=point([a,b,c])) draws a point of affix za (resp of coordinates (a,b,c)) with the legend A

```
point(Cplx(za) || Vect)
```

## point2d

Defines at random, the coordinates (between -5 and +5) of the 2-d points given as argument.

```
point2d(SeqVar(A,B,C...))
```

## trace

Turns on tracing of the specified point.

## Line

### DrawSlp

Draws a line with slope m, going through the point (a, b).

```
DrawSlp(Real(a), Real(b), Real(m))
```

### LineTan

Draws the tangent to  $y=f(x)$  at  $x=a$ .

```
LineTan(Expr(f(x)), [Var], Expr(a))
```

## altitude

Draws a line through A that crosses segment  $\overline{BC}$  at right angles.

```
altitude(A,B,C)
```

## bisector

Draws the bisector of the angle (AB,AC) given by 3 points A,B,C.

```
bisector((Pnt(A) or Cplx), (Pnt(B) or  
Cplx), (Pnt(C) or Cplx))
```

## exbisector

Draws the exterior bisector of the angle (AB,AC) given by 3 points A,B,C.

```
exbisector((Pnt(A) or Cplx), (Pnt(B) or  
Cplx), (Pnt(C) or Cplx))
```

## half\_line

half\_line(A,B) draws the half-line AB with A as origin

```
half_line((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx))
```

## line

line(A,B) or line( $a*x+b*y+c=0$ ) or  
line( $a*x+b*y+c*z+d=0$ ,  $aa*x+bb*y+cc*z+dd=0$ ) draws  
the line AB in the plane or in the 3D space. line(A,slope=m)  
draws the line going through A with slope m or of equation  
the argument in the plane or in 3D space.

```
line(Pnt||Cplx||Eq, [Pnt||slope||Var])
```

## median\_line

median\_line(A,B,C) draws the median-line through A of the  
triangle ABC

```
median_line((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt  
or Cplx))
```

## parallel

parallel(A,D) (resp parallel(A,P) or parallel(A,D,DD)) draws  
the line (resp plane) through A parallel to the line D (resp  
parallel to the plane P or to the lines D,DD) and, parallel(d,D)  
draws the plane through d parallel to the line D.



```
parallel(Pnt or Line,Line or Plan,[Line])
```

## perpen\_bisector

perpen\_bisector(A,B) draws the bisection (line or plane) of the segment AB.

```
perpen_bisector((Pnt or Cplx),(Pnt or Cplx))
```

## perpendicular

perpendicular(A,line(B,C)) or perpendicular(A,B,C) draws the orthogonal line of line BC through A and perpendicular(d,plane(B,C,D)) draws the orthogonal plane of plane(B,C,D) through the line d.

```
perpendicular((Pnt or Line),(Line or Plan))
```

## segment

segment(A,B) draws the segment AB

```
segment((Pnt or Cplx),(Pnt or  
Cplx),[Var],[Var])
```

## tangent

tangent(C,A) draws the tangents (line or plane) to C through A.

```
tangent(Curve(C),Pnt(A))
```

# Polygon

## equilateral\_triangle

equilateral\_triangle(A,B) (resp equilateral\_triangle(A,B,P)) draws the direct equilateral triangle ABC of side AB (resp in the half-plane ABP).

```
equilateral_triangle((Pnt(A) or Cplx),(Pnt(B)  
or Cplx),[Pnt(P)],[Var(C)])
```

## hexagon

Returns and draws the hexagon of side AB (ABCDEF is direct) (in the plane ABP).

```
hexagon(Pnt(A)||Cplx,Pnt(B)||Cplx,[Pnt(P)],[V  
ar(C)],[Var(D)],[Var(E)],[Var(F)])
```

## isosceles\_triangle

Draws the isosceles triangle ABC  $AB=AC$  and  $\text{angle}(AB,AC)=t$  (or in the plane ABP  $\text{angle}(AB,AC)=\text{angle}(AB,AP)$  or  $\text{angle}(AB,AC)=t$ ).

```
isosceles_triangle((Pnt(A) or Cplx), (Pnt(B) or  
Cplx), (Angle(t) or Pnt(P) or  
Lst(P,t)), [Var(C)] )
```

## isopolygon

Draws a regular polygon having  $\text{abs}(n)$  vertices, given by 2 vertices (or 2 vertices and 1 point of the plane) if  $n>0$  and by its center and 1 vertex (or its center, 1 vertex and 1 point of the plane) if  $n<0$ .

```
isopolygon(Pnt, Pnt, [Pnt], Intg(n))
```

## parallelogram

Returns and draws the parallelogram ABCD such as  $\text{vector}(AB)+\text{vector}(AD)=\text{vector}(AC)$ .

```
parallelogram(Pnt(A) || Cplx, Pnt(B) || Cplx, Pnt(C)  
|| Cplx, [Var(D)] )
```

## polygon

Returns and draws the polygon where its vertices are the element of l.

```
polygon(LstPnt || LstCplx)
```

## quadrilateral

Returns and draws the quadrilateral ABCD.

```
quadrilateral(Pnt(A) || Cplx, Pnt(B) || Cplx, Pnt(C)  
|| Cplx, Pnt(D) || Cplx)
```

## rectangle

Returns and draws the rectangle ABCD,  $AD=k*AB$  if  $k>0$  ABCD is direct else indirect (in the plane ABP  $AD=AP$  or  $AD=k*AB$ ).

```
rectangle(Pnt(A) || Cplx, Pnt(B) || Cplx, Real(k) ||  
Pnt(P) || Lst(P,k), [Var(D)], [Var(C)])
```

## rhombus

Returns and draws the rhombus ABCD such as the angle  $(AB,AD)=a$  (or in the plane ABP  $\text{angle}(AB,AD)=\text{angle}(AB,AP)$  or such that  $\text{angle}(AB,AD)=a$ ).

```
rhombus (Pnt (A) | | Cplx, Pnt (B) | | Cplx, Angle (a) | | Pnt (P) | | Lst (P, a), [Var (C)], [Var (D)])
```

## right\_triangle

Draws the A\_rectangular triangle ABC with  $AC=k*AB$  (or in the plane ABP  $AC=AP$  or  $AC=k*AB$ ).

```
right_triangle ((Pnt (A) or Cplx), (Pnt (B) or Cplx), (Real (k) or Pnt (P) or Lst (P, k)), [Var (C)])
```

## square

Returns and draws the square of side AB (ABCD is direct) (in the plane ABP).

```
square ((Pnt (A) or Cplx), (Pnt (B) or Cplx), [Pnt (P), Var (C), Var (D)])
```

## triangle

triangle(A,B,C) draws the triangle ABC

```
triangle ((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx))
```

## Curve

### Function

Defines a function plot.

```
plotfunc (Expr)
```

### circle

Define for 2-d a circle with a diameter (arg2=Point) or with center and radius (arg2=Complex, abs(arg2)=radius)

[or the arc AB, A angle a, B angle b (arg1+arg2=angle 0)] or by its equation and for 3-d with a diameter and a third point

```
circle ((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt (arg2) or Cplx (arg2)), [Real (a)], [Real (b)], [Var (A)], [Var (B)])
```

## circumcircle

`circumcircle(A,B,C)=circumcircle of the triangle ABC.`

```
circumcircle((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx), ((Pnt  
or Cplx))
```

## conic

Defines a conic by its equation with  $x,y$  as default variables and draws it.

```
conic(Expr, [LstVar])
```

## ellipse

`ellipse(F1,F2,M)=ellipse focus F1,F2 through M or such as  $MF1+MF2=2*a$  (geo2d) and ellipse(p(x,y)) draws the conic if  $\deg(p)=2$ .`

```
ellipse(Pnt(F1), Pnt(F2), (Pnt(M) or Real(a) ) y  
ellipse(p(x,y))=conic si deg(p)=2.)
```

## excircle

`excircle(A,B,C) draws the A-excircle of the ABC triangle.`

```
excircle((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or  
Cplx))
```

## hyperbola

`hyperbola(F1,F2,M)=hyperbola focus F1,F2 through M or  $(|MF1-MF2|=2*a$  geo2d) and hyperbola(p(x,y)) draws the conic if  $\deg(p)=2$ .`

```
hyperbola(Focus(F1), Focus(F2), (Pnt(M) or  
Real(a) ) )
```

## incircle

`incircle(A,B,C) draws the incircle of the ABC triangle.`

```
incircle((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or  
Cplx))
```

## locus

`locus(M,A) draws the locus of M (or locus(d,A) draws the envelope of  $d$ ) when  $A:=\text{element}(C)$  ( $C$  is a curve). The example instructions below must be written in a geometric level on different lines.`

```
locus(Pnt, Elem)
```

## parabola

parabola(F,A)=focus F, top A (in the plane ABP) or (parabola(A,c) of equa.  $y=y_A+c*(x-x_A)^2$   $c=1/(2*p)$  and  $FA=p/2$  geo2d) and parabola(P(x,y)) draws the conic if  $\text{deg}(P)=2$ .

```
parabola (Pnt (F) || Pnt (xA+i*yA) , Pnt (A) || Real (c)
,
[Pnt (P) ])
```

## Transform

### homothety

homothety(C,k,A)=point A1 such as  $\text{vect}(C,A1)=k*\text{vect}(C,A)$  i.e in 2-d it is the similarity center C, coeff  $\text{abs}(k)$  and angle  $\text{arg}(k)$ .

```
homothety (Pnt (C) , Real (k) , Pnt (A) )
```

### inversion

inversion(C,k,A)=point A1 such as A1 on line(C,A) and  $\text{mes\_alg}(CA1*CA)=k$

```
inversion (Pnt (C) , Real (k) , Pnt (A) )
```

```
isobarycenter ( (Pnt or Cplx) , (Pnt or Cplx) , (Pnt
or Cplx) )
```

### projection

projection(C,A) is the orthogonal projection of A on the curve C

```
projection (Curve, Pnt)
```

### reflection

reflection(D,C) (or reflection(A,C))=symmetrical of C in the symmetry-line D (or sym-point A)

```
reflection ( (Pnt (A) or Line (D)) , (Pnt (C) or
Curve (C) ) )
```

### rotation

rotation(B,a1,A)(resp rotation(d,a1,A)) is the transformation of A by rotation of center B (resp of axis d) and of angle a1.

```
rotation ( (Pnt (B) or Cplx or
Dr3) , Angle (a1) , (Pnt (A) or Curve) )
```

## similarity

similarity(B,k,a1,A)=transformation of A in the similarity (center B or axis d, coeff k,angle a1) (or also homothety(B,k\*exp(i\*a1),A)).

```
similarity(Pnt or Dr3,Real,Angle,Pnt)
```

## translation

translation(B-A,C) (resp translation([a,b,c],C)) is the translation of C in the translation of vector AB (resp [a,b,c]).

```
translation(Vect, Pnt(C))
```

## Numeric view: Cmds menu

### Measure

#### abscissa

The x coordinate of a point or the x length of a vector.

```
abscissa(A) or abscissa(vector)
```

#### affix

Gives the affix of a point (that is, its coordinates expressed as a complex number) or the affix of a vector.

```
affix(A) or affix(vector)
```

#### angle

Calculates the angle made by  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$ .

```
angle(A, B, C)
```

#### arcLen

Returns the length of the arc of the curve defined by  $y=Xpr$  (or by  $x=Xpr1, y=Xpr2$ ) when the parameter values are between a and b.

```
arcLen(Expr(Xpr) or  
Lst([Xpr1, Xpr2]), Var, Real(a), Real(b))
```

#### area

Algebraic area of a circle or polygon or of the area below a curve, optionally with a quadrature method (trapezoid, left\_rectangle, right\_rectangle, middle\_point, simpson, rombergm, rombergm).

```
area(Polygon) or  
area(Expr, x=a..b, [n], [Method])
```

## coordinates

Returns the list (resp matrix) of the abscissa and of the ordinate of a point or a vector (resp of points or vectors).

```
coordinates(Pnt or Cplx or Vect)
```

## distance

Calculates the distance between 2 points or a point and a curve

```
distance((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx or Curve))
```

## distance2

Calculates the square of the distance between 2 points or a point and a curve

```
distance2((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx or  
Curve))
```

## distanceat

distanceat(A,B,z0) displays at point(z0), with a legend, the distance between 2 geometrical objects

```
distanceat(GeoObj(A), GeoObj(B), (Pnt or Cplx))
```

## distanceatraw

distanceatraw(A,B,z0) displays at the point(z0), the distance between 2 geometrical objects.

```
distanceatraw(GeoObj(A), GeoObj(B), (Pnt or  
Cplx(z0)))
```

## equation

equation returns the cartesian equation of a curve

```
equation(GeoObj, VectParam)
```

## extract\_measure

extract\_measure gives as answer the value calculated by the argument.

```
extract_measure(Var)
```

## ordinate

Returns the ordinate of a point or a vector.

`ordinate(Pnt or Vect)`

## **parameq**

`parameq(C)` returns the complex number=parametric equation of the curve C

`parameq(GeoObj )`

## **perimeter**

Perimeter of a polygon (e.g. triangle, square, ...)

`perimeter(Polygon)`

## **radius**

`radius(C)` gives the radius of the circle C

`radius(Crcle)`

## **Test**

### **is\_collinear**

Returns 1 if the points are aligned, 2 if the points are the same and 0 otherwise.

`is_collinear(LstPnt)`

### **is\_concyclic**

Returns 1 if the points are on a circle and 0 otherwise.

`is_concyclic(LstPnt)`

### **is\_conjugate**

Returns 1 if the 3 (resp 4) arguments are conjugated toward a circle (resp 2 lines) and 0 otherwise.

`is_conjugate(Crcle|Line, Pnt|Line, Pnt|Line, [Pnt|Line])`

### **is\_coplanar**

Test if 4 points are in the same plane.

`is_coplanar(Pnt, Pnt, Pnt, Pnt)`

### **is\_element**

Returns 1 if the point is on the geometric object and 0 otherwise.

`is_element(Pnt, GeoObj)`



## is\_equilateral

Returns 1 if the 3 points (or the object) build an equilateral triangle and 0 otherwise.

```
is_equilateral (Pnt|Cplx,Pnt|Cplx,Pnt|Cplx)
```

## is\_isoceles

Returns 1, 2 or 3 if the 3 points (or the object) build an isosceles triangle with vertices 1, 2, or 3, returns 4 if the 3 points (or the object) build an equilateral triangle and 0 otherwise.

```
is_isosceles (Pnt or Cplx,Pnt or Cplx,Pnt or Cplx)
```

## is\_orthogonal

Returns 1 if the 2 circles are orthogonal (orthogonal tangents at a point of intersection) or if the 2 lines are orthogonal and 0 otherwise.

```
is_orthogonal (Line|Crcle,Line|Crcle)
```

## is\_parallel

Returns 1 if 2 lines are parallel and 0 otherwise.

```
is_parallel (Line or Plan ,Line or Plan)
```

## is\_parallelogram

Returns 1, 2, 3 or 4 if the 4 points (or the object) build a parallelogram, (2 for a rhombus, 3 for a rectangle, 4 for a square) and 0 otherwise.

```
is_parallelogram (Pnt or Cplx,Pnt or Cplx,Pnt or Cplx,Pnt or Cplx)
```

## is\_perpendicular

Returns 1 if 2 lines are perpendicular

```
is_perpendicular (Line or Plan,Line or Plan)
```

## is\_rectangle

Returns 1, 2 or 3 if the 3 points (or the object) build a rectangular triangle with vertex 1, 2 or 3 and 0 otherwise [or 1 if the 4 points (or the object) build a rectangle, 2 if the 4 points (or the object) build a square and 0 otherwise].

```
is_rectangle (Pnt||Cplx,Pnt||Cplx,Pnt||Cplx,[Pnt||Cplx])
```

## is\_square

Returns 1 if the 4 points build a square and 0 otherwise.

```
is_square (Pnt, Pnt, Pnt, Pnt)
```

## Other Geometry functions

The following functions are not available from a menu in the Geometry app, but are available from the Catlg menu.

### angleat

`angleat(A,B,C,z0)` displays at `point(z0)` the value of the measure of the angle made by  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$  along with a legend.

```
angleat (A, B, C, z0)
```

### angleatraw

Same as `angleat` but without providing a legend.

### areaat

Displays at point `(z0)`, with a legend, algebraic area of a circle or of a (star) polygon (e.g. triangle, square, ...)

```
areaat (Polygon, Pnt || Cplx (z0))
```

### areaatraw

Displays at point `(z0)`, algebraic area of a circle or of a (star) polygon (e.g. triangle, square, ...)

```
areaatraw (Polygone, Pnt || Cplx (z0))
```

### common\_perpendicular

Draws the common perpendicular of the lines `D1` and `D2`.

```
common_perpendicular (Line (D1), Line (D2))
```

### cone

Draws a cone with vertex `A`, direction `v`, and with half-angle `t` [and with altitude `h` and `-h`].

```
cone (Pnt (A), Vect (v), Real (t), [Real (h)])
```

### convexhull

Convex hull of a list of 2-d points

```
convexhull (Lst)
```

## **cube**

Draws the direct cube with vertices A,B with a face in the plan (A,B,C).

```
cube (Pnt (A) , Pnt (B) , Pnt (C) )
```

## **cylinder**

Draws a cylinder with axis (A,v), with radius r [and with altitude h].

```
cylinder (Pnt (A) , Vect (v) , Real (r) , [Real (h) ])
```

## **display**

Draws an geometrical object with color (black=0 red=1 green=2 yellow=3 blue=4). If object is closed, object can be *filled*. Line\_width\_n (0<n<8) is for the width of the line and dash\_line is for dotted line.

```
display(circle(0,1),2) returns a green circle of radius 1 .
```

```
display(square(0,5),filled+blue+line_width_6) returns a blue square of sides 5, filled with blue and a of line width of 6.
```

## **faces**

Returns the list of the faces (1 face=matrix(n,3) where the n rows are the n vertices of the face) of the polyhedron P.

```
faces (Polygon or Polyedr (P) )
```

## **half\_cone**

Draws a half-cone with vertex A, direction v and with half\_angle=t [and with altitude h].

```
half_cone (Pnt (A) , Vect (v) , Real (t) , [Real (h) ])
```

## **harmonic\_conjugate**

Returns the harmonic conjugate of 3 points or of 3 parallel or concurrent lines or the line of conjugates of a point in respect to 2 lines.

```
harmonic_conjugate (Line or Pnt, Line or Pnt, Line or Pnt)
```

## harmonic\_division

Returns the 4 points (resp lines) and affects the last argument, such as the 4 points (resp lines) are in a harmonic division.

```
harmonic_division(Pnt or Line,Pnt or Line,Pnt  
or Line,Var)
```

## icosahedron

Draws an icosahedron with center A, vertex B and such that the plane ABC contains one vertex among the 5 nearest vertices from B.

```
icosahedron(Pnt(A),Pnt(B),Pnt(C))
```

## is\_harmonic

Returns 1 if the 4 points are in a harmonic division and 0 otherwise.

```
is_harmonic(Pnt or Cplx,Pnt or Cplx,Pnt or  
Cplx,Pnt or Cplx)
```

## is\_harmonic\_circle\_bundle

Returns 1 if the circles build a beam, 2 if they have the same center, 3 if they are the same and 0 otherwise.

```
is_harmonic_circle_bundle(Lst(Crcle))
```

## is\_harmonic\_line\_bundle

Returns 1 if the lines have a common point, 2 if they are parallels, 3 if they are the same and 0 otherwise.

```
is_harmonic_line_bundle(Lst(Line))
```

## is\_rhombus

Returns 1 or 2 if the 4 points (or the object) build a rhombus (2 for a square) and 0 otherwise.

```
is_rhombus(Pnt or Cplx,Pnt or Cplx,Pnt or  
Cplx,Pnt or Cplx)
```

## length

Returns the size of a list, a string or a sequence

```
length(Lst or Str or Seq)
```

## LineHorz

Draws the horizontal line  $y=a$ .

LineHorz (A)

## line\_segments

Returns the list of the line\_segments (1 line=segment) of the polyhedron P

line\_segments(Polygon or Polyedr(P))

## LineVert

Draws the vertical line  $x=a$ .

LineVert(Expr(a))

## octahedron

Draws an octahedron with center A, vertex B and such that the plane ABC contains 4 vertices.

octahedron(Pnt(A), Pnt(B), Pnt(C))

## open\_polygon

Returns and draws the polygonal line where its vertices are the element of l.

open\_polygon(LstPnt || LstCplx)

## orthogonal

orthogonal(A,line(B,C)) draws the orthogonal plane of line BC through A and orthogonal(A,plane(B,C,D)) draws the orthogonal line of plan(B,C,D) through A.

orthogonal((Pnt), (Line or Plan) )

## parallelepiped

Draws a parallelepiped with sides AB,AC,AD (the faces are parallelograms).

parallelepiped(Pnt(A), Pnt(B), Pnt(C), Pnt(D))

## perimeterat

Displays at point(z0), with a legend, the perimeter of a circle or of a polygon (e.g. triangle, square, ...)

perimeterat(Polygon, Pnt || Cplx(z0))

## perimeteratraw

Displays at point(z0), the perimeter of a circle or of a polygon (e.g. triangle, square, ...)

```
perimeteratraw(Polygon, Pnt||Cplx(z0))
```

## plane

plane(A,B,C) or plane(A,line(B,C)) (resp  
plane( $a*x+b*y+c*z+d=0$ )) draws the plane ABC (resp of  
equation  $a*x+b*y+c*z+d=0$ ) in the 3-D space.

```
plane(Pnt or Eq, [Pnt or Line],[Pnt])
```

## polar

Returns the line of the conjugated points of A with respect to  
the circle.

```
polar(Crcle,Pnt or Cplx(A))
```

## polar\_coordinates

Returns the list of the norm and of the argument of the affix of  
a point (for 2-D) or of a complex number or of the the list of  
rectangular coordinates.

```
polar_coordinates(Pnt or Cplx or LstRectCoord)
```

## pole

Returns the point having the line as polar with respect to the  
circle.

```
pole(Crcle,Line)
```

## polyhedron

Draws a convex polyhedron with vertices among the  
arguments.

```
polyhedron(SeqPnt(A,B,C...))
```

## powerpc

Returns the real number  $d^2-R^2$  ( $d$ =distance between point  
and center,  $R$ =radius) .

```
powerpc(Circle,Pnt or Cplx)
```

## prism

Draws a prism with plane base ABCD...and with edges  
parallel to AA1 (the faces are parallelograms).

```
prism(LstPnt([A,B,C,D]),Pnt(A1))
```

## pyramid

Draws the regular direct pyramid ABCD with vertices A,B and a face in the plan (A,B,C) when there are 3 arguments, and the pyramid ABCD when there are 4 arguments.

```
pyramid(Pnt (A) , Pnt (B) , Pnt (C) , [Pnt (D) ])
```

## radical\_axis

Returns the line of points with same powerpc with respect to the 2 circles.

```
radical_axis(Crcle,Crcle)
```

## reciprocation

Returns the list where a point (resp a line) are replaced with its polar (resp pole), with respect to the circle C.

```
reciprocation(Crcle,Lst (Pnt,Line))
```

## single\_inter

Gives one of the intersections of 2 curves or surfaces (or the intersection near A or not in L).

```
single_inter(Curve,Curve,[Pnt (A) ||LstPnt (L)])
```

## slopeat

slopeat(d,z0) displays at the point(z0), with a legend, the value of the slope of the line or segment d.

```
slopeat(Line, Pnt||Cplx(z0))
```

## slopeatraw

slopeatraw(d,z0) displays at point(z0), the value of the slope of the line or segment d.

```
slopeatraw(Line, Pnt||Cplx(z0))
```

## sphere

sphere(A,B) (resp sphere(A,r)) draws the sphere of diameter AB (resp center A and radius r) in the space 3-D.

```
sphere((Pnt or Vect) ,(Pnt or Real))
```

## vector

Defines a vector(origin is 0 if 1 arg) with two points or two components or two affix (for 2-D) or with a point and a vector or with a point (its extremity and its origin is [0,0,0]).

```
vector(Pnt, Pnt || Pnt, Vect)
```

## **vertices**

Returns the list of the vertices of the polygon or polyhedron P.

```
vertices(Polygon or Polyedr(P))
```

## **vertices\_abca**

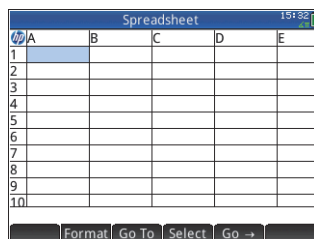
Returns the closed list [A,B,...A] of the vertices of the polygon or polyhedron P.


```
vertices_abca(Polygon or Polyedr(P))
```




# Spreadsheet


The Spreadsheet app provides a grid of cells for you to enter content (such as numbers, text, expressions, and so on) and to perform certain operations on what you enter.



To open the Spreadsheet app, press  and select **Spreadsheet**.


You can create any number of customized spreadsheets, each with its own name (see “Creating an app” on page 97). You open a customized spreadsheet in the same way: by pressing  and selecting the particular spreadsheet.

The maximum size of any one spreadsheet is 10,000 rows by 676 columns.

The app opens in Numeric view. There is no Plot or Symbolic view. There is a Symbolic Setup view () that enables you to override certain system-wide settings. (See “Common operations in Symbolic Setup view” on page 76.)

## Getting started with the Spreadsheet app

Suppose you have a stall at a weekend market. You sell furniture on consignment for their owners, taking a 10% commission for yourself. You have to pay the landowner \$100 a day to set up your stall and you will keep the stall open until you have made \$250 for yourself.

1. Open the Spreadsheet app:  
 and select Spreadsheet.
2. Select column A. Either tap on A or use the cursor keys to highlight the A cell (that is, the heading of the A column).

3. Enter PRICE and tap **Name**. You have named the entire first column PRICE.
4. Select column B. Either tap on B or use the cursor keys to highlight the B cell.
5. Enter a formula for your commission (being 10% of the price of each item sold):

**Shift** **=** PRICE **x** 0.1 **Enter**



Because you entered the formula in the heading of a column, it is automatically copied to every cell in that column. At the moment only 0 is shown, since there are no values in the PRICE column yet.

	PRICE	B	C	D	E
1		0			
2		0			
3		0			
4		0			
5		0			
6		0			
7		0			
8		0			
9		0			
10		0			

6. Once again select the header of column B.
7. Tap **Format** and select Name.
8. Type COMMIS and tap **OK**.  
Note that the heading of column B is now COMMIS.
9. It is always a good idea to check your formulas by entering some dummy values and noting if the result is as expected. Select cell A1 and make sure that **Go ↓** and not **Go →** is showing in the menu. (If not, tap the button.) This option means that your cursor automatically selects the cell immediately *below* the one you have just entered content into.

10. Add some values in the PRICE column and note the result in the COMMIS column. If the results do not look right, you can tap the COMMIS heading, tap **Edit** and fix the formula.

	PRICE	COMMIS	C	D	E
1	120	12			
2	200	20			
3	300	30			
4	450	45			
5		0			
6		0			
7		0			
8		0			
9		0			
10		0			

11. To delete the dummy values, select cell A1, tap **Select**, press  until all the dummy values are selected, and then press .

12. Select cell C1.

13. Enter a label for your takings:

  **ALPHA**   **TAKINGS** 

Notice that text strings, but not names, need to be enclosed within quotation marks.

14. Select cell D1.

15. Enter a formula to add up your takings:

  **SUM**  **PRICE** 


You could have specified a range—such as A1:A100—but by specifying the name of the column, you can be sure that the sum will include all the entries in the column.

16. Select cell C3.


17. Enter a label for your total commission:

  **ALPHA**   **TOTAL COMMIS** 

Note that the column is not wide enough for you to see the entire label in C3. We need to widen column C.

18. Select the heading cell for column C, tap **Format** and select **Column** .





An input form appears for you to specify the required width of the column.

19. Enter 100 and tap .

You may have to experiment until you get the column width exactly as you want it. The value you enter will be the width of the column in pixels.

20. Select cell D3.

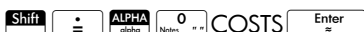
21. Enter a formula to add up your commission:

  **SUM**  **COMMIS** 

Note that instead of entering **SUM** by hand, you could have chosen it from the Apps menu (one of the Toolbox menus).

22. Select cell C5.

23. Enter a label for your fixed costs:



24. In cell C5, enter 100. This is what you have to pay the landowner for renting the space for your stall.

	PRICE	COMMIS	C	D	E
1	120	12			
2	200	20			
3	300	30			
4	450	45			
5		0			
6		0			
7		0			
8		0			
9		0			
10		0			

25. Enter the label PROFIT in cell C7.

26. In cell D7, enter a formula to calculate your profit:



You could also have named D3 and D5—say, TOTCOM and COSTS respectively. Then the formula in D7 could have been =TOTCOM-COSTS.

27. Enter the label GOAL in cell E1.

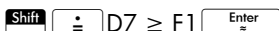
You can swipe the screen with a finger, or repeatedly press the cursor keys, to bring E1 into view.

28. Enter 250 in cell F1.

This is the minimum profit would want to make on the day.

29. In cell C9, enter the label GO HOME.

30. In cell D9, enter:



You can select  $\geq$  from the relations palette ( $\text{Shift}$   $\text{>}$   $\text{w}$ ).

What this formula does is place 0 in D9 if you have not reached your goal profit, and 1 if you have. It provides a quick way for you to see when you have made enough profit and can go home.

	COMMIS	C	D	E
1	0	TAKINGS	0	GOAL
2	0			
3	0	TOTAL COMMIS	0	
4	0			
5	0	COSTS	100	
6	0			
7	0	PROFIT	-100	
8	0			
9	0	GO HOME	0	
10	0			

31. Select C9 and D9.

You can select both cells with a finger drag, or by highlighting C9, selecting **Select** and pressing  $\text{>}$ .

32. Tap **Format** and select **Color**.
33. Choose a color for the contents of the selected cells.
34. Tap **Format** and select **Fill**.
35. Choose a color for the background of the selected cells.

The most important cells in the spreadsheet will now stand out from the rest.

The spreadsheet is complete, but you may want to check all the formulas by adding some dummy data to the **PRICE** column. When the profit reaches 250, you should see the value in **D9** change from 0 to 1.

	PRICE	COMMIS	C	D
1	520	52	TAKINGS	3795
2	900	90		
3	65	6.5	TOTAL COMMIS	379.5
4	750	75		
5	1560	156	COSTS	100
6		0		
7		0	PROFIT	279.5
8		0		
9		0	GO HOME	1
10		0		

## Basic operations

### Navigation, selection and gestures

You can move about a spreadsheet by using the cursor keys, by swiping, or by tapping **Go To** and specifying the cell you want to move to.

You select a cell simply by moving to it. You can also select an entire column—by tapping the column letter—and select an entire row (by tapping the row number). You can also select the entire spreadsheet: just tap on the unnumbered cell at the top-left corner of the spreadsheet. (It has the HP logo in it.)

A block of cells can be selected by pressing down on a cell that will be a corner cell of the selection and, after a second, dragging your finger to the diagonally opposite cell. You can also select a block of cells by moving to a corner cell, tapping **Select** and using the cursor keys to move to the diagonally opposite cell. Tapping on **Select** or another cell deselects the selection.

## Cell references

You can refer to the value of a cell in formulas as if it were a variable. A cell is referenced by its column and row coordinates, and references can be absolute or relative. An absolute reference is written as  $\$C\$R$  (where  $C$  is the column number and  $R$  the row number). Thus  $\$B\$7$  is an absolute reference. In a formula it will always refer to the data in cell B7 wherever that formula, or a copy of it, is placed. On the other hand, B7 is a relative reference. It is based on the *relative position* of cells. Thus a formula in, say, B8 that references B7 will reference C7 instead of B7 if it is copied to C8.

Ranges of cells can also be specified, as in C6:E12, as an entire column (E:E) or entire rows ( $\$3:\$5$ ). Note that the alphabetic component of column names can be uppercase or lowercase except for columns g, l, m, and z. These must be in lowercase *if not preceded by \$*. Thus cell B1 can be referred to as B1, b1,  $\$B\$1$  or  $\$b\$1$  whereas M1 can only be referred to as m1,  $\$m\$1$ , or  $\$M\$1$ . (G, L, M, and Z are names reserved for graphic objects, lists, matrices, and complex numbers.)

## Cell naming

Cells, blocks of cells, rows, and columns can be named. The name can then be used in a formula. A named cell or block of cells is given a blue border.

### Method 1

To name an *empty* cell, row, or column, go the cell, row header, or column header, enter a name and tap **Name**.

### Method 2





To name a cell, block, row, or column—whether it is empty or not:

1. Select the cell, block, row, or column.
2. Tap **Format** and select Name.
3. Enter a name and tap **OK**.

### Using names in calculations

The name you give a cell or block of cells can be used in a formula. For example, if you name a cell TOTAL, you could enter in another cell the formula  $=TOTAL*1.1$ .

The following is a more complex example involving the naming of an entire column.

1. Select cell A (that is the header cell for column A).
2. Enter `COST` and tap .
3. Select cell B (that is the header cell for column B).
4. Enter   `COST*0.33` and tap .
5. Enter some values in column A and observe the calculated results in column B.

	COST	B	C	D	E
1	62	20.46			
2	45	14.85			
3	33	10.89			
4	36	11.88			
5	42.5	14.025			
6	62	20.46			
7		0			
8		0			
9		0			
10		0			
11		0			



`=COST*.33`









Edit Format Go To Select Go ↓

## Entering content

You can enter content directly in the spreadsheet or import data from a statistics app.

### Direct entry

A cell can contain any valid calculator object: a real number (3.14), a complex number ( $a + ib$ ), an integer (#1Ah), a list ( $\{1, 2\}$ ), a matrix or vector( $[1, 2]$ ), a string ("text"), a unit (2\_m) or an expression (that is, a formula). Move to the cell you want to add content to and start entering the content as you would in Home view. Press  when you have finished. You can also enter content into a number of cells with a single entry. Just select the cells, enter the content—for example, `=ROW*3`—and press .

What you enter on the entry line is evaluated as soon as you press , with the result placed in the cell or cells. However, if you want to retain the underlying formula, precede it with  . For example, suppose that want to add cell A1 (which contains 7) to cell B2 (which contains 12). Entering A1  B2  in, say, A4 yields 19, as does entering   A1  B2 in A5. However, if the value in A1 (or B2) changes, the value in A5 changes but not the value in A4. This is because the expression (or formula) was retained in A5. To see if a cell contains just the value shown in it or also an

underlying formula that generates the value, move your cursor to the cell. The entry line shows a formula if there is one.

A single formula can add content to every cell in a column or row. For example, move to C (the heading cell for column C), enter **Shift** **=** SIN (Row) and press **Enter** **=**. Each cell in the column is populated with the sine of the cell's row number. A similar process enables you to populate every cell in a row with the same formula. You can also add a formula once and have it apply to every cell in the spreadsheet. You do this by placing the formula in the cell at the top left (the cell with the HP logo in it). To see how this works, suppose you want to generate a table of powers (squares, cubes, and so on) starting with the squares:

1. Tap on the cell with the HP logo in it (at the top left corner). Alternatively, you can use the cursor keys to move to that cell (just as you can to select a column or row heading).

A	B	C	D	E
1	1	1	1	1
2	4	8	16	32
3	9	27	81	243
4	16	64	256	1024
5	25	125	625	3125
6	36	216	1296	7776
7	49	343	2401	16807
8	64	512	4096	32768
9	81	729	6561	59049
10	100	1000	10000	100000
11	121	1331	14641	161051

=Row^(Col+1)  
 Edit | Format | Go To | Select | Go ↓

2. On the entry line type **Shift** **=** Row **x<sup>2</sup>** **( )** Col **+** **1**

Note that Row and Col are built-in variables. They are placeholders for the row number and column number of the cell that has a formula containing them.

3. Tap **OK** or Press **Enter** **=**.

Note that each column gives the *n*th power of the row number starting with the squares. Thus 9<sup>5</sup> is 59,049.

## Import data

You can import data from the Statistics 1Var and Statistics 2Var apps (and from any app customized from a statistics app). In the procedure immediately below, dataset D1 from the Statistics 1Var app is being imported.

1. Select a cell.
2. Enter `Statistics_1Var.D1`.
3. Press **Enter** **=**.



The column is filled with the data from the statistics app, starting with the cell selected at step 1. Any data in that data will be overwritten by the data being imported.

You can also export data from the Spreadsheet app to a statistics app. See “Entering and editing statistical data” on page 191 for the general procedure. It can be used in both the Statistics 1Var and Statistics 2Var apps.

## External functions

You can use in a formula any function available on the Math, CAS, App, User or Catlg menus (see chapter 20, “Functions and commands” on page 283). For example, to find the root of  $3 - x^2$  closest to  $x = 2$ , you could enter in a cell

	A	B	C	D	E
1	1.7320508				
2					
3					
4					
5					
6					
7					
8					
9					
10					

. The answer displayed is 1.732...

You could also have selected a function from a menu. For example:

1. Press .
2. Press and tap .
3. Select Polynomial > Find Roots.

Your entry line will now look like this: =CAS.root().

4. Enter the coefficients of the polynomial, in descending order, separating each with a comma:

5. Press to see the result: 1.732...

Note that the CAS prefix added to your function is to remind you that the calculation will be carried out by the CAS (and thus a symbolic result will be returned, if possible). You can also force a calculation to be handled by the CAS by tapping in the spreadsheet.

There are additional spreadsheet functions that you can use (mostly related to finance and statistics calculations). See “Spreadsheet functions” on page 314.

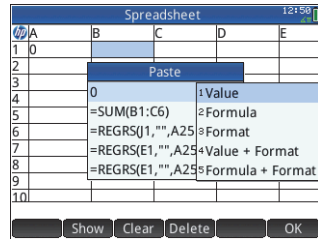
## Copy and paste

To copy one or more cells, select them and press

  (Copy).

Move to the desired location and press (  (Paste).

You can choose to paste either the value, formula, format, both value and format, or both formula and format.



## External references

You can refer to data in a spreadsheet from outside the Spreadsheet app by using the reference

`SpreadsheetName.CR`. For example, in Home view you can refer to cell A6 in the built-in spreadsheet by entering

`Spreadsheet.A6`. Thus the formula `6*Spreadsheet.A6` would multiply whatever value is currently in cell A6 in the built-in app by 6.

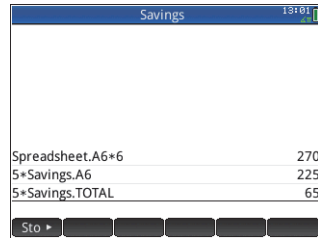
If you have created a customized spreadsheet called, say, **Savings**, you simply refer to it by its name, as in `5*Savings.A6`.

An external reference can also be to a named cell, as in `5*Savings.TOTAL`.

In the same way, you can also enter references to spreadsheet cells in the CAS.


If you are working outside a spreadsheet, you cannot refer to a cell by its absolute reference. Thus `Spreadsheet.$A$6` produces an error message.


Note that a reference to a spreadsheet name is case-sensitive.





## Referencing variables









Any variable can be inserted in a spreadsheet cell. This includes Home variables, App variables, CAS variables and user variables.

Variables can be referenced or entered. For example, if you have assigned 10 to  $P$  in Home view, you could enter  $=P*5$  in a spreadsheet cell, press  and get 50. If you subsequently changed the value of  $P$ , the value in that cell automatically changes to reflect the new value. This is an example of a *referenced* variable.

If you just wanted the current value of  $P$  and not have the value change if  $P$  changed, just enter  $P$  and press . This is an example of an *entered* variable.

Variables given values in other apps can also be referenced in a spreadsheet. In chapter 12 we see how the Solve app can be used to solve equations. An example used is  $V^2 = U^2 + 2AD$ . You could have four cells in a spreadsheet with  $=V$ ,  $=U$ ,  $=A$ , and  $=D$  as formulas. As you experiment with different values for these variables in the Solve app, the entered and the calculated values are copied to the spreadsheet (where further manipulation could be done).















The variables from other apps includes the results of certain calculations. For example, if you have plotted a function in the Function app and calculated the signed area between two  $x$ -values, you can reference that value in a spreadsheet by pressing , tapping , and then selecting `Function > Results > SignedArea`.

Numerous system variables are also available. For example, you could enter    to get the last answer calculated in Home view. You could also enter      to get the last answer calculated in Home view and have the value automatically updated as new calculations are made in Home view. (Note that this works only with the `Ans` from Home view, not the `Ans` from CAS view.)

All the variables available to you are listed on the variables menus, displayed by pressing . A comprehensive list of

these variables is provided in chapter 21, “Variables”, beginning on page 373.

# Buttons and keys

Button or key	Purpose
	Activates the entry line for you to edit the object in the selected cell. (Only visible if the selected cell has content.)
	Converts the text you have entered on the entry line to a name. (Only visible when the entry line is active.)
	Forces the calculation to be handled by the CAS. (Only visible when the entry line is active.)
	Tap to enter the \$ symbol. A shortcut when entering absolute references. (Only visible when the entry line is active.)
	Displays formatting options for the selected cell, block, column, row, or the entire spreadsheet. See See “Formatting options” on page 184.
	Displays an input form for you to specify the cell you want to jump to.
	Sets the calculator to <i>select</i> mode so that you can easily select a block of cells using the cursor keys. It changes to  to enable you to deselect cells. (You can also press, hold and drag to select a block of cells.)
 or 	A toggle button that sets the direction the cursor moves after content has been entered in a cell.
	Displays the result in the selected cell in full-screen mode, with horizontal and vertical scrolling enabled. (Only visible if the selected cell has content.)
	Enables you to select a column to sort by, and to sort it in ascending or descending order. (Only visible if cells are selected.)
	Cancel the input and clear the entry line.
	Accept and evaluate the input.

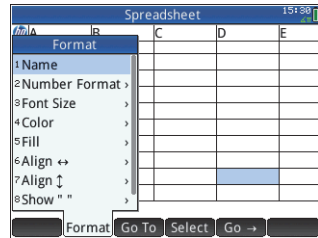


Clears the spreadsheet.

## Formatting options

The formatting options appear when you tap **Format**. They apply to whatever is currently selected: a cell, block, column, row, or the entire spreadsheet.

The options are:



- **Name**: displays an input form for you to give a name to whatever is selected
- **Number Format**: Auto, Standard, Fixed, Scientific, or Engineering. See “Home settings” on page 27 for more details.
- **Font Size**: Auto or from 10 to 22 point
- **Color**: color for the content (text, number, etc.) in the selected cells; the gray-dotted option represents Auto
- **Fill**: background color that fills the selected cells; the gray-dotted option represents Auto
- **Align** ↔: horizontal alignment—Auto, Left, Center, Right
- **Align** ↓: vertical alignment—Auto, Top, Center, Bottom
- **Column** ↔: displays an input form for you to specify the required width of the selected columns; only available if you have selected the entire spreadsheet or one or more entire columns.

You can also change the width of a selected column with an open or closed horizontal pinch gesture.

- **Row** ↑: displays an input form for you to specify the required height of the selected rows; only available if you have selected the entire spreadsheet or one or more entire rows.

You can also change the height of a selected row with an open or closed vertical pinch gesture.

- **show “**: show quote marks around strings in the body of the spreadsheet—Auto, Yes, No
- **Textbook**: display formulas in textbook format—Auto, Yes, No
- **Caching**: turn this option on to speed up calculations in spreadsheets with many formulas; only available if you have selected the entire spreadsheet

## Format Parameters



Each format attribute is represented by a parameter that can be referenced in a formula. For example, =D1 (1) returns the name of cell D1 (or nothing if D1 has not been named). The attributes that can be retrieved in a formulas by referencing its associated parameter are listed below.



Parameter	Attribute	Result
1	content	contents (or empty)
2	name	name (or empty)
3	number format	Standard = 0 Fixed = 1 Scientific = 2 Engineering = 3
4	number of decimal places	
5	font	System = 0 Small = 1 Medium = 2;
6	textbook mode (as opposed to algebraic mode)	Yes = 0; No = 1;
7	show strings in quotes	Yes = 0; No = 1
8	horizontal alignment	Left = 0; Center = 1; Right = 2
9	vertical alignment	Top = 0; Center = 1; Bottom = 2
10	background color	cell fill color

Parameter	Attribute	Result (Continued)
11	foreground color	contents color

As well as retrieving format attributes, you can set a format attribute (or cell content) by specifying it in a formula in the relevant cell. For example, wherever it is placed  $g5(1) := 6543$  enters 6543 in cell g5. Any previous content in g5 is replaced. Similarly,  $B3(5) := 2$  forces the contents of B3 to be displayed in medium font size.

## Spreadsheet functions

As well as the functions on the **Math**, **CAS** and **Catlg** menus, you can use special spreadsheet functions. These can be found on the **App** menu, one of the Toolbox menus. Press , tap  and select Spreadsheet. The functions are described on “Spreadsheet functions” on page 314.

Remember to precede a function by an equals sign ( ) if you want the result to automatically update as the values it is dependent on change. Without an equals sign you will be entering just the current value.



## Statistics 1Var app

The Statistics 1Var app can store up to ten data sets at one time. It can perform one-variable statistical analysis of one or more sets of data.


The Statistics 1Var app starts with the Numeric view which is used to enter data. The Symbolic view is used to specify which columns contain data and which column contains frequencies.

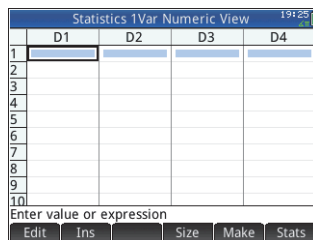
You can also compute statistics in Home and recall the values of specific statistics variables.

The values computed in the Statistics 1Var app are saved in variables, and can be re-used in Home view and in other apps.

## Getting started with the Statistics 1Var app

Suppose that you are measuring the heights of students in a classroom to find the mean height. The first five students have the following measurements: 160 cm, 165 cm, 170 cm, 175 cm and 180 cm.

1. Open the Statistics 1Var app:  
 Select Statistics 1Var
2. Enter the measurement data in column D1:



	D1	D2	D3	D4
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				

Enter value or expression

Edit Ins Size Make Stats

160

165

170

175

180

- Find the mean of the sample.

Statistics 1Var Numeric View 19f2z				
	D1	D2	D3	D4
1	160			
2	165			
3	170			
4	175			
5	180			
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				

Enter value or expression

Tap  to see the statistics calculated from the sample data in D1. The mean ( $\bar{x}$ ) is 170.

X	H1		
n	5		
Min	160		
Q1	162.5		
Med	170		
Q3	177.5		
Max	180		
$\Sigma X$	850		
$\Sigma X^2$	144750		
$\bar{x}$	170		
sX	7.905694150		
$\sigma X$	7.071067812		

There are more statistics than can be displayed on one screen. Thus you may need to scroll to see the statistic you are after.

Note that the title of the column of statistics is H1. There are 5 data-set definitions available for one-variable statistics: H1–H5. If data is entered in D1, H1 is automatically set to use D1 for data, and the frequency of each data point is set to 1. You can select other columns of data from the Symbolic view of the app.

- Tap  to close the statistics window.
- Press  to see the data-set definitions.

The first field in each set of definitions is where you specify the column of data that is to be analyzed, the

Statistics 1Var Symbolic View 19f8z	
√ H1: D1	Freq
Plot1: Histogram	
H2:	
Plot2: Histogram	
H3:	
Plot3: Histogram	
H4:	








Enter independent column

second field is where you specify the column that has the frequencies of each data point, and the third field (**Plotn**) is where you choose the type of plot that will

represent the data in Plot view: Histogram, Box and Whisker, Normal Probability, Line, Bar, or Pareto.


## Symbolic view: menu items

The menu items you can tap on in Symbolic view are:

Menu item	Purpose
	Copies the column variable (or variable expression) to the entry line for editing. Tap  when done.
	Selects (or deselects) a statistical analysis (H1–H5) for exploration.
	Enters $D$ directly (to save you having to press two keys).
	Displays the current expression in textbook format in full-screen view. Tap  when done.
	Evaluates the highlighted expression, resolving any references to other definitions.

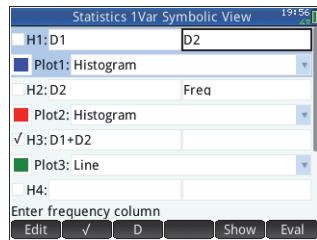
To continue our example, suppose that the heights of the rest of the students in the class are measured and that each one is rounded to the nearest of the five values first recorded. Instead of entering all the new data in  $D1$ , we simply add another column,  $D2$ , that holds the frequencies of our five data points in  $D1$ .

Height (cm)	Frequency
160	5
165	3
170	8
175	2
180	1

6. Tap on **Freq** to the right of H1 (or press  to highlight the second H1 field).

7. Enter the name of the column that you will contain the frequencies (in this example, D2):

 2 



8. If you want to choose a color for the graph of the data in Plot view, see “Choose a color for plots” on page 74.

9. If you have more than one analysis defined in Symbolic view, deselect any analysis you are not currently interested in.

10. Return to Numeric view:

11. In column D2, enter the frequency data shown in the table above:

 5 

3 

8 

2 

1 

	D1	D2	D3	D4
1	160	5		
2	165	3		
3	170	8		
4	175	2		
5	180	1		
6	160			
7				
8				
9				
10				
160				

12. Recalculate the statistics:

**Stats**

The mean height now is approximately 167.631 cm.

X	H1		
n	19		
Min	160		
Q1	160		
Med	170		
Q3	170		
Max	180		
$\Sigma X$	3185		
$\Sigma X^2$	534525		
$\bar{x}$	1.6763158E2		
sX	5.861461008		
$\sigma X$	5.705127208		
19			
		Size	Column
			OK

13. Configure a histogram plot for the data.

**OK** **Shift** **Plot**  
↳ Setup

((Setup)

Enter parameters appropriate to your data. Those shown at the right will ensure that all the data in this particular example is displayed in Plot view.

Statistics 1Var Plot Setup 201 19 0

H Width: 1

H Rng: 160 180

X Rng: 158 182

Y Rng: 0 9

X Tick: 1

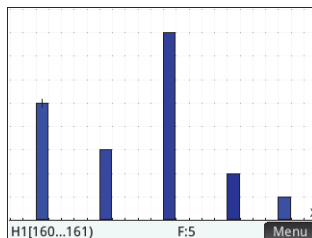
Y Tick: 1

Enter minimum horizontal value

Edit Page 1/2

14. Plot a histogram of the data.



**Plot**  
↳ Setup



## Entering and editing statistical data

Each column in Numeric view is a dataset and is represented by a variable named D0 to D9. There are three ways to get data into a column:

- Go to Numeric view and enter the data directly. See “Getting started with the Statistics 1Var app” on page 187 for an example.
- Go to Home view and copy the data from a list. For example, if you enter L1 **Sto** D1 in Home view, the items in list L1 are copied into column D1 in the Statistics 1Var app.






- Go to Home view and copy the data from a the Spreadsheet app. For example, suppose the data of interest is in A1:A10 in the Spreadsheet app and you want to copy it into column D7. With the Statistics 1Var app open, return to Home view and enter Spreadsheet.A1:A10  D7 .

Whichever method you use, the data you enter is automatically saved. You can leave this app and come back to it later. You will find that the data you last entered is still available.

After entering the data, you must define data sets—and the way they are to be plotted—in Symbolic view.

## Numeric view: menu items

The menu items you can tap on in Numeric view are:

Item	Purpose
	Copies the highlighted item into the entry line.
	Inserts a zero value above the highlighted cell.
	Sorts the data in various ways. See “Sort data values” on page 194.
	Displays a menu from which you can choose small font, medium font, or large font.
	Displays an input form for you to enter a formula that will generate a list of values for a specified column. See “Generating data” on page 193.

## Item Purpose (Continued)

**Stats**

Calculates statistics for each data set selected in Symbolic view. See “Computed statistics” on page 194.

## Edit a data set

In Numeric view, highlight the data to change, type a new value, and press **Enter**. You can also highlight the data, tap **Edit** to copy it to the entry line, make your change, and press **Enter**.

## Delete data

- To delete a data item, highlight it and press **Del**. The values below the deleted cell will scroll up one row.
- To delete a column of data, highlight an entry in that column and press **Shift Esc** (Clear). Select the column and tap **OK**.
- To delete all data in every column, press **Shift Esc** (Clear), select All columns, and tap **OK**.

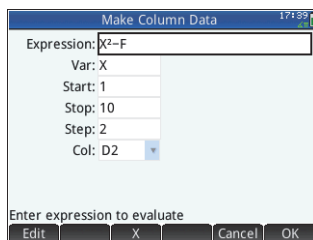
## Insert data

1. Highlight the cell below where you want to insert a value.
2. Tap **Ins** and enter the value.

If you just want to add more data to the data set and it is not important where it goes, select the last cell in the data set and start entering the new data.

## Generating data

You can enter a formula to generate a list of data points for a specified column. In the example at the right, 5 data-points will be placed in column D2. They will be generated by the expression  $X^2 - F$  where  $X$  comes from the set  $\{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$ . These are the values between 1 and 10 that differ by 2.  $F$  is whatever value has been assigned to it elsewhere



(such as in Home view). If  $F$  happened to be 5, column D2 is populated with  $\{-4, 4, 20, 44, 76\}$ .

## Sort data values

1. In Numeric view, place the highlight in the column you want to sort, and tap **Sort**.
2. Specify the sort order: *Ascending* or *Descending*.
3. If relevant, specify the Frequency column.
4. Tap **OK**.

## Computed statistics

Tapping **Stats** displays the following results for each dataset selected in Symbolic view.

Statistic	Definition
$n$	Number of data points
Min	Minimum value
Q1	First quartile: median of values to left of median
Med	Median value
Q3	Third quartile: median of values to right of median
Max	Maximum value
$\Sigma X$	Sum of data values (with their frequencies)
$\Sigma X^2$	Sum of the squares of the data values
$\bar{x}$	Mean
$sX$	Sample standard deviation
$\sigma X$	Population standard deviation
serrX	Standard error

When the data set contains an odd number of values, the median value is not used when calculating Q1 and Q3. For



example, for the data set  $\{3, 5, 7, 8, 15, 16, 17\}$  only the first three items—3, 5, and 7—are used to calculate  $Q_1$ , and only the last three terms—5, 16, and 17—are used to calculate  $Q_3$ .



## Plotting

You can plot:

- Histograms
- Box-and-Whisker plots
- Normal Probability plots
- Line plots
- Bar graphs
- Pareto charts

Once you have entered your data and defined your data set, you can plot your data. You can plot up to five box-and-whisker plots at a time; however, with the other types, you can only plot one at a time.

### To plot statistical data

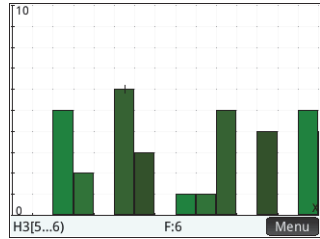
1. In the Symbolic view, select the data sets you want to plot.
2. From the **Plotn** menu, select the plot type.
3. For any plot, but especially for a histogram, adjust the plotting scale and range in the Plot Setup view. If you find histogram bars too fat or too thin, you can adjust them by changing the **HWIDTH** setting. (See “Setting up the plot (Plot Setup view)” on page 197.)
4. Press . If the scaling is not to your liking, press  and select **Autoscale**.

**Autoscale** can be relied upon to give a good starting scale which can then be adjusted in the Plot Setup view.

# Plot types

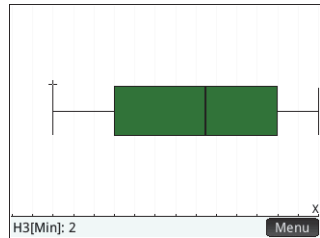
## Histogram

The first set of numbers below the plot indicate where the cursor is. In the example at the right, the cursor is between 5 and 6 (but not including 6), and the frequency for that range is 6. The data set is as defined by H3 in Symbolic view. You can see information about other ranges by pressing  $\blacktriangleright$  or  $\blacktriangleleft$ .



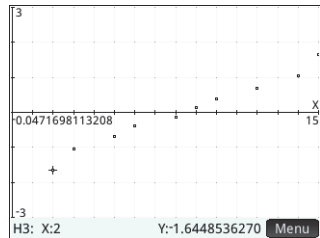
## Box-and-Whisker plot

The left whisker marks the minimum data value. The box marks the first quartile, the median, and the third quartile. The right whisker marks the maximum data value. The numbers below the plot give the statistic at the cursor. You can see other statistics by pressing  $\blacktriangleright$  or  $\blacktriangleleft$ .



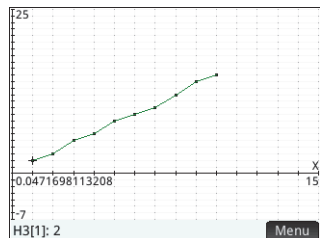
## Normal probability plot

The normal probability plot is used to determine whether or not sample data is more or less normally distributed. The more linear the data appear, the more likely that the data is normally distributed.



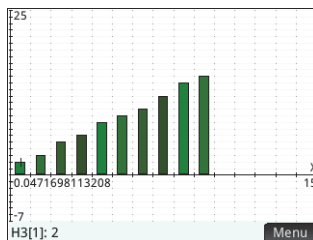
## Line plot

The line plot connects points of the form  $(x, y)$ , where  $x$  is the row number of the data point and  $y$  is its value.



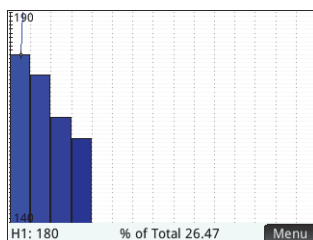
## Bar graph

The bar graph shows the value of a data point as a vertical bar placed along the x-axis at the row number of the data point.



## Pareto chart

A pareto chart places the data in descending order and displays each with its percentage of the whole.



## Setting up the plot (Plot Setup view)

The Plot Setup view (**Shift Plot Setup**) enables you to specify many of the same plotting parameters as other apps (such as **X Rng** and **Y Rng**). There are two settings unique to the Statistics 1Var app:

### Histogram width

**H Width** enables you to specify the width of a histogram bar. This determines how many bars will fit in the display, as well as how the data is distributed (that is, how many values each bar represents).

### Histogram range





**H Rng** enables you to specify the range of values for a set of histogram bars. The range runs from the left edge of the leftmost bar to the right edge of the rightmost bar. You can limit the range to exclude any values you suspect are outliers.

## Exploring the graph

The Plot view (**Plot Setup**) has zooming and tracing options, as well as coordinate display. The **Autoscale** option is available from the View menu (**View Copy**) as well as the **Zoom** menu. The View menu also enables you to view graphs in split-screen mode (as explained on page 81).

## Plot view: buttons menu items

The menu items you can tap on in Plot view are:

Button	Purpose
	Displays the Zoom menu.
	Turns trace mode on or off. See “Zoom” on page 90.)
	Displays the definition of the current statistical plot.
	Shows or hides the menu.

## Statistics 2Var app

---

The Statistics 2Var app can store up to ten data sets at one time. It can perform two-variable statistical analysis of one or more sets of data.

The Statistics 2Var app starts with the Numeric view which is used to enter data. The Symbolic view is used to specify which columns contain data and which column contains frequencies.

You can also compute statistics in Home and in the Spreadsheet app.

The values computed in the Statistics 2Var app are saved in variables. These can be referenced in Home view and in other apps.


### Getting started with the Statistics 2Var app

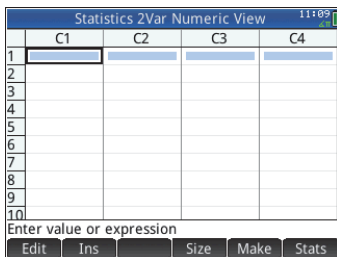
The following example uses the advertising and sales data in the table below. In the example, you will enter the data, compute summary statistics, fit a curve to the data, and predict the effect of more advertising on sales.

Advertising minutes (independent, $x$ )	Resulting sales (\$) (dependent, $y$ )
2	1400
1	920
3	1100
5	2265
5	2890
4	2200

## Open the Statistics 2Var app

- Open the Statistics 2Var app:

 Select Statistics 2Var.



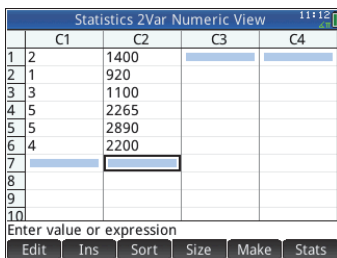
## Enter data

- Enter the advertising minutes data in column C1:

2  1   
 3  5   
 5  4

- Enter the resulting sales data in column C2:

1400   
 920   
 1100   
 2265   
 2890   
 2200



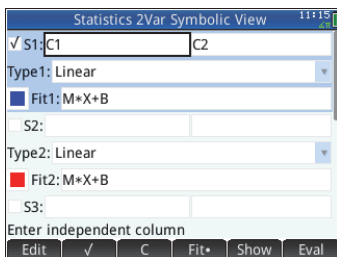
## Choose data columns and fit

In Symbolic view, you can define up to five analyses of two-variable data, named S1 to S5. In this example, we will define just one: S1. The process involves choosing data sets and a fit type.

- Specify the columns that contain the data you want to analyze:

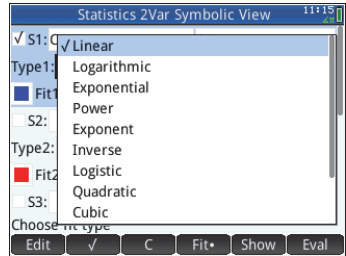


In this case, C1 and C2 appear by default. But you could have entered your data into columns other than C1 and C2.



5. Select a fit:

From the **Type 1** field select a fit. In this example, select **Linear**.



6. If you want to choose a color for the graph of the data in Plot view, see “Choose a color for plots” on page 74.
7. If you have more than one analysis defined in Symbolic view, deselect any analysis you are not currently interested in.

## Explore statistics

8. Find the correlation,  $r$ , between advertising time and sales:



The correlation is  $r=0.8995\dots$

X	S1		
n	6		
r	8.995309E-1		
R <sup>2</sup>	8.091559E-1		
sCOV	1.1356667E3		
σCOV	9.4638889E2		
ΣXY	41595		

6

Stats\* X Y Size Column OK

9. Find the mean advertising time ( $\bar{x}$ ).



The mean advertising time,  $\bar{x}$ , is 3.33333... minutes.

X	S1		
$\bar{x}$	3.333333333		
ΣX	20		
ΣX <sup>2</sup>	80		
sX	1.632993162		
σX	1.490711985		
serrX	6.666667E-1		

3.333333333333

Stats\* X\* Y Size Column OK

10. Find the mean sales ( $\bar{y}$ ).

**Y**

The mean sales,  $\bar{y}$ , is approximately \$1,796.

Press **OK** to return to Numeric view.

X	S1		
$\bar{y}$	1.7958333e3		
$\Sigma Y$	10775		
$\Sigma Y^2$	22338725		
$sY$	7.7312623e2		
$\sigma Y$	7.0576446e2		
$serrY$	3.1562746e2		

1795.83333333

Stats X Y+ Size Column OK

## Setup plot

11. Change the plotting range to ensure that all the data points are plotted (and to select a different data-point indicator, if you wish).

**Shift Plot Setup** (Setup)

▼ 100 **Enter**

4000 **Enter**

Statistics 2Var Plot Setup 09:18:41

S1 Mark: **■** S2 Mark: **◆** S3 Mark: **+**

S4 Mark: **⋯** S5 Mark: **⊠**

X Rng: -1.8 30

Y Rng: 100 4000

X Tick: 1

Y Tick: 1

Enter horizontal tick spacing

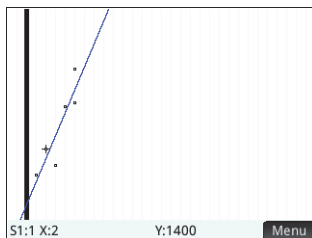
Edit Page 1/2

## Plot the graph

12. Plot the graph.

**Plot Setup**

Notice that the regression curve (that is, a curve to best fit the data points) is plotted by default.



## Display the equation

13. Return to the Symbolic view.

**Symb Setup**

Note the expression in the **Fit1** field. It shows that the slope

Statistics 2Var Symbolic View 09:18:41

√ S1: C1 C2

Type1: Linear

Fit1: 425.875 \* X + 376.25

S2:

Type2: Linear

Fit2: M \* X + B

S3:

Enter independent column

Edit ✓ C Fit+ Show Eval



( $m$ ) of the regression line is 425.875 and the  $y$ -intercept ( $b$ ) is 376.25.

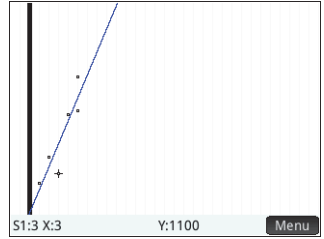
## Predict values

Let's now predict the sales figure if advertising were to go up to 6 minutes.

14. Return to the Plot view:



The trace option is active by default. This option will move the cursor from data

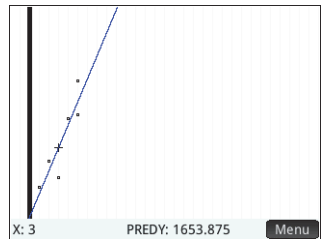


point to data point as you press  $\blacktriangleright$  or  $\blacktriangleleft$ . As you move from data point to data point, the corresponding  $x$  and  $y$ -values appear at the bottom of the screen. In this example, the  $x$ -axis represents minutes of advertising and the  $y$ -axis represents sales.

However, there is no data point for 6 minutes. Thus we cannot move the cursor to  $x = 6$ . Instead, we need to *predict* what  $y$  will be when  $x = 6$ , based on the data we do have. To do that, we need to trace the regression curve, not the data points we have.

15. Press  $\blacktriangledown$  or  $\blacktriangleup$  to set the cursor to trace the regression line rather than the data points.

The cursor jumps from whatever data point it was on to the regression curve.



16. Repeatedly press  $\blacktriangleright$  until  $x = 6$ .

If the  $x$ -value is not shown at the bottom left of the screen, tap **Menu**.

When you reach  $x = 6$ , you will see that the **PREDY** value (also displayed at the bottom of the screen)

reads 2931.5. Thus the model predicts that sales would rise to \$2,931.50 if advertising were increased to 6 minutes.




---

**Tip** You could use the same tracing technique to predict—although roughly—how many minutes of advertising you would need to gain sales of a specified amount. However, a more accurate method is available: return to Home view and enter  $\text{Predx}(s)$  where  $s$  is the sales figure.  $\text{Predy}$  and  $\text{Predx}$  are app functions. They are discussed in detail in “Statistics 2Var app functions” on page 331.

---

## Entering and editing statistical data

Each column in Numeric view is a dataset and is represented by a variable named C0 to C9. There are three ways to get data into a column:

- Go to Numeric view and enter the data directly. See “Getting started with the Statistics 2Var app” on page 199 for an example.
- Go to Home view and copy the data from a list. For example, if you enter L1  C1 in Home view, the items in list L1 are copied into column C1 in the Statistics 1Var app.
- Go to Home view and copy the data from a the Spreadsheet app. For example, suppose the data of interest is in A1:A10 in the Spreadsheet app and you want to copy it into column C7. With the Statistics 2Var app open, return to Home view and enter `Spreadsheet.A1:A10`  C7 .

---

**Note** A data column must have at least four data points to provide valid two-variable statistics.







---

Whichever method you use, the data you enter is automatically saved. You can leave this app and come back to it later. You will find that the data you last entered is still available.




After entering the data, you must define data sets—and the way they are to be plotted—in Symbolic view.

## Numeric view menu items








The buttons you can tap on in Numeric view are:

Button	Purpose
	Copies the highlighted item to the entry line.
	Inserts a new cell above the highlighted cell (and gives it a value of 0).
	Opens an input form for you to choose to sort the data in various ways.
	Displays a menu for you to choose the small font, medium font, or large font.
	Opens an input form for you to create a sequence based on an expression, and to store the result in a specified data column. See “Generating data” on page 193.
	Calculates statistics for each data set selected in Symbolic view. See “Computed statistics” on page 208.


### Edit a data set

In Numeric view, highlight the data to change, type a new value, and press . You can also highlight the data, tap , make your change, and tap .

### Delete data



- To delete a data item, highlight it and press . The values below the deleted cell will scroll up one row.
- To delete a column of data, highlight an entry in that column and press   (Clear). Select the column and tap .
- To delete all data in every column, press   (Clear), select All columns, and tap .

### Insert data

Highlight the cell below where you want to insert a value. Tap  and enter the value.

If you just want to add more data to the data set and it is not important where it goes, select the last cell in the data set and start entering the new data.

## Sort data values


1. In Numeric view, place the highlight in the column you want to sort, and tap .
2. Specify the Sort Order: *Ascending* or *Descending*.
3. Specify the *Independent* and *Dependent* data columns. Sorting is by the *independent* column. For instance, if Age is C1 and Income is C2 and you want to sort by Income, then you make C2 the independent column and C1 the dependent column.
  - To sort just one column, choose *None* for the dependent column.
  - For one-variable statistics with two data columns, specify the frequency column in the *Frequency* field.
4. Tap .

## Defining a regression model

You define a regression model in Symbolic view. There are three ways to do so:

- Accept the default option to fit the data to a straight line.
- Choose a pre-defined fit type (logarithmic, exponential, and so on).
- Enter your own mathematical expression. The expression will be plotted so that you can see how closely it fits the data points.

## Choose a fit



1. Press  to display the Symbolic view.
2. For the analysis you are interested in (S1 through S5), select the **Type** field.
3. Tap the field again to see the menu of fit types.
4. Select your preferred fit type from the menu. (See “Fit models” on page 207.)

## Fit models





Twelve fit models are available:


Fit model	Meaning
Linear	(Default.) Fits the data to a straight line: $y = mx + b$ . Uses a least-squares fit.
Logarithmic	Fits the data to a logarithmic curve: $y = m \ln x + b$ .
Power	Fits the data to a power curve: $y = bx^m$ .
Exponent	Fits the data to an exponent curve: $y = ab^x$ .
Inverse	Fits the data to an inverse variation: $y = \frac{m}{x + b}$
Logistic	Fits the data to a logistic curve: $y = \frac{L}{1 + ae^{(-bx)}}$ where $L$ is the saturation value for growth. You can store a positive real value in $L$ , or—if $L=0$ —let $L$ be computed automatically.
Quadratic	Fits the data to a quadratic curve: $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ . Needs at least three points.
Cubic	Fits the data to a cubic polynomial: $y = ax^3 + b^2x + cx + d$
Quartic	Fits to a quartic polynomial, $y = ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e$
Trigonometric	Fits the data to a trigonometric curve: $y = a \cdot \sin(bx + c) + d$ . Needs at least three points.
User Defined	Define your own fit (see below).

## To define your own fit

1. Press  to display the Symbolic view.
2. For the analysis you are interested in (S1 through S5), select the **Type** field.
3. Tap the field again to see a menu of fit types.
4. Select `User Defined` from the menu.
5. Select the corresponding **Fit<sub>n</sub>** field.
6. Enter an expression and press . The independent variable must be  $X$ , and the expression must not contain any unknown variables. Example:  $1.5 \times \cos x + 0.3 \times \sin x$ . Note that in this app, variables must be entered in uppercase.

## Computed statistics

When you tap , three sets of statistics become available. By default, the statistics involving both the independent and dependent columns are shown. Tap  to see the statistics involving just the independent column or  to display the statistics derived from the dependent column. Tap  to return to the default view. The tables below describe the statistics displayed in each view.

The statistics computed when you tap  are:

Statistic	Definition
n	The number of data points.
r	Correlation coefficient of the independent and dependent data columns, based only on the linear fit (regardless of the fit type chosen). Returns a value between $-1$ and $1$ , where $1$ and $-1$ indicate best fits.
$R^2$	The coefficient of determination, that is, the square of the correlation coefficient. The value of this statistics is dependent on the Fit type chosen. A measure of $1$ indicates a perfect fit.

Statistic	Definition (Continued)
sCOV	Sample covariance of independent and dependent data columns.
$\sigma$ COV	Population covariance of independent and dependent data columns.
$\Sigma XY$	Sum of all the individual products of $x$ and $y$ .

The statistics displayed when you tap **X** are:

Statistic	Definition
$\bar{x}$	Mean of $x$ - (independent) values.
$\Sigma X$	Sum of $x$ -values.
$\Sigma X^2$	Sum of $x^2$ -values.
sX	The sample standard deviation of the independent column.
$\sigma X$	The population standard deviation of the independent column.
serrX	the standard error of the independent column

The statistics displayed when you tap **Y** are:

Statistic	Definition
$\bar{y}$	Mean of $y$ - (dependent) values.
$\Sigma Y$	Sum of $y$ -values.
$\Sigma Y^2$	Sum of $y^2$ -values.
sY	The sample standard deviation of the dependent column.
$\sigma Y$	The population standard deviation of the dependent column.
serrY	The standard error of the dependent column.

## Plotting statistical data

Once you have entered your data, selected the data set to analyze and specified your fit model, you can plot your data. You can plot up to five scatter plots at a time.

1. In Symbolic view, select the data sets you want to plot.
2. Make sure that the full range of your data will be plotted. You do this by reviewing (and adjusting, if necessary), the **X Rng** and **Y Rng** fields in Plot Setup view. ( **Shift** **Plot** **Setup** ).

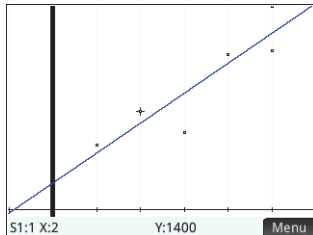
3. Press **Plot** **Setup**.

If the data set and regression line are not ideally positioned, Press **View** **Copy** and select **Autoscale**. Autoscale can be relied upon to give a good starting scale which can then be adjusted later in the Plot Setup view.

### Tracing a scatter plot

The figures below the plot indicate that the cursor is at the second data point of S1, at ((2, 1400).

Press **Right Arrow** to move to the next data point and display information about it.



Note: if you find that the tracer cursor is moving along the regression line rather than from data point to data point, press **Up Arrow** or **Down Arrow** to select the points and not the line.

### Tracing a curve

If the regression line is not showing, tap **Fit**. The coordinates of the tracer cursor are shown at the bottom of the screen. (If they are not visible, tap **Menu**.)

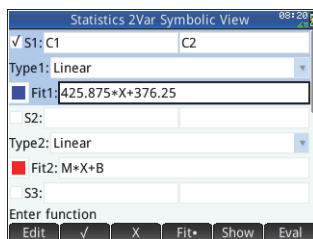
Note: if you find that the tracer cursor is moving between the data points rather than along the regression line, press **Up Arrow** or **Down Arrow** to select the line and not the points.

Tap **Defn** to display the data sets that being represented by of the regression line.



Press **Symb** **Setup** to see the equation of the regression line in Symbolic view.

If the equation is too wide for the screen, select it and press **Show**.



The example above shows that the slope of the regression line ( $m$ ) is 425.875 and the  $y$ -intercept ( $b$ ) is 376.25.

## Plot view: menu items

The menu items in Plot view are:

Button	Purpose
<b>Zoom</b>	Displays the Zoom menu.
<b>Trace*</b>	Turns trace mode on or off.
<b>Fit*</b>	Shows or hides a curve that best fits the data points according to the selected regression model.
<b>Go To</b>	Enables you to specify a value on the regression line to jump to (or a data point to jump to if your cursor is on a data point rather than on the regression line). You might need to press <b>▲</b> or <b>▼</b> to move the cursor to the object of interest: the regression line or the data points.
<b>Menu</b>	Shows or hides the menu buttons.

## Plot setup

As with all the apps that provide a plotting feature, the Plot Setup view—**Shift** **Plot** **Setup** (Setup)—enables you to set the range and appearance of Plot view. The common settings available are discussed in “Common operations in Plot Setup view” on page 86. The Plot Setup view in the Statistics 2Var app has two additional settings:

## Plotting mark

Page 1 of the Plot Setup view has fields named  $S1MARK$  through  $S5MARK$ . These fields enable you to specify one of five symbols to use to represent the data points in each data set. This will help you distinguish data sets in Plot view if you have chosen to plot more than one.

## Connect

Page 2 of the Plot Setup view has a **Connect** field. If you choose this option, straight lines join the data points in Plot view.

## Predicting values

$PredX$  is a function that predicts a value for  $X$  given a value for  $Y$ . Likewise,  $PredY$  is a function that predicts a value for  $Y$  given a value for  $X$ . In both cases, the prediction is based on the equation that best fits the data according to the specified fit type.

You can predict values in the Plot view of the Statistics 2Var app and also in Home view.

## In Plot view


1. In the Plot view, tap **Fit** to display the regression curve for the data set (if it is not already displayed).
2. Make sure the trace cursor is on the regression curve. (Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\blacktriangledown$  if it is not.)
3. Press  $\blacktriangleright$  or  $\blacktriangleleft$ . The cursor moves along the regression curve and the corresponding  $X$  and  $Y$  values are displayed across the bottom of the screen. (If these values are not visible, tap **Menu**.)

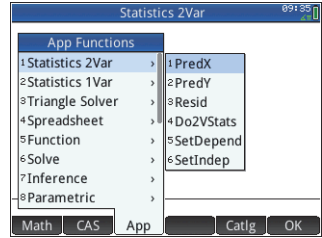
You can force the cursor to a specific  $X$  value by tapping **Go To**, entering the value and tapping **OK**. The cursor jumps to the specified point on the curve.

## In Home view

If the Statistics 2Var app is the active app, you can also predict  $X$  and  $Y$  values in the Home view.

- Enter  $PredX(Y)$   to predict the  $X$  value for the specified  $Y$  value.
- Enter  $PredY(X)$   to predict the  $Y$  value for the specified  $X$  value.

You can type `PredX` and `PredY` directly on the entry line, or select them from the App functions menu (under the `Statistics 2Var` category). The App functions menu is one of the Toolbox menus (  ).




## HINT

In cases where more than one fit curve is displayed, the `PredX` and `PredY` functions use the first active fit defined in the Symbolic view.

## Troubleshooting a plot

If you have problems plotting, check the following:

- The fit (that is, regression model) that you intended to select is the one selected.
- Only those data sets you want to analyze or plot are selected in Symbolic view.
- The plotting range is suitable. Try pressing  and selecting `Autoscale`, or adjust the plotting parameters in Plot Setup view.
- Ensure that both paired columns contain data, and are of the same length.
- Ensure that a paired column of frequency values is the same length as the data column to which it is associated.



## Inference app

---

The Inference app enables you to calculate confidence intervals and undertake hypothesis tests based on the Normal Z-distribution or Student's t-distribution.

Based on statistics from one or two samples, you can test hypotheses and find confidence intervals for the following quantities:

- mean
- proportion
- difference between two means
- difference between two proportions

### Example data

The Inference app comes with sample data (which you can always restore by resetting the app). This sample data is useful in helping you gain an understanding app. The calculator's on-line help provides a description of what the sample data represents.

## Getting started with the Inference app

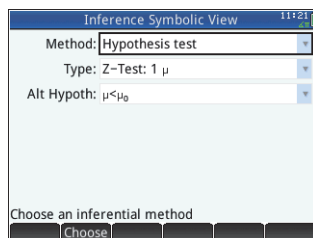
Let's conduct a Z-Test on one mean using the sample data.

### Open the Inference app

1. Open the Inference app:

 Select  
Inference

The Inference app  
opens in Symbolic  
view.



### Symbolic view options

The table below summarizes the options available in Symbolic view for the two inference methods: hypothesis test and confidence interval.

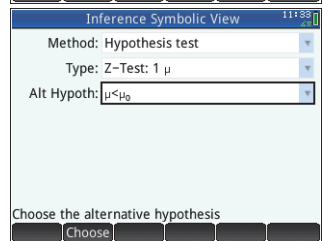
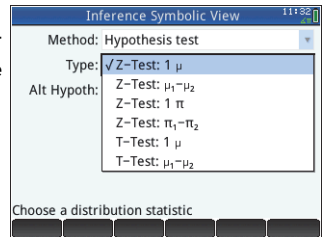
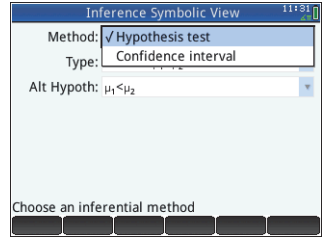
<b>Hypothesis Test</b>	<b>Confidence Interval</b>
Z-Test: $1 \mu$ , the Z-Test on one mean	Z-Int: $1 \mu$ , the confidence interval for one mean, based on the Normal distribution
Z-Test: $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ , the Z-Test on the difference between two means	Z-Int: $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ , the confidence interval for the difference between two means, based on the Normal distribution
Z-Test: $1 \pi$ , the Z-Test on one proportion	Z-Int: $1 \pi$ , the confidence interval for one proportion, based on the Normal distribution
Z-Test: $\pi_1 - \pi_2$ , the Z-Test on the difference between two proportions	Z-Int: $\pi_1 - \pi_2$ , the confidence interval for the difference between two proportions, based on the Normal distribution
T-Test: $1 \mu$ , the T-Test on one mean	T-Int: $1 \mu$ , the confidence interval for one mean, based on the Student's t-distribution
T-Test: $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ , the T-Test on the difference between two means	T-Int: $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ , the confidence interval for the difference between two means, based on the Student's t-distribution

If you choose one of the hypothesis tests, you can choose an alternative hypothesis to test against the null hypothesis. For each test, there are three possible choices for an alternative hypothesis based on a quantitative comparison of two quantities. The null hypothesis is always that the two quantities are equal. Thus, the alternative hypotheses cover the various cases for the two quantities being unequal:  $<$ ,  $>$ , and  $\neq$ .

In this section, we will conduct a Z-Test on one mean on the example data to illustrate how the app works.

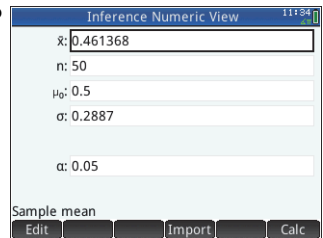
## Select the inference method

- Hypothesis Test is the default inference method. If it is not selected, tap on the Method field and select it.
- Choose the type of test. In this case, select Z-Test :  $1 \mu$  from the **Type** menu.
- Select an alternative hypothesis. In this case, select  $\mu < \mu_0$  from the **Alt Hypoth** menu.



## Enter data

- Go to Numeric view to see the sample data.



The table below describes the fields in this view for the sample data.

Field name	Definition
$\bar{x}$	Sample mean

Field name	Definition (Continued)
$n$	Sample size
$\mu_0$	Assumed population mean
$\sigma$	Population standard deviation
$\alpha$	Alpha level for the test

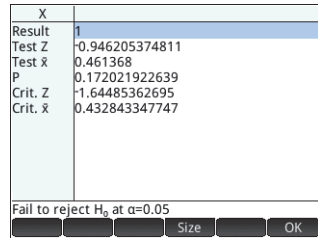
We'll leave the data as it is for now, but the Numeric view is where you add the data you are particularly interested in.

## Display the test results

6. Display the test results:

**Calc**

The test distribution value and its associated probability are displayed, along with the critical value(s) of the test and the associated critical value(s) of the statistic.



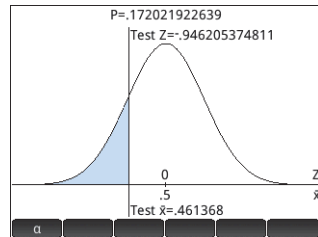
Tap **OK** to return to Numeric view.

## Plot the test results

7. Display a graphical view of the test results:

**Plot**  
Setup

The graph of the distribution is displayed, with the test Z-value marked. The corresponding X-value is also shown.



Tap  **$\alpha$**  to see the critical Z-value. With the alpha level showing, you can press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to decrease or increase the  $\alpha$ -level.



# Importing statistics

The Inference app can calculate confidence intervals and test hypotheses based on data in the Statistics 1Var and Statistics 2Var apps. The following example illustrates the process.

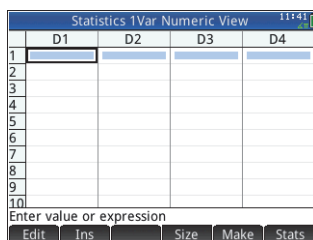
A series of six experiments gives the following values as the boiling point of a liquid:

82.5, 83.1, 82.6, 83.7, 82.4, and 83.0


Based on this sample, we want to estimate the true boiling point at the 90% confidence level.

## Open the Statistics 1Var app

1. Open the Statistics 1Var app:  
 Select Statistics 1Var







## Clear unwanted data



2. If there is unwanted data in the app, clear it:  
 All columns



## Enter data



3. In column D1, enter the boiling points found during the experiments.


82  5 

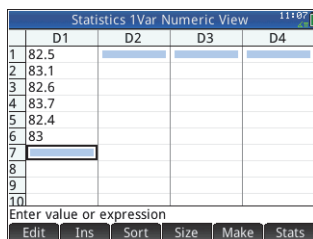
83  1 

82  6 

83  7 

82  4 

83 



## Calculate statistics

4. Calculate statistics:

Stats

The statistics calculated will now be imported into the Inference app.

X	H1		
n	6		
Min	82.4		
Q1	82.5		
Med	82.8		
Q3	83.1		
Max	83.7		
$\Sigma X$	497.3		
$\Sigma X^2$	41219.07		
$k$	8.2883333e1		
sX	4.875107e-1		
$\sigma X$	4.450343e-1		

6

Choose Size Column OK

5. Tap **OK** to close the statistics window.

## Open the Inference app

6. Open the Inference app and clear the current settings.

Apps Info Select

Inference

Shift Esc Clear

Inference Symbolic View 11:51

Method: Hypothesis test

Type: Z-Test:  $1 \mu$

Alt Hypoth:  $\mu < \mu_0$

Choose an inferential method

Choose

## Select inference method and type

7. Tap on the **Method** field and select Confidence Interval.

Inference Symbolic View 11:51

Method: Confidence interval

Type: Z-Int:  $1 \mu$

Choose an inferential method

Choose

8. Tap on **Type** and select T-Int:  $1 \mu$

Inference Symbolic View 11:51

Method: Confidence interval

Type: T-Int:  $1 \mu$

Choose a distribution statistic

Choose

## Import the data

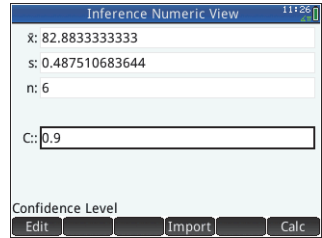
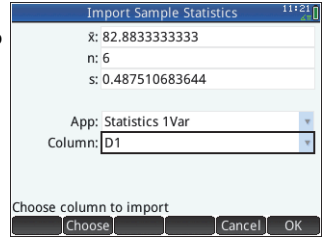
9. Open Numeric view:

Num Setup

10. Specify the data you want to import:

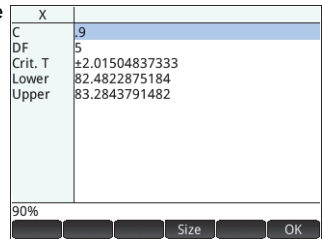
Tap **Import**.

- From the **App** field select the statistics app that has the data you want to import.
- In the **Column** field specify the column in that app where the data is stored. (D1 is the default.)
- Tap **OK**.
- Specify a 90% confidence interval in the **C** field.



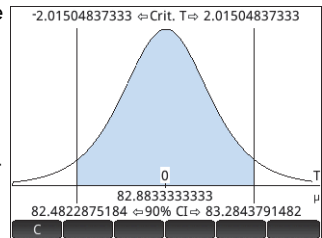
## Display results numerically

- Display the confidence interval in Numeric view:  
**Calc**
- Return to Numeric view:  
**OK**



## Display results graphically

- Display the confidence interval in Plot view.  
**Plot Setup**
- You can see that we can be 90% confident that the true boiling point lies between 82.4822... and 83.2843...



## Hypothesis tests

You use hypothesis tests to test the validity of hypotheses about the statistical parameters of one or two populations.

The tests are based on statistics of samples of the populations.

The HP Prime hypothesis tests use the Normal Z-distribution or the Student's t-distribution to calculate probabilities.

## One-Sample Z-Test

**Menu name** ZTest: 1  $\mu$

On the basis of statistics from a single sample, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the population mean equals a specified value,  $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

$$H_f: \mu < \mu_0$$

$$H_f: \mu > \mu_0$$

$$H_f: \mu \neq \mu_0$$

**Inputs** The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$\bar{x}$	Sample mean
n	Sample size
$\mu_0$	Hypothetical population mean
$\sigma$	Population standard deviation
$\alpha$	Significance level

## Results

The results are:

Result	Description
Test Z	Z-test statistic
Test $\bar{x}$	Value of $\bar{x}$ associated with the test Z-value
P	Probability associated with the Z-Test statistic
Critical Z	Boundary value(s) of Z associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied
Critical $\bar{x}$	Boundary value(s) of $\bar{x}$ required by the $\alpha$ value that you supplied

## Two-Sample Z-Test

### Menu name

Z-Test:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

On the basis of two samples, each from a separate population, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the means of the two populations are equal,  $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses to test against the null hypothesis:

$$H_f: \mu_1 < \mu_2$$

$$H_f: \mu_1 > \mu_2$$

$$H_f: \mu_1 \neq \mu_2$$

### Inputs

The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$\bar{x}_1$	Sample 1 mean
$\bar{x}_2$	Sample 2 mean
$n_1$	Sample 1 size
$n_2$	Sample 2 size

Field name	Definition (Continued)
$\sigma_1$	Population 1 standard deviation
$\sigma_2$	Population 2 standard deviation
$\alpha$	Significance level

## Results

The results are:

Result	Description
Test Z	Z-Test statistic
Test $\Delta \bar{x}$	Difference in the means associated with the test Z-value
P	Probability associated with the Z-Test statistic
Critical Z	Boundary value(s) of Z associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied
Critical $\Delta \bar{x}$	Difference in the means associated with the $\alpha$ level you supplied

## One-Proportion Z-Test

### Menu name

ZTest: 1  $\pi$

On the basis of statistics from a single sample, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the proportion of successes is an assumed value,  $H_0: \pi = \pi_0$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

$$H_f: \pi < \pi_0$$

$$H_f: \pi > \pi_0$$

$$H_f: \pi \neq \pi_0$$

## Inputs

The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$x$	Number of successes in the sample
$n$	Sample size
$\pi_0$	Population proportion of successes
$\alpha$	Significance level

## Results

The results are:

Result	Description
Test Z	Z-Test statistic
Test $\hat{p}$	Proportion of successes in the sample
P	Probability associated with the Z-Test statistic
Critical Z	Boundary value(s) of Z associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied
Critical $\hat{p}$	Proportion of successes associated with the level you supplied

## Two-Proportion Z-Test

### Menu name

Z-Test:  $\pi_1 - \pi_2$

On the basis of statistics from two samples, each from a different population, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the proportions of successes in the two populations are equal,  $H_0: \pi_1 = \pi_2$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

$$H_f: \pi_1 < \pi_2$$

$$H_f: \pi_1 > \pi_2$$

$$H_f: \pi_1 \neq \pi_2$$

## Inputs

The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$x_1$	Sample 1 success count
$x_2$	Sample 2 success count
$n_1$	Sample 1 size
$n_2$	Sample 2 size
$\alpha$	Significance level

## Results

The results are:

Result	Description
Test Z	Z-Test statistic
Test $\Delta \hat{p}$	Difference between the proportions of successes in the two samples that is associated with the test Z-value
P	Probability associated with the Z-Test statistic
Critical Z	Boundary value(s) of Z associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied
Critical $\Delta \hat{p}$	Difference in the proportion of successes in the two samples associated with the level you supplied



# One-Sample T-Test

**Menu name** T-Test: 1  $\mu$

This test is used when the population standard deviation is not known. On the basis of statistics from a single sample, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the sample mean has some assumed value,  $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

$$H_1: \mu < \mu_0$$

$$H_1: \mu > \mu_0$$

$$H_1: \mu \neq \mu_0$$

**Inputs** The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$\bar{x}$	Sample mean
s	Sample standard deviation
n	Sample size
$\mu_0$	Hypothetical population mean
$\alpha$	Significance level

**Results** The results are:

Result	Description
Test T	T-Test statistic
Test $\bar{x}$	Value of $\bar{x}$ associated with the test t-value
P	Probability associated with the T-Test statistic
DF	Degrees of freedom

<b>Result</b>	<b>Description (Continued)</b>
Critical T	Boundary value(s) of T associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied
Critical $\bar{x}$	Boundary value(s) of $\bar{x}$ required by the $\alpha$ value that you supplied

## Two-Sample T-Test

### Menu name

T-Test:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

This test is used when the population standard deviation is not known. On the basis of statistics from two samples, each sample from a different population, this test measures the strength of the evidence for a selected hypothesis against the null hypothesis. The null hypothesis is that the two populations means are equal,  $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$ .

You select one of the following alternative hypotheses against which to test the null hypothesis:

$$H_i: \mu_1 < \mu_2$$

$$H_i: \mu_1 > \mu_2$$

$$H_i: \mu_1 \neq \mu_2$$

### Inputs

The inputs are:

<b>Field name</b>	<b>Definition</b>
$\bar{x}_1$	Sample 1 mean
$\bar{x}_2$	Sample 2 mean
$s_1$	Sample 1 standard deviation
$s_2$	Sample 2 standard deviation
$n_1$	Sample 1 size
$n_2$	Sample 2 size
$\alpha$	Significance level

Field name	Definition
Pooled	Check this option to pool samples based on their standard deviations

## Results

The results are:

Result	Description
Test T	T-Test statistic
Test $\Delta \bar{x}$	Difference in the means associated with the test t-value
P	Probability associated with the T-Test statistic
DF	Degrees of freedom
Critical T	Boundary values of T associated with the $\alpha$ level that you supplied
Critical $\Delta \bar{x}$	Difference in the means associated with the $\alpha$ level you supplied

## Confidence intervals

The confidence interval calculations that the HP Prime can perform are based on the Normal Z-distribution or Student's t-distribution.

## One-Sample Z-Interval

**Menu name** Z-Int: 1  $\mu$

This option uses the Normal Z-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for  $\mu$ , the true mean of a population, when the true population standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , is known.

**Inputs** The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$\bar{x}$	Sample mean

Field name	Definition
n	Sample size
$\sigma$	Population standard deviation
c	Confidence level

## Results

The results are:

Result	Description
C	Confidence level
Critical Z	Critical values for Z
Lower	Lower bound for $\mu$
Upper	Upper bound for $\mu$

## Two-Sample Z-Interval

### Menu name

ZInt:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

This option uses the Normal Z-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for the difference between the means of two populations,  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ , when the population standard deviations,  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$ , are known.

### Inputs

The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$\bar{x}_1$	Sample 1 mean
$\bar{x}_2$	Sample 2 mean
$n_1$	Sample 1 size
$n_2$	Sample 2 size
$\sigma_1$	Population 1 standard deviation
$\sigma_2$	Population 2 standard deviation

Field name	Definition
C	Confidence level

## Results

The results are:

Result	Description
C	Confidence level
Critical Z	Critical values for Z
Lower	Lower bound for $\Delta \mu$
Upper	Upper bound for $\Delta \mu$

# One-Proportion Z-Interval

## Menu name

Z-Int:  $1\pi$

This option uses the Normal Z-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for the proportion of successes in a population for the case in which a sample of size  $n$  has a number of successes  $x$ .

## Inputs

The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$x$	Sample success count
$n$	Sample size
C	Confidence level

## Results

The results are:

Result	Description
C	Confidence level
Critical Z	Critical values for Z
Lower	Lower bound for $\pi$

Result	Description
Upper	Upper bound for $\pi$

## Two-Proportion Z-Interval

**Menu name** Z-Int:  $\pi_1 - \pi_2$

This option uses the Normal Z-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for the difference between the proportions of successes in two populations.

**Inputs** The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$\bar{x}_1$	Sample 1 success count
$\bar{x}_2$	Sample 2 success count
$n_1$	Sample 1 size
$n_2$	Sample 2 size
C	Confidence level

**Results** The results are:

Result	Description
C	Confidence level
Critical Z	Critical values for Z
Lower	Lower bound for $\Delta\pi$
Upper	Upper bound for $\Delta\pi$

## One-Sample T-Interval

**Menu name** T-Int: 1  $\mu$

This option uses the Student's t-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for  $\mu$ , the true mean of a population,

for the case in which the true population standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , is unknown.

### Inputs

The inputs are:

Field name	Definition
$\bar{x}$	Sample mean
s	Sample standard deviation
n	Sample size
C	Confidence level

### Results

The results are:

Result	Description
C	Confidence level
DF	Degrees of freedom
Critical T	Critical values for T
Lower	Lower bound for $\mu$
Upper	Upper bound for $\mu$

## Two-Sample T-Interval

### Menu name

T-Int:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

This option uses the Student's t-distribution to calculate a confidence interval for the difference between the means of two populations,  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ , when the population standard deviations,  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$ , are unknown.

### Inputs

The inputs are:

Result	Definition
$\bar{x}_1$	Sample 1 mean
$\bar{x}_2$	Sample 2 mean

<b>Result</b>	<b>Definition</b>
$s_1$	Sample 1 standard deviation
$s_2$	Sample 2 standard deviation
$n_1$	Sample 1 size
$n_2$	Sample 2 size
C	Confidence level
Pooled	Whether or not to pool the samples based on their standard deviations

## Results

The results are:

<b>Result</b>	<b>Description</b>
C	Confidence level
DF	Degrees of freedom
Critical T	Critical values for T
Lower	Lower bound for $\Delta \mu$
Upper	Upper bound for $\Delta \mu$



## Solve app

---

The Solve app enables you to define up to ten equations or expressions each with as many variables as you like. You can solve a single equation or expression for one of its variables, based on a seed value. You can also solve a system of equations (linear or non-linear), again using seed values.

Note the differences between an equation and an expression:

- An *equation* contains an equals sign. Its solution is a value for the unknown variable that makes both sides of the equation have the same value.
- An *expression* does not contain an equals sign. Its solution is a *root*, a value for the unknown variable that makes the expression have a value of zero.

For brevity, the term *equation* in this chapter will cover both equations and expressions.

Solve works only with real numbers.

## Getting started with the Solve app

The Solve app uses the customary app views: Symbolic, Plot and Numeric described in chapter 4.

For a description of the menu buttons available in this app, see:

- “Symbolic view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 76
- “Plot view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 86, and
- “Numeric view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 94

## One equation

Suppose you want to find the acceleration needed to increase the speed of a car from 16.67 m/s (60 kph) to 27.78 m/s (100 kph) over a distance of 100 m.

The equation to solve is:

$$V^2 = U^2 + 2AD.$$

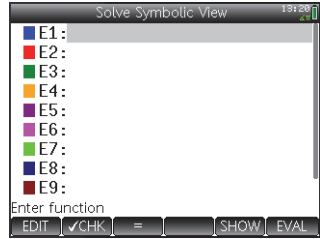
where  $V$  = final speed,  $U$  = initial speed,  $A$  = acceleration needed, and  $D$  = distance.

## Open the Solve app

1. Open the Solve app.

 Select **Solve**

The Solve app starts in Symbolic view, where you specify the equation to solve.
















## NOTE

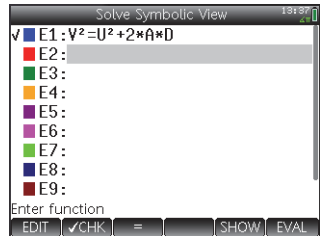
In addition to the built-in variables, you can use one or more variables you created yourself (either in Home view or in the CAS). For example, if you've created a variable called  $ME$ , you could include it in an equation such as this:  $Y^2 = G^2 + ME$ .

Functions defined in other apps can also be referenced in the Solve app. For example, if you have defined  $F1(X)$  to be  $X^2 + 10$  in the Function app, you can enter  $F1(X) = 50$  in the Solve app to solve the equation  $X^2 + 10 = 50$ .

## Clear the app and define the equation

2. If you have no need for any equations or expressions already defined, press   (Clear). Tap  to confirm your intention to clear the app.
3. Define the equation.

   $x^2$      $U$   
  $x^2$    $2$    $A$    $D$   


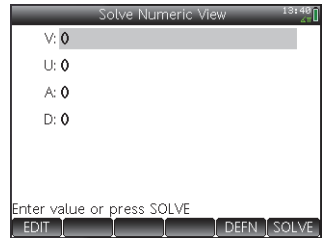


## Enter known variables

4. Display the Numeric view.



Here you specify the values of the known variables, highlight the variable that you want to solve for, and tap **Solve**.



5. Enter the values for the known variables.

2.7  7.8  1.6  6.7  100

## NOTE

Some variables may already have values against them when you display the Numeric view. This occurs if the variables have been assigned values elsewhere. For example, in Home view you might have assigned 10 to variable U: 10 **Sto** U. Then when you open the Numeric view to solve an equation with U as a variable, 10 will be the default value for U. This also occurs if a variable has been given a value in some previous calculation (in an app or program).

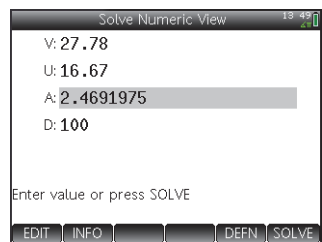
To reset all pre-populated variables to zero, press **Shift** **Esc** **Clear**.

## Solve the unknown variable

6. Solve for the unknown variable (A).

Move the cursor to the A field and tap **Solve**.

Therefore, the acceleration needed to increase the speed of a car from 16.67 m/s (60 kph) to 27.78 m/s (100 kph) over a distance of 100 m is approximately  $2.4692 \text{ m/s}^2$ .



The equation for A is  $(V^2 - U^2)/2D$ . This is a linear equation. Hence we can conclude that there are no further solutions for A. We can also see this if we plot the equation.

## Plot the equation

The Plot view shows one graph for each side of the solved equation. You can choose any of the variables to be the

independent variable by selecting it in Numeric view. So in this example make sure that A is highlighted.

The current equation is  $V^2 = U^2 + 2AD$ . The plot view will plot two equations, one for each side of the equation. One of these is  $Y = V^2$ , with  $V = 27.78$ , making  $Y = 771.7284$ . This graph will be a horizontal line. The other graph will be  $Y = U^2 + 2AD$  with  $U = 16.67$  and  $D = 100$ , making,  $Y = 200A + 277.8889$ . This graph is also a line. The desired solution is the value of A where these two lines intersect.

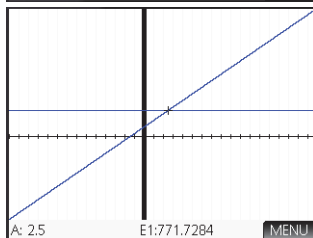
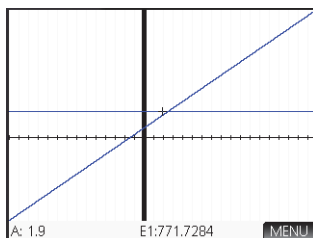
- Plot the equation for variable A.



Select Auto Scale.

Select Both sides of En  
(where n is the number of  
the selected equation)

- Tap **Menu** and then **Trace**. Using the cursor keys, move the trace cursor along either graph until it nears the intersection. Note that the value of A displayed near the bottom left corner of the screen closely matches the value of A you calculated above.



The Plot view provides a convenient way to find an approximation to a solution when you suspect that there are a number of solutions. Move the trace cursor close to the solution (that is, the intersection) of interest to you and then open Numeric view. The solution given in Numeric view will be will be for the solution nearest the trace cursor.

## NOTE

By dragging a finger horizontally or vertically across the screen, you can quickly see parts of the plot that are initially outside the x and y ranges you set.

## Several equations




You can define up to ten equations and expressions in Symbolic view and select those you want to solve together as a system. For example, suppose you want to solve the system of equations consisting of:

- $X^2 + Y^2 = 16$  and
- $X - Y = -1$

### Open the Solve app

1. Open the Solve app.








 Select Solve

2. If you have no need for any equations or expressions already defined, press   (Clear). Tap  to confirm your intention to clear the app.

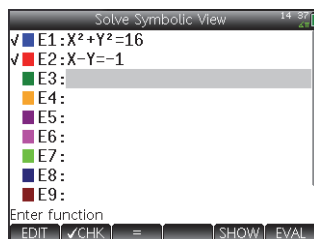
### Define the equations

3. Define the equations.

 X  +  Y   
  16 

 X   Y    
 1 

Make sure that both equations are selected, as we are looking for values of  $X$  and  $Y$  that satisfy both equations.

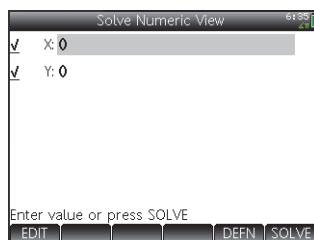


### Enter a seed value

4. Display Numeric view.



Unlike the example above, in this example we have no values for any variable. You can either enter a seed value for one of the variables, or let the calculator provide a solution. (Typically a seed value is a value that directs the calculator to provide, if possible, a solution that is closest to it rather than some other value.) In this example, let's look for a solution in the vicinity of  $X = 2$ .



5. Enter the seed value in the X field:

2 **OK**

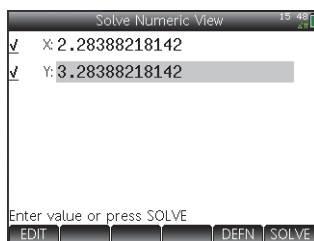
The calculator will provide one solution (if there is one) and you will not be alerted if there are multiple solutions. Vary the seed values to find other potential solutions.

6. Select the variables you want solutions for. In this example we want to find values for both X and Y, so make sure that both variables are selected.

Note too that if you have more than two variables, you can enter seed values for more than one of them.

## Solve the unknown variables

7. Tap **Solve** to find a solution near  $X = 2$  that satisfies each selected equation. Solutions, if found, are displayed beside each selected variable.



## Limitations

You cannot plot equations if more than one is selected in Symbolic view.

The HP Prime will not alert you to the existence of multiple solutions. If you suspect that another solution exists close to a particular value, repeat the exercise using that value as a seed. (In the example just discussed, you will find another solution if you enter  $-3$  as the seed value for X.)

In some situations, the Solve app will use a random number seed in its search for a solution. This means that it is not always predictable which seed will lead to which solution when there are multiple solutions.

## Solution information

When you are solving a single equation, the **Info** button appears on the menu after you tap **Solve**. Tapping **Info**

displays a message giving you some information about the solutions found (if any). Tap **OK** to clear the message.

---

Message	Meaning
Zero	The Solve app found a point where both sides of the equation were equal, or where the expression was zero (a root), within the calculator's 12-digit accuracy.
Sign Reversal	Solve found two points where the two sides of the equation have opposite signs, but it cannot find a point in between where the value is zero. Similarly, for an expression, where the value of the expression has different signs but is not precisely zero. This might be because either the two points are neighbours (they differ by one in the twelfth digit), or the equation is not real-valued between the two points. Solve returns the point where the value or difference is closer to zero. If the equation or expression is continuously real, this point is Solve's best approximation of an actual solution.
Extremum	Solve found a point where the value of the expression approximates a local minimum (for positive values) or maximum (for negative values). This point may or may not be a solution.  Or: Solve stopped searching at 9.999999999999E499, the largest number the calculator can represent.  Note that the <b>Extremum</b> message indicates that it is highly likely that there is no solution. Use Numeric view to verify this (and note that any values shown are suspect).
Cannot find solution	No values satisfy the selected equation or expression.

---

---

<b>Message</b>	<b>Meaning (Continued)</b>
Bad Guess(es)	The initial guess lies outside the domain of the equation. Therefore, the solution was not a real number or it caused an error.
Constant?	The value of the equation is the same at every point sampled.



# Linear Solver app

The Linear Solver app enables you to solve a set of linear equations. The set can contain two or three linear equations.

In a two-equation set, each equation must be in the form  $ax + by = k$ . In a three-equation set, each equation must be in the form  $ax + by + cz = k$ .

You provide values for  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $k$  (and  $c$  in three-equation sets) for each equation, and the app will attempt to solve for  $x$  and  $y$  (and  $z$  in three-equation sets).

The HP Prime will alert you if no solution can be found, or if there is an infinite number of solutions.

## Getting started with the Linear Solver app

The following example defines the following set of equations and then solves for the unknown variables:

$$6x + 9y + 6z = 5$$

$$7x + 10y + 8z = 10$$

$$6x + 4y = 6$$

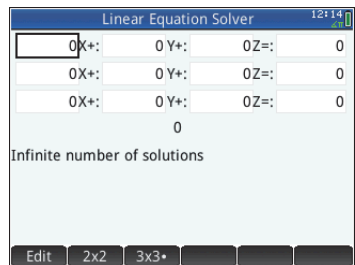
### Open the Linear Solver app

1. Open the Linear Solver app.

 Select

Linear  
Solver

The app opens in  
Numeric view.



## Note

If the last time you used the Linear Solver app you solved for two equations, the two-equation input form is displayed. To solve a three-equation set, tap **3x3**; now the input form displays three equations.

## Define and solve the equations

- You define the equations you want to solve by entering the coefficients of each variable in each equation and the constant term. Notice that the cursor is positioned immediately to the left of  $x$  in the first equation, ready for you to insert the coefficient of  $x$  (6). Enter the coefficient and either tap **OK** or press .
- The cursor moves to the next coefficient. Enter that coefficient and either tap **OK** or press . Continue doing likewise until you have defined all the equations.

Once you have entered enough values for the solver to be able to generate solutions, those solutions appear near the bottom of the display. In this example, the solver was able to find solutions for  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  as soon as the first coefficient of the last equation was entered.

Linear Equation Solver 12:20

6X+:	9 Y+:	6Z=:	5
7X+:	10 Y+:	8Z=:	10
6X+:	0 Y+:	0Z=:	0

X: 0 Y: -1.666666667 Z: 3.333333333

Edit 2x2 3x3

As you enter each of the remaining known values, the solution changes. The graphic at the right shows the final solution once all the coefficients and constants had been entered.

Linear Equation Solver 12:21

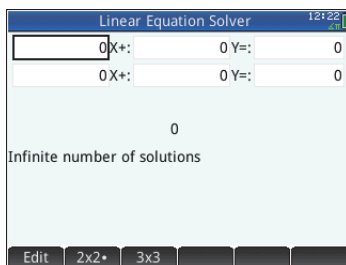
6X+:	9 Y+:	6Z=:	5
7X+:	10 Y+:	8Z=:	10
6X+:	4 Y+:	0Z=:	6

X: 3.166666667 Y: -3.25 Z: 2.541666667

Edit 2x2 3x3

## Solve a two-by-two system

If the three-equation input form is displayed and you want to solve a two-equation set, tap **2x2**.



---

### Note

You can enter any expression that resolves to a numerical result, including variables. Just enter the name of a variable. For more information on assigning values to variables, see “Storing a value in a variable” on page 39.

---

## Menu items

The menu items are:

- **Edit**: moves the cursor to the entry line where you can add or change a value. You can also highlight a field, enter a value, and press **Enter**. The cursor automatically moves to the next field, where you can enter the next value and press **Enter**.
- **2x2**: displays the page for solving a system of 2 linear equations in 2 variables; changes to **2x2\*** when active
- **3x3**: displays the page for solving a system of 3 linear equations in 3 variables; changes to **3x3\*** when active



# Parametric app

The Parametric app enables you to explore parametric equations. These are equations in which both  $x$  and  $y$  are defined as functions of  $t$ . They take the forms  $x = f(t)$  and  $y = g(t)$ .

## Getting started with the Parametric app


The Parametric app uses the customary app views: Symbolic, Plot and Numeric described in chapter 4.

For a description of the menu buttons available in this app, see:

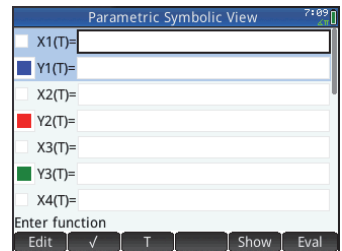
- “Symbolic view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 76
- “Plot view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 86, and
- “Numeric view: Summary of menu buttons” on page 94

Throughout this chapter, we will explore the parametric equations  $x(T) = 8\sin(T)$  and  $y(T) = 8\cos(T)$ . These equations produce a circle.

## Open the Parametric app

1. Open the Parametric app.  
 Select Parametric

The Parametric app starts in Symbolic view. This is the *defining* view. It is where you symbolically define (that is, specify) the parametric expressions you want to explore.

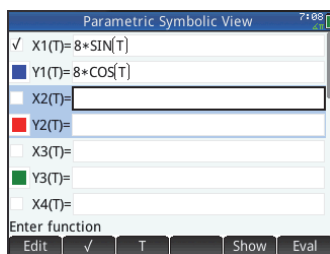
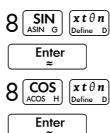


The graphical and numerical data you see in Plot view and Numeric view are derived from the symbolic functions defined here.

## Define the functions

There are 20 fields for defining functions. These are labelled  $X_1(T)$  through  $X_9(T)$  and  $X_0(T)$ , and  $Y_1(T)$  through  $Y_9(T)$  and  $Y_0(T)$ . Each X function is paired with a Y function.

- Highlight which pair of functions you want to use, either by tapping on, or scrolling to, one of the pair. If you are entering a new function, just start typing. If you are editing an existing function, tap **Edit** and make your changes. When you have finished defining or changing the function, press **Enter**.
- Define the two expressions.



Notice how the  $\text{x t } \theta \text{ n}$  key enters whatever variable is relevant to the

current app. In the Function app,  $\text{x t } \theta \text{ n}$  enters an X. In the Parametric app it enters a T. In the Polar app, discussed in chapter 15, it enters  $\theta$ .

- Decide if you want to:
  - give one or more function a custom color when it is plotted
  - evaluate a dependent function
  - deselect a definition that you don't want to explore
  - incorporate variables, math commands and CAS commands in a definition.

For the sake of simplicity we can ignore these operations in this example. However, they can be useful and are described in detail in "Common operations in Symbolic view" on page 71.

## Set the angle measure

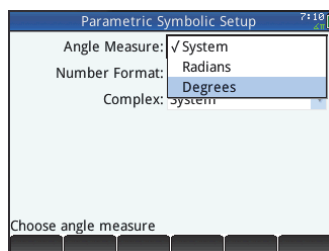
Set the angle measure to degrees:

5.   (Settings)

6. Tap the **Angle Measure** field and select Degrees.

You could also have set the angle measure on the

**Home Settings** screen. However, Home settings are system-wide. By setting the angle measure in an app rather than Home view, you are limiting the setting just to that app.

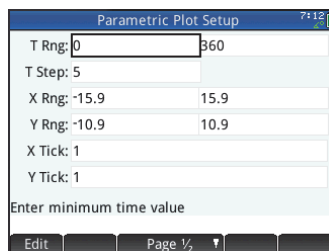


## Set up the plot

7. Open the Plot Setup view:

  (Setup)

8. Set up the plot by specifying appropriate graphing options. In this example, set the **T Rng** and **T Step** fields so that  $T$  steps from  $0^\circ$  to  $360^\circ$  in  $5^\circ$  steps:



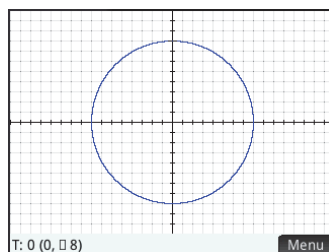
Select the 2nd **T Rng** field and enter:

360  5 

## Plot the functions

9. Plot the functions:





## Explore the graph

The menu button gives you access to common tools for exploring plots:

**Zoom**: displays a range of zoom options. (The  $\boxed{+}$  and  $\boxed{-}$  keys can also be used to zoom in and out.)

**TRACE**: when active, enables a tracing cursor to be moved along the contour of the plot (with the coordinates of the cursor displayed at the bottom of the screen).

**Go To**: specify a  $T$  value and the cursor moves to the corresponding  $x$  and  $y$  coordinates.

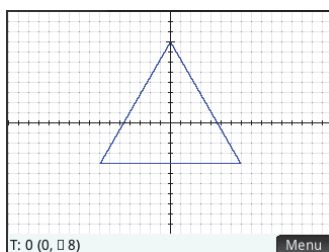
**Defn**: display the functions responsible for the plot.

Detailed information about these tools is provided in “Common operations in Plot view” on page 77.

Typically you would modify a plot by changing its definition in Symbolic view. However, you can modify some plots by changing the Plot Setup parameters. For example, you can plot a triangle instead of a circle simply by changing two plot setup parameters. The definitions in Symbolic view remain unchanged. Here is how it is done:

10. Press  $\boxed{\text{Shift}}$   $\boxed{\text{Plot Setup}}$  (Setup).
11. Change **T Step** to 120.
12. Tap  $\boxed{\text{Page } \frac{1}{2}}$ .
13. From the **Method** menu, select **Fixed-Step Segments**.
14. Press  $\boxed{\text{Plot Setup}}$ .

A triangle is displayed instead of a circle. This is because the new value of **T Step** makes the points being plotted  $120^\circ$  apart instead of the nearly continuous  $5^\circ$ . And by selecting **Fixed-Step Segments** the points  $120^\circ$  apart are connected with line segments.





## Display the numeric view

15. Display the Numeric view:



16. With the cursor in the T column, type a new value and tap . The table scrolls to the value you entered.

T	X1	Y1	
0	0	8	
0.1	1.396263E-2	7.999987815	
0.2	2.792521E-2	7.999951261	
0.3	4.188771E-2	7.999890338	
0.4	5.585008E-2	7.999805046	
0.5	6.981228E-2	7.999695385	
0.6	8.377427E-2	7.999561355	
0.7	9.773601E-2	7.999402957	
0.8	1.116974E-1	7.999220192	
0.9	1.256585E-1	7.999013060	
1	1.396193E-1	7.998781561	

0

Zoom  Size  Defn  Column

You can also zoom in or out on the independent variable (thereby decreasing or increasing the increment between consecutive values). This and other options are explained in “Common operations in Numeric view” on page 90.

You can see the Plot and Numeric views side by side. See “Combining Plot and Numeric Views” on page 96.



# Polar app

The Polar app enables you to explore polar equations. Polar equations are equations in which  $r$ —the distance a point is from the origin:  $(0,0)$ —is defined in terms of  $\theta$ , the angle a segment from the point to the origin makes with the polar axis. Such equations take the form  $r = f(\theta)$ .

## Getting started with the Polar app

The Polar app uses the six standard app views described in chapter 4, “An introduction to HP apps”, beginning on page 59. That chapter also describes the menu buttons used in the Polar app.

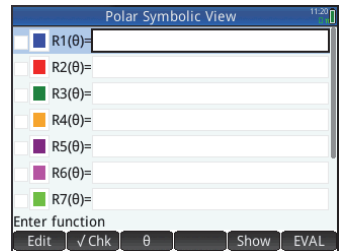
Throughout this chapter, we will explore the expression  $5\pi\cos(\theta/2)\cos(\theta)^2$ .

### Open the Polar app

1. Open the Polar app:



 Select Polar

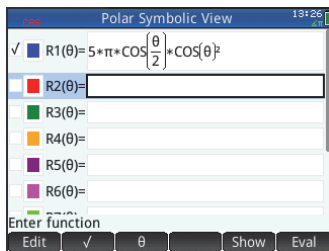
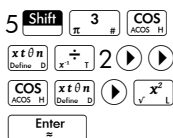
The app opens in Symbolic view.



### Define the function

There are 10 fields for defining polar functions. These are labelled  $R_1(\theta)$  through  $R_9(\theta)$  and  $R_0(\theta)$ .

2. Highlight the field you want to use, either by tapping on it or scrolling to it. If you are entering a new function, just start typing. If you are editing an existing function, tap  and make your changes. When you have finished defining or changing the function, press .
3. Define the expression  $5\pi\cos(\theta/2)\cos(\theta)^2$ .



Notice how the  $x r \theta n$  key enters whatever variable is relevant to the current app. In this app the relevant variable is  $\theta$ .

- If you wish, choose a color for the plot other than its default. You do this by selecting the colored square to the left of the function set, tapping **Choose**, and selecting a color from the color-picker.

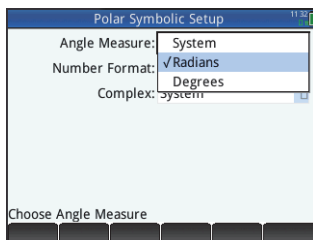
For more information about adding definitions, modifying definitions, and evaluating dependent definitions in Symbolic view, see “Common operations in Symbolic view” on page 71.

## Set angle measure

Set the angle measure to radians:

- Shift** **Symb** **Setup** (Settings)
- Tap the **Angle Measure** field and select Radians.

For more information on the Symbolic Setup view, see “Common operations in Symbolic Setup view” on page 76.

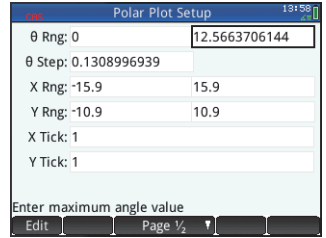


## Set up the plot

- Open the Plot Setup view:

**Shift** **Plot** **Setup** (Setup)

8. Set up the plot by specifying appropriate graphing options. In this example, set the upper limit of the range of the independent variable to  $4\pi$ :



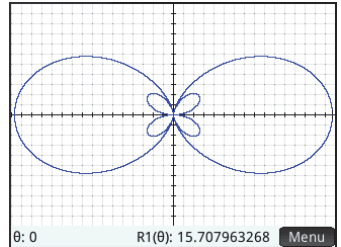
Select the 2nd  **$\theta$  Rng** field and enter  $4$  **Shift**  $\pi$  **3**  $\pi$  ( $\pi$ )

**OK**

There are numerous ways of configuring the appearance of Plot view. For more information, see “Common operations in Plot Setup view” on page 86.

## Plot the expression

9. Plot the expression:

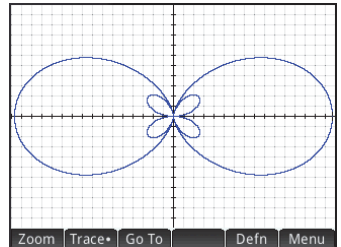


## Explore the graph

10. Display the Plot view menu.



A number of options appear to help you can explore the graph, such as zoom and trace options. using the trace and zoom



options. You can also jump directly to a particular  $\theta$  value by entering that value. The **Go To** screen appears with the number you typed on the entry line. Just tap **OK** to accept it. (You could also tap the **Go To** button and specify the target value.)

If only one polar equation is plotted, you can see the equation that generated the plot by tapping **Defn**. If there are several equations plotted, move the tracing cursor to the plot you are interested—by pressing **▲** or **▼**—and then tap **Defn**.

For more information on exploring plots in Plot view, see “Common operations in Plot view” on page 77.

## Display the Numeric view

- Open the Numeric view:



The Numeric view displays a table of values for  $\theta$  and

R1. If you had specified, and selected, more than one polar function in Symbolic view, a column of evaluations would appear for each one: R2, R3, R4 and so on.

$\theta$	R1		
0	1.5707963E1		
0.1	1.5531971E1		
0.2	1.5012601E1		
0.3	1.4175173E1		
0.4	1.3060272E1		
0.5	1.1721424E1		
0.6	1.0222036E1		
0.7	8.63180235		
0.8	7.02276690		
0.9	5.46530021		
1	4.02421804		
0			

Zoom Big Defn Width

- With the cursor in the  $\theta$  column, type a new value and tap **OK**. The table scrolls to the value you entered.

You can also zoom in or out on the independent variable (thereby decreasing or increasing the increment between consecutive values). This and other options are explained in “Common operations in Numeric view” on page 90.

You can see the Plot and Numeric views side by side. See “Combining Plot and Numeric Views” on page 96.

## Sequence app

---

The Sequence app provides you with various ways to explore sequences.

You can define a sequence named, for example, U1:

- in terms of  $n$
- in terms of  $U1(n-1)$
- in terms of  $U1(n-2)$
- in terms of another sequence, for example,  $U2(n)$  or
- in any combination of the above.

You can define a sequence by specifying just the first term and the rule for generating all subsequent terms. However, you will have to enter the second term if the HP Prime is unable to calculate it automatically. Typically if the  $n$ th term in the sequence depends on  $n-2$ , then you must enter the second term.

The app enables you to create two types of graphs:

- a **Stairsteps** graph, which plots  $n$  on the horizontal axis and  $U_n$  on the vertical axis
- a **Cobweb** graph, which plots  $U_{n-1}$  on the horizontal axis and  $U_n$  on the vertical axis.

## Getting started with the Sequence app

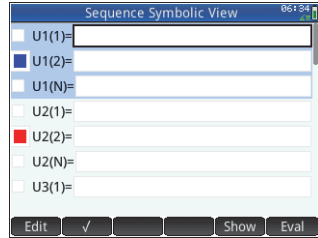
The following example explores the well-known Fibonacci sequence, where each term, from the third term on, is the sum of the preceding two terms. In this example, we specify three sequence fields: the first term, the second term and a rule for generating all subsequent terms.

## Open the Sequence app

1. Open the Sequence app:

 Select  
Sequence

The app opens in Symbolic view.




## Define the expression


2. Define the Fibonacci sequence:

$$U_1 = 1, U_2 = 1, U_n = U_{n-1} + U_{n-2} \text{ for } n > 2.$$

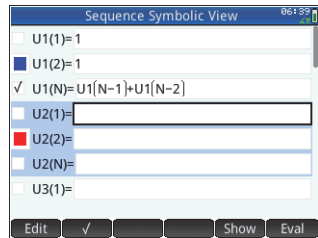
In the U1(1) field, specify the first term of the sequence:

1 

In the U1(2) field, specify the second term of the sequence:

1 

In the U1(N) field, specify the third term of the sequence (using the buttons at the bottom of the screen to help with some entries):



3. Optionally choose a color for your graph (see “Choose a color for plots” on page 74).

## Set up the plot

4. Open the Plot Setup view:

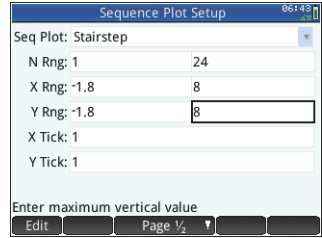
  (Setup)

5. Reset all settings to their default values:

  (Clear)

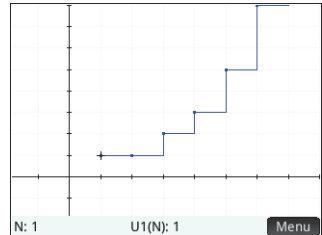



6. Select **Stairstep** from the **Seq Plot** menu.
7. Set the **X Rng** maximum, and the **Y Rng** maximum, to 8 (as shown at the right).

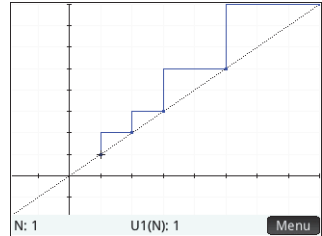


## Plot the sequence

8. Plot the Fibonacci sequence:



9. Return to Plot Setup view (**Shift** ) and select **Cobweb**, from the **Seq Plot** menu.



10. Plot the sequence:




## Explore the graph

The **Menu** button gives you access to common plot-exploration tools, such as:

- Zoom in or out on the plot: **Zoom**
- Trace along a graph: **Trace**
- Go to a specified N value: **Go To**
- Display the sequence definition: **Defn**

These tools are explained in “Common operations in Plot view” on page 77.

Split screen and autoscaling functionality is also available by pressing .

# Display Numeric view

11. Display Numeric view:



N	U1		
1	1		
2	1		
3	2		
4	3		
5	5		
6	8		
7	13		
8	21		
9	34		
10	55		
11	89		

1

Zoom Size Defn Column

12. With the cursor anywhere in the **N** column, type a new value and tap



The table of values scrolls to the value you entered. You can then see the corresponding value in the sequence. The example at the right shows that the 25th value in the Fibonacci sequence is 75,025.

N	U1		
25	75025		
26	121393		
27	196418		
28	317811		
29	514229		
30	832040		
31	1346269		
32	2178309		
33	3524578		
34	5702887		
35	9227465		

25

Zoom Size Defn Column

# Explore the table of values

The **Menu** button gives you access to common table-exploration tools, such as:

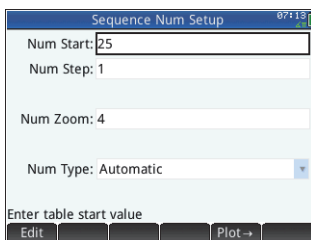
- Change the increment between consecutive values: **Zoom**
- Change the size of the font: **Size**
- Display the sequence definition: **Defn**
- Choose the number of sequences to display: **Column**

These tools are explained in “Common operations in Numeric view” on page 90.

Split screen and autoscaling functionality is also available by pressing **View Copy**.

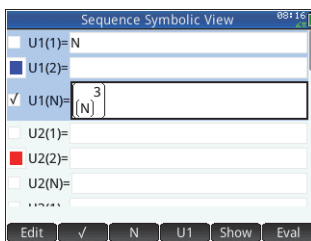
## Set up the table of values

The Numeric Setup view provides options common to most of the graphing apps. See “Common operations in Numeric Setup view” on page 95 for more information.



## Another example: A table of cubes

In the following example, a table of cubes is created. Note that if you are specifying two starting terms (as in the Fibonacci example above) or one (as in the example at the right, the rule that generates the sequence must be placed in the  $U_n(N)$  field.





## Finance app


The Finance app enables you to solve time-value-of-money (TVM) and amortization problems. You can use the app to do compound interest calculations and to create amortization tables.

Compound interest is accumulative interest, that is, interest on interest already earned. The interest earned on a given principal is added to the principal at specified compounding periods, and then the combined amount earns interest at a certain rate. Financial calculations involving compound interest include savings accounts, mortgages, pension funds, leases, and annuities.



## Getting Started with the Finance app

Suppose you finance the purchase of a car with a 5-year loan at 5.5% annual interest, compounded monthly. The purchase price of the car is \$19,500, and the down payment is \$3,000. First, what are the required monthly payments? Second, what is the largest loan you can afford if your maximum monthly payment is \$300? Assume that the payments start at the end of the first period.

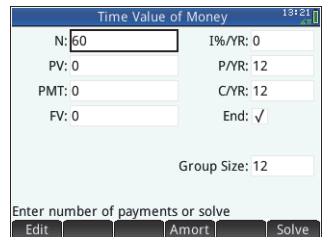
1. Start the Finance app.

 Select Finance

The app opens in the Numeric view.

2. In the **N** field, enter 5  12 and press .

Notice that the result of the calculation (60) appears in the field. This is the number of months over a five-year period.



Time Value of Money	
N: 60	I%/YR: 0
PV: 0	P/YR: 12
PMT: 0	C/YR: 12
FV: 0	End: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group Size: 12	
Enter number of payments or solve	
<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	<input type="button" value="Amort"/>
<input type="button" value="Solve"/>	

- In the  $I\%/YR$  field, type 5.5—the interest rate—and press .
- In  $PV$  field, type 19500  3000 and press . This is the present value of the loan, being the purchase price less the deposit.

- Leave  $P/YR$  and  $C/YR$  both at 12 (their default values). Leave  $End$  as the payment option. Also, leave future value,  $FV$ , as 0 (as your goal is to end up with a future value of the loan of 0).

Time Value of Money	
N: 60	I%/YR: 5.5
PV: 16500	P/YR: 12
PMT: 0	C/YR: 12
FV: 0	End: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group Size: 12	
<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Amort"/> <input type="button" value="Solve"/>	

- Move the cursor to the  $PMT$  field and tap . The  $PMT$  value is calculated as  $-315.17$ . In other words, your monthly payment will be \$315.17.

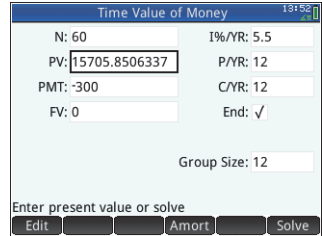
Time Value of Money	
N: 60	I%/YR: 5.5
PV: 16500	P/YR: 12
PMT: -315.169175834	C/YR: 12
FV: 0	End: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group Size: 12	
Enter payment amount or solve	
<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Amort"/> <input type="button" value="Solve"/>	

The  $PMT$  value is negative to indicate that it is money owed by you.

Note that the  $PMT$  value is greater than 300, that is, greater than the amount you can afford to pay each month. So you need to re-run the calculations, this time setting the  $PMT$  value to  $-300$  and calculating a new  $PV$  value.

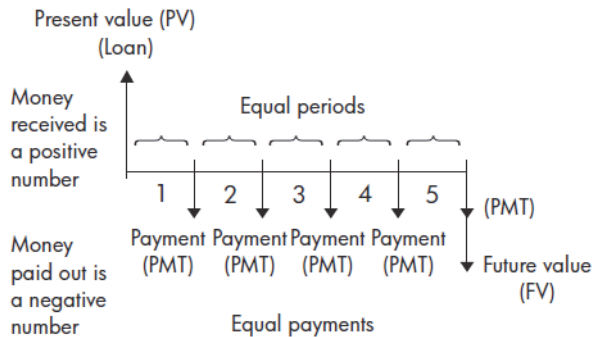
- In the  $PMT$  field, enter  300 move the cursor to the  $PV$  field, and tap .

The PV value is calculated as 15,705.85, this being the maximum you can borrow. Thus, with your \$3,000 deposit, you can afford a car with a price tag of up to \$18,705.85.

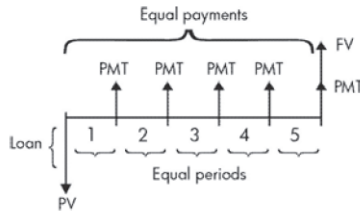


## Cash flow diagrams

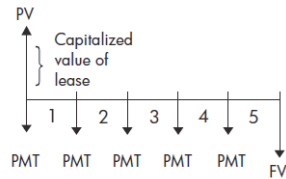
TVM transactions can be represented in *cash flow diagrams*. A cash flow diagram is a time line divided into equal segments representing the compounding periods. Arrows represent the cash flows. These could be positive (upward arrows) or negative (downward arrows), depending on the point of view of the lender or borrower. The following cash flow diagram shows a loan from a *borrower's* point of view:



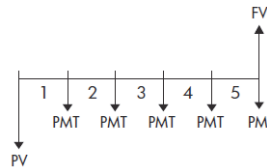
The following cash flow diagram shows a loan from the lender's point of view:



Cash flow diagrams also specify *when* payments occur relative to the compounding periods. The diagram to the right shows lease payments at the *beginning* of the period.



This diagram shows deposits (PMT) into an account at the end of each period.



## Time value of money (TVM)

Time-value-of-money (TVM) calculations make use of the notion that a dollar today will be worth more than a dollar sometime in the future. A dollar today can be invested at a certain interest rate and generate a return that the same dollar in the future cannot. This TVM principle underlies the notion of interest rates, compound interest, and rates of return. There are seven TVM variables:

Variable	Description
N	The total number of compounding periods or payments.

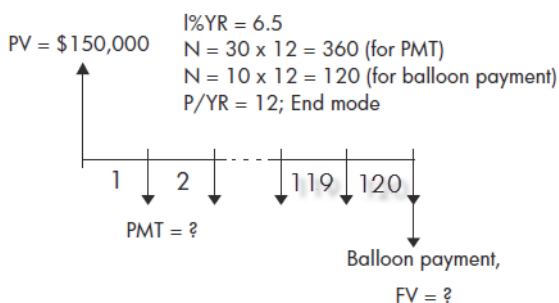


I%YR	The nominal annual interest rate (or investment rate). This rate is divided by the number of payments per year (P/YR) to compute the nominal interest rate <i>per compounding period</i> . This is the interest rate actually used in TVM calculations.
PV	The present value of the initial cash flow. To a lender or borrower, PV is the amount of the loan; to an investor, PV is the initial investment. PV always occurs at the beginning of the first period.
P/YR	The number of payments made in a year.
PMT	The periodic payment amount. The payments are the same amount each period and the TVM calculation assumes that no payments are skipped. Payments can occur at the beginning or the end of each compounding period—an option you control by un-checking or checking the <code>End</code> option.
C/YR	The number of compounding periods in a year.
FV	The future value of the transaction: the amount of the final cash flow or the compounded value of the series of previous cash flows. For a loan, this is the size of the final balloon payment (beyond any regular payment due). For an investment, this is its value at the end of the investment period.

## TVM calculations: Another example

Suppose you have taken out a 30-year, \$150,000 house mortgage at 6.5% annual interest. You expect to sell the house in 10 years, repaying the loan in a balloon payment. Find the size of the balloon payment—that is, the value of the mortgage after 10 years of payment.

The following cash flow diagram illustrates the case of a mortgage with balloon payment:



1. Start the Finance app:

Select Finance

2. Return all fields to their default values:

Clear

3. Enter the known TVM variables, as shown in the figure.

4. Highlight PMT and tap . The PMT field shows  $-984.10$ . In other words, the monthly payments are  $\$948.10$ .
5. To determine the balloon payment or future value (FV) for the mortgage after 10 years, enter 120 for N, highlight FV, and tap .

The FV field shows  $-127,164.19$ , indicating that the future value of the loan (that is, how much is still owing) as  $\$127,164.19$ .

## Calculating amortizations

Amortization calculations determine the amounts applied towards the principal and interest in a payment, or series of payments. They also use TVM variables.

**To calculate amortizations:**

1. Start the Finance app.
2. Specify the number of payments per year (P/YR).
3. Specify whether payments are made at the beginning or end of periods.
4. Enter values for I%YR, PV, PMT, and FV.
5. Enter the number of payments per amortization period in the Group Size field. By default, the group size is 12 to reflect annual amortization.
6. Tap **Amort**. The calculator displays an amortization table. For each amortization period, the table shows the amounts applied to interest and principal, as well as the remaining balance of the loan.

**Example:  
Amortization for a  
home mortgage**

Using the data from the previous example of a home mortgage with balloon payment (see page 267), calculate how much has been applied to the principal, how much has been paid in interest, and the balance remaining after the first 10 years (that is, after  $12 \times 10 = 120$  payments).

1. Make your data match that shown in the figure to the right.
2. Tap **Amort**.

The screenshot shows the 'Time Value of Money' calculator interface. The input fields are: N: 360, I%/YR: 6.5, PV: 150000, P/YR: 12, PMT: -948.102035239, C/YR: 12, FV: 0, End: , and Group Size: 12. Below the inputs is a table with columns P, Principal, Interest, and Balance, showing values for periods 1 through 11. At the bottom, there are buttons for Edit, Amort, and Solve, and a 'Size' button.

P	Principal	Interest	Balance
1	-1676.57	-9700.63	148323.43
2	-3465.42	-19288.98	146534.58
3	-5374.07	-28757.53	144625.93
4	-7410.55	-38098.25	142589.45
5	-9583.41	-47302.59	140416.59
6	-11901.8	-56361.4	138098.2
7	-14375.46	-65264.94	135624.54
8	-17014.77	-74002.83	132985.23
9	-19830.85	-82563.95	130169.15
10	-22835.53	-90936.47	127164.47
11	-26041.43	-99107.77	123958.57

3. Scroll down the table to payment group 10. Note that after 10 years, \$22,835.53 has been paid off the principal and \$90,936.47 paid in interest, leaving a balloon payment due of \$127,164.47.

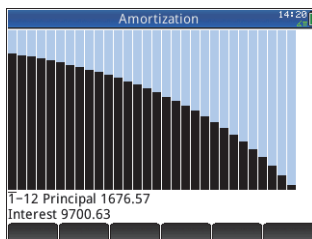
P	Principal	Interest	Balance
1	-1676.57	-9700.63	148323.43
2	-3465.42	-19288.98	146534.58
3	-5374.07	-28757.53	144625.93
4	-7410.55	-38098.25	142589.45
5	-9583.41	-47302.59	140416.59
6	-11901.8	-56361.4	138098.2
7	-14375.46	-65264.94	135624.54
8	-17014.77	-74002.83	132985.23
9	-19830.85	-82563.95	130169.15
10	-22835.53	-90936.47	127164.47
11	-26041.43	-99107.77	123958.57

10

Size TVM

## Amortization graph

Press **Plot** to see the amortization schedule presented graphically. The balance owing at the end of each payment group is indicated by the height of a bar. The amount by which the



principal has been reduced, and interest paid, during a payment group is shown at the bottom of the bottom of the screen. The example at the right shows the first payment group selected. This represents the first group of 12 payments (or the state of the loan at the end of the first year). By the end of that year, the principal had been reduced by \$1,676.57 and \$9,700.63 had been paid in interest.

Tap **▶** or **◀** to see the amount by which the principal has been reduced, and interest paid, during other payment groups.

# Triangle Solver app

The Triangle Solver app enables you to calculate the length of a side of a triangle, or the size of an angle in a triangle, from information you supply about the other lengths, angles, or both.

You need to specify at least three of the six possible values—the lengths of the three sides and the size of the three angles—before the app can calculate the other values. Moreover, at least one value you specify must be a length. For example, you could specify the lengths of two sides and one of the angles; or you could specify two angles and one length; or all three lengths. In each case, the app will calculate the remaining values.

The HP Prime will alert you if no solution can be found, or if you have provided insufficient data.

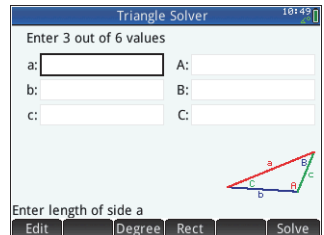
If you are determining the lengths and angles of a *right-angled* triangle, a simpler input form is available by tapping **Rect**.



## Getting started with the Triangle Solver app

The following example calculates the unknown length of the side of a triangle whose two known sides—of lengths 4 and 6—meet at an angle of 30 degrees.



### Open the Triangle Solver app

1. Open the Triangle Solver app.
  - Apps info** Select Triangle Solver
  - The app opens in Numeric view.



- If there is unwanted data from a previous calculation, you can clear it all by pressing   (Clear).



## Set angle measure

Make sure that your angle measure mode is appropriate. By default, the app starts in degree mode. If the angle information you have is in radians and your current angle measure mode is degrees, change the mode to degrees before running the solver. Tap  or  depending on the mode you want. (The button is a toggle button.)

### Note

The lengths of the sides are labeled **a**, **b**, and **c**, and the angles are labeled **A**, **B**, and **C**. It is important that you enter the known values in the appropriate fields. In our example, we know the length of two sides and the angle at which those sides meet. Hence if we specify the lengths of sides **a** and **b**, we must enter the angle as **C** (since **C** is the angle where **A** and **B** meet). If instead we entered the lengths as **b** and **c**, we would need to specify the angle as **A**. The illustration on the screen will help you determine where to enter the known values.

## Specify the known values

- Go to a field whose value you know, enter the value and either tap  or press . Repeat for each known value.

- In **a** type 4 and press

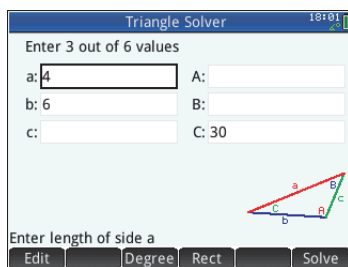
.

- In **b** type 6 and press

.

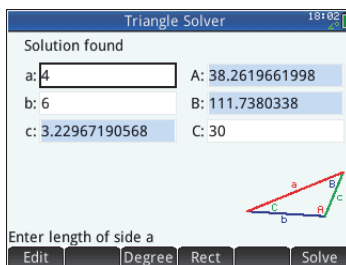
- In **C** type 30

and press .



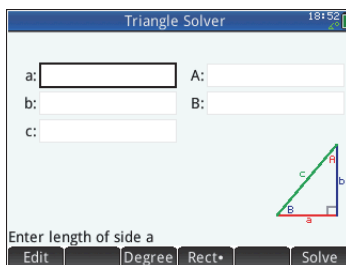
## Solve for the unknown values

4. Tap **Solve**. The app displays the values of the unknown variables. As the illustration at the right shows, the length of the unknown side in our example is 3.22967... The other two angles have also been calculated.



## Choosing triangle types

The Triangle Solver app has two input forms: a general input form and a simpler, specialized form for right-angled triangles. If the general input form is displayed, and you



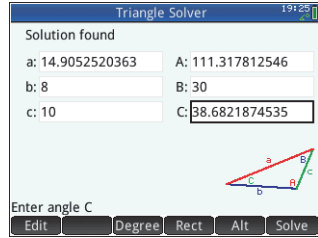
are investigating a right-angled triangle, tap **Rect** to display the simpler input form. To return to the general input form, tap **Rect•**. If the triangle you are investigating is not a right-angled triangle, or you are not sure what type it is, you should use the general input form.

## Special cases

### The indeterminate case

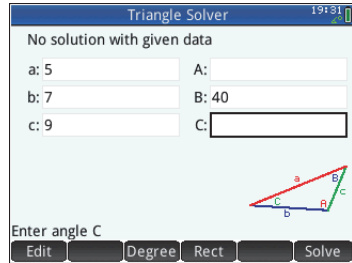
If two sides and an adjacent acute angle are entered and there are two solutions, only one will be displayed initially.

In this case, the **Alt** button is displayed (as in this example). You can tap **Alt** to display the second solution and tap **Alt** again to return to the first solution.



## No solution with given data

If you are using the general input form and you enter more than 3 values, the values might not be consistent, that is, no triangle could possibly have all the values you specified.

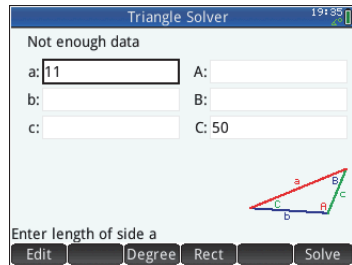


In these cases, No sol with given data appears on the screen.

The situation is similar if you are using the simpler input form (for a right-angled triangle) and you enter more than two values.

## Not enough data

If you are using the general input form, you need to specify at least three values for the Triangle Solver to be able to calculate the remaining attributes of the triangle. If you specify less than three, Not enough data appears on the screen.



If you are using the simplified input form (for a right-angled triangle), you must specify at least two values.



## The Explorer apps

There are three explorer apps. These are designed for you to explore the relationships between the parameters of a function and the shape of the graph of that function. The explorer apps are:

- Linear Explorer  
For exploring linear functions
- Quadratic Explorer  
For exploring quadratic functions
- Trig Explorer  
For exploring sinusoidal functions

There are two modes of exploration: graph mode and equation mode. In graph mode you manipulate a graph and note the corresponding changes in its equation. In equation mode you manipulate an equation and note the corresponding changes in its graphical representation. Each explorer app has a number of equations and graphs for to explore, and app has a test mode. In test mode, you test you skills at matching equations to graphs.

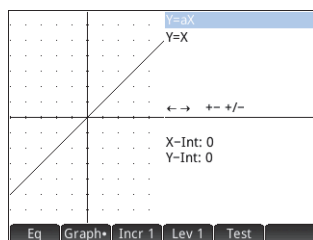
### Linear Explorer app

The Linear Explorer app can be used to explore the behavior of the graphs of  $y = ax$  and  $y = ax + b$  as the values of  $a$  and  $b$  change.

#### Open the app

Press  and select Linear Explorer.

The left half of the display shows the graph of a linear function. The right half shows the general



form of the equation being explored at the top and, below it, the current equation of that form. The keys you can use to manipulate the graph or equation appear below the equation. The x- and y-intercepts are given at the bottom.

There are two types (or levels) of linear equation available for you to explore:  $y = ax$  and  $y = ax + b$ . You choose between them by tapping **Lev 1** or **Lev 2**.

The keys available to you to manipulate the graph or equation depend on the level you have chosen. For example, the screen for a level 1 equation shows this:

← → + - +/-

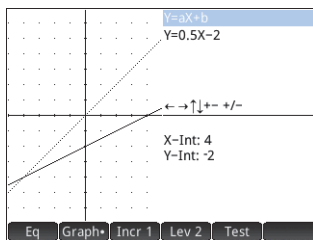
This means that you can press  $\leftarrow$ ,  $\rightarrow$ ,  $\boxed{+}$ ,  $\boxed{-}$  and  $\boxed{\frac{+/-}{M}}$ . If you choose a level 2 equation, the screen shows this:

← → ↑ ↓ + - +/-

This means that you can press  $\leftarrow$ ,  $\rightarrow$ ,  $\uparrow$ ,  $\downarrow$ ,  $\boxed{+}$ ,  $\boxed{-}$  and  $\boxed{\frac{+/-}{M}}$ .

## Graph mode

The app opens in graph mode (indicated by the dot on the Graph button at the bottom of the screen). In graph mode, the  $\uparrow$  and  $\downarrow$  keys translate the graph vertically, effectively



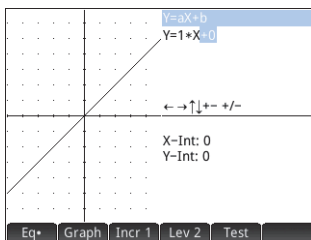
changing the y-intercept of the line. Tap **Incr 1** to change the magnitude of the increment for vertical translations. The  $\leftarrow$  and  $\rightarrow$  keys (as well as  $\boxed{-}$  and  $\boxed{+}$ ) decrease and increase the slope. Press  $\boxed{\frac{+/-}{M}}$  to change the sign of the slope.

The form of the linear function is shown at the top right of the display, with the current equation that matches the graph just below it. As you manipulate the graph, the equation updates to reflect the changes.

## Equation mode

Tap **Eq** to enter equation mode. A dot will appear on the **Eq** button at the bottom of the screen.

In equation mode, you use the cursor keys to move between parameters in the equation and change their values, observing the effect on the graph displayed. Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to decrease or increase the value of the selected parameter. Press  $\rightarrow$  or  $\leftarrow$  to select another parameter. Press  $\pm$  to change the sign of a.

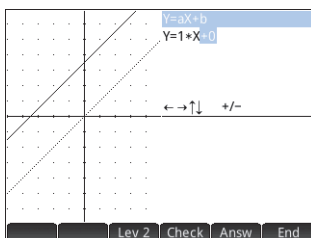


## Test mode

Tap **Test** to enter test mode. In Test mode you test your skill at matching an equation to the graph shown. Test mode is like equation mode in that you use the cursor keys to select and change the value of each parameter in the equation. The goal is to try to match the graph that is shown.

The app displays the graph of a randomly chosen linear function of the form dictated by your choice of level. (Tap **Lev 1** or **Lev 2** to change the level.) Now press the cursor keys to select a parameter and set its value. When you are ready, tap **Check** to see if you have correctly matched your equation to the given graph.

Tap **Answ** to see the correct answer and tap **End** to exit Test mode.



## Quadratic Explorer app

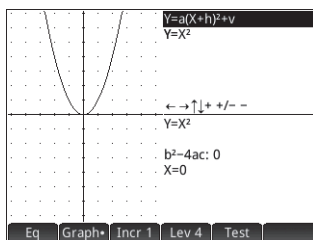
The Quadratic Explorer app can be used to investigate the behavior of  $y = a(x+h)^2 + v$  as the values of  $a$ ,  $h$  and  $v$  change.

## Open the app

Press **Apps Info** and select Quadratic Explorer.

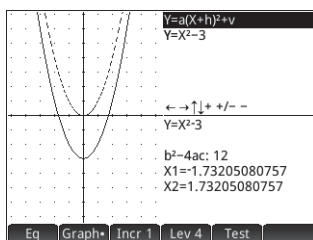
The left half of the display shows the graph of a quadratic function. The right half shows the

general form of the equation being explored at the top and, below it, the current equation of that form. The keys you can use to manipulate the graph or equation appear below the equation. (These will change depending on the level of equation you choose.) Displayed beneath they keys is the equation, the discriminant (that is,  $b^2 - 4ac$ ), and the roots of the quadratic.



## Graph mode

The app opens in graph mode. In graph mode, you manipulate a copy of the graph using whatever keys are available. The original graph—converted to dotted lines—remains in place for you to easily see the result of your manipulations.



Four general forms of quadratic equations are available for you to explore:

$$y = ax^2 \text{ [Level 1]}$$

$$y = (x + h)^2 \text{ [Level 2]}$$

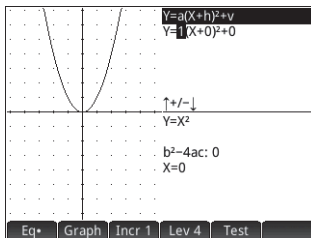
$$y = x^2 + v \text{ [Level 3]}$$

$$y = a(x + h)^2 + v \text{ [Level 4]}$$

Choose a general form by tapping the Level button—**Lev 1**, **Lev 2** and so on—until the form you want is displayed. The keys available to you to manipulate the graph vary from level to level.

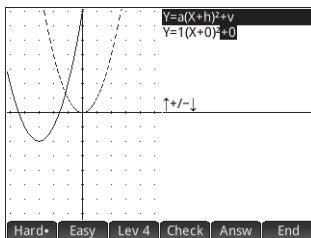
## Equation mode

Tap **Eq** to move to equation mode. In equation mode, you use the cursor keys to move between parameters in the equation and change their values, observing the effect on the graph displayed. Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to decrease or increase the value of the selected parameter. Press  $\rightarrow$  or  $\leftarrow$  to select another parameter. Press  $\left[ \begin{smallmatrix} + \\ - \\ \times \\ \div \end{smallmatrix} \right]$  to change the sign. You have four forms (or levels) of graph, and the keys available for manipulating the equation depend on the level chosen.



## Test mode

Tap **Test** to enter test mode. In Test mode you test your skill at matching an equation to the graph shown. Test mode is like equation mode in that you use the cursor keys to select and change the value of each parameter in the equation. The goal is to try to match the graph that is shown.



The app displays the graph of a randomly chosen quadratic function. Tap the Level button to choose between one of four forms of quadratic equation. You can also choose graphs that are relatively easy to match or graphs that are harder match (by tapping **Easy** or **Hard** respectively).

Now press the cursor keys to select a parameter and set its value. When you are ready, tap **Check** to see if you have correctly matched your equation to the given graph.

Tap **Answ** to see the correct answer and tap **End** to exit Test mode.

## Trig Explorer app

The Trig Explorer app can be used to investigate the behavior of the graphs  $y = a \cdot \sin(bx + c) + d$  and  $y = a \cdot \cos(bx + c) + d$  as the values of  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  and  $d$  change.

The menu items available in this app are:

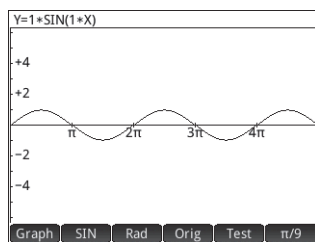
- **Eq** or **Graph**: toggles between graph mode and equation mode
- **SIN** or **COS**: toggles between sine and cosine graphs
- **Rad** or **Deg**: toggles between radians and degrees as the angle measure for  $x$
- **Orig** or **Extr**: toggles between translating the graph (**Orig**), and changing its frequency or amplitude (**Extr**). You make these changes using the cursor keys.
- **Test**: enters test mode
- **$\pi/9$**  or  **$20^\circ$** : toggles the increment by which parameter values change:  $\pi/9$ ,  $\pi/6$ ,  $\pi/4$ , or  $20^\circ$ ,  $30^\circ$ ,  $45^\circ$  (depending on angle measure setting)

## Open the app

Press **Apps info** and select Trig Explorer.

An equation is shown at the top of the display, with its graph shown below it.

Choose the type of function you want to explore by tapping either **COS** or **SIN**.



## Graph mode

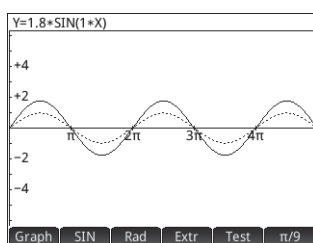
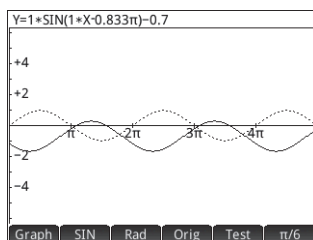
The app opens in graph mode. In graph mode, you manipulate a copy of the graph by pressing the cursor keys. All four keys are available. The original

graph—converted to dotted lines—remains in place for you to easily see the result of your manipulations.

When **Orig** is chosen, the cursor keys simply translate the graph horizontally and vertically. When **Extr** is chosen, pressing  $\uparrow$  or  $\downarrow$  changes the *amplitude* of the graph

(that is, it is stretched or shrunk vertically); and pressing  $\leftarrow$  or  $\rightarrow$  changes the *frequency* of the graph (that is, it is stretched or shrunk horizontally).

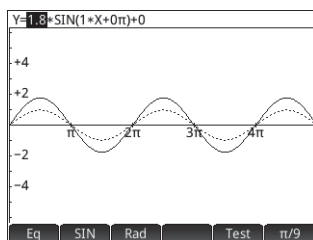
The  **$\pi/9$**  or  **$20^\circ$**  button at the far right of the menu determines the increment by which the graph moves with each press of a cursor key. By default, the increment is set at  $\pi/9$  or  $20^\circ$ .



## Equation mode

Tap **Graph** to switch to equation mode. In equation mode, you use the cursor keys to move between parameters in the equation and change their values. You can then observe the effect on the graph displayed. Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to decrease or increase the value of the selected parameter. Press  $\rightarrow$  or  $\leftarrow$  to select another parameter.

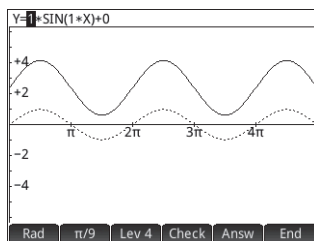
You can switch back to graph mode by tapping **Eq**.



## Test mode

Tap **Test** to enter test mode. In test mode you test your skill at matching an equation to the graph shown. Test mode is like equation mode in that you use the cursor keys to select and change the value of one or more parameters in the equation. The goal is to try to match the graph that is shown.

The app displays the graph of a randomly chosen sinusoidal function. Tap a Level button— **Lev 1**, **Lev 2** and so on—to choose between one of five types of sinusoidal equations.




Now press the cursor keys to select each parameter and set its value. When you are ready, tap **Check** to see if you have correctly matched your equation to the given graph.

Tap **Answ** to see the correct answer and tap **End** to exit Test mode.



## Functions and commands



---

Many mathematical functions are available from the calculator's keyboard. These are described in "Keyboard functions" on page 285. Other functions and commands are collected together in the Toolbox menus (). There are five Toolbox menus:

- **Math**  
A collection of non-symbolic mathematical functions (see "Keyboard functions" on page 285)
- **CAS**  
A collection of symbolic mathematical functions (see "CAS menu" on page 298)
- **App**  
A collection of app functions that can be called from elsewhere in the calculator, such as Home view, CAS view, the Spreadsheet app, and in a program (see "App menu" on page 312)  
  
Note that the Geometry app functions can be called from elsewhere in the calculator, but they are not available from the App menu. For that reason, the Geometry functions are not described in this chapter, They are described in the Geometry chapter.
- **User**  
The functions that you have created (see "Creating your own functions" on page 371) and the programs you have created that contain global
- **Catlg**  
All the functions and commands:
  - on the **Math** menu
  - on the **CAS** menu
  - used in the Geometry app
  - used in programming

- used in the Matrix Editor
- used in the List Editor
- and some additional functions and commands

See “Ctlg menu” on page 338.

 Some functions can be chosen from the math template (displayed by pressing ). See “Math template” on page 21.



You can also create your own functions. See “Creating your own functions” on page 371.

## Setting the form of menu items

You can choose to have entries on the Math and CAS menus presented either by their descriptive name or their command name. (The entries on the Catlg menu are always presented by their command name.)

Descriptive name	Command name
Factors List	ifactors
Complex Zeros	cZeros
Groebner Basis	gbasis
Factor by Degree	factor_xn
Find Roots	proot

The default menu presentation mode is to provide the descriptive names for the Math and CAS functions. If you prefer the functions to be presented by their command name, deselect the **Menu Display** option on the second page of the **Home Settings** screen (see “Home settings” on page 27).

## Abbreviations used in this chapter

In describing the syntax of functions and commands, the following abbreviations are used:

`Expr`: a mathematical expression

`Poly`: a polynomial

`LstPoly`: a list of polynomials

`Frac`: a fraction


RatFrac: a rational fraction






Fnc: a function

Var: a variable



LstVar: a list of variables

## Keyboard functions

The most frequently used functions are available directly from the keyboard. Many of the keyboard functions also accept complex numbers as arguments. Enter the keys and inputs shown below and press  to evaluate the expression.

 In the examples below, shifted functions are represented by the actual keys to be pressed, with the function name shown in parentheses. For example,   (ASIN) means that to make an arc sine calculation (ASIN), you press  .

The examples below show the results you would get in Home view. If you are in the CAS, the results are given in simplified symbolic format. For example:

  320 returns 17.88854382 in Home view, and  $8 \cdot \sqrt{5}$  in the CAS.




Add, subtract, multiply, divide. Also accepts complex numbers, lists, and matrices.


*value1 + value2, etc.*

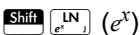


Natural logarithm. Also accepts complex numbers.



 (value)

Example:



 (1) returns 0



Natural exponential. Also accepts complex numbers.

  value

Example:

  5 returns 148.413159103

**LOG**  
10<sup>x</sup> K

Common logarithm. Also accepts complex numbers.

**LOG**  
10<sup>x</sup> K (*value*)

Example:

**LOG**  
10<sup>x</sup> K (100) returns 2

**Shift** **LOG**  
10<sup>x</sup> K ( $10^x$ )

Common exponential (antilogarithm). Also accepts complex numbers.

**Shift** **LOG**  
10<sup>x</sup> K *value*

Example:

**Shift** **LOG**  
10<sup>x</sup> K 3 returns 1000

**SIN** **COS** **TAN**  
ASIN G ACOS H ATAN I

Sine, cosine, tangent. Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format: degrees or radians.

**SIN**(*value*)

**COS**(*value*)

**TAN**(*value*)

Example:

**TAN** (45) returns 1 (degrees mode)

**Shift** **SIN**  
ASIN G (ASIN)

Arc sine:  $\sin^{-1}x$ . Output range is from  $-90^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$  or  $-\pi/2$  to  $\pi/2$ . Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format. Also accepts complex numbers.

**ASIN**(*value*)

Example:

**ASIN** (1) returns 90 (degrees mode)

**Shift** **COS**  
ACOS H (ACOS)

Arc cosine:  $\cos^{-1}x$ . Output range is from  $0^\circ$  to  $180^\circ$  or 0 to  $\pi$ . Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format. Also accepts complex numbers. Output will be complex for values outside the normal cosine domain of  $-1 \leq x \leq 1$ .

**ACOS**(*value*)

Example:

**ACOS** (1) returns 0 (degrees mode)

**Shift** **TAN**  
ATAN I (ATAN)

Arc tangent:  $\tan^{-1}x$ . Output range is from  $-90^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$  or  $-\pi/2$  to  $\pi/2$ . Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format. Also accepts complex numbers.

**ATAN**(*value*)

Example:

ATAN (1) returns 45 (degrees mode)



Square. Also accepts complex numbers.

value

Example:

18 returns 324



Square root. Also accepts complex numbers.

value

Example:

320 returns 17.88854382



x raised to the power of y. Also accepts complex numbers.

value power

Example:

2 8 returns 256



The *n*th root of x.

root value

Example:

3 8 returns 2



Reciprocal.

value

Example:

3 returns .333333333333

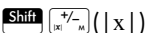


Negation. Also accepts complex numbers.

value

Example:

(1+2\*i) returns -1-2\*i



Absolute value.


$\text{Shift} \left[ \begin{array}{c} +/\text{-} \\ \text{X} \end{array} \right] \text{M} (\text{value})$   
 $\text{Shift} \left[ \begin{array}{c} +/\text{-} \\ \text{X} \end{array} \right] \text{M} ((x+y*i))$   
 $\text{Shift} \left[ \begin{array}{c} +/\text{-} \\ \text{X} \end{array} \right] \text{M} (\text{matrix})$

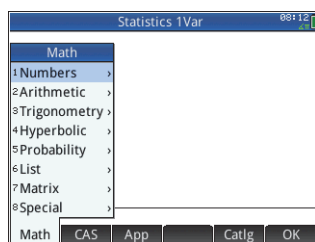
For a complex number,  $\text{ABS}((x+y*i))$  returns  $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ . For a matrix,  $\text{ABS}$  returns the Frobenius norm of the matrix.

Example:

$\text{ABS}(-1)$  returns 1  
 $\text{ABS}((1, 2))$  returns 2.2360679775

## Math menu

Press  to open the Toolbox menus (one of which is the Math menu). The functions and commands available on the Math menu are listed as they are categorized on the menu.



## Numbers

**Ceiling** Smallest integer greater than or equal to *value*.

$\text{CEILING}(\text{value})$

Examples:

$\text{CEILING}(3.2)$  returns 4  
 $\text{CEILING}(-3.2)$  returns -3

**Floor** Greatest integer less than or equal to *value*.

$\text{FLOOR}(\text{value})$

Example:

$\text{FLOOR}(3.2)$  returns 3  
 $\text{FLOOR}(-3.2)$  returns -4

**IP** Integer part.

$\text{IP}(\text{value})$

Example:

$\text{IP}(23.2)$  returns 23

**FP** Fractional part.

`FP (value)`

Example:

`FP (23.2)` returns `.2`

**Round** Rounds *value* to decimal *places*. Also accepts complex numbers.

`ROUND (value, places)`

`ROUND` can also round to a number of significant digits if *places* is a negative integer (as shown in the second example below).

Examples:

`ROUND (7.8676, 2)` returns `7.87`

`ROUND (0.0036757, -3)` returns `0.00368`

**Truncate** Truncates *value* to decimal *places*. Also accepts complex numbers.

`TRUNCATE (value, places)`

Example:

`TRUNCATE (2.3678, 2)` returns `2.36`

**Mantissa** Mantissa—that is, the significant digits—of *value*, where *value* is a floating-point number.

`MANT (value)`

Example:

`MANT (21.2E34)` returns `2.12`

**Exponent** Exponent of *value*. That is, the integer component of the power of 10 that generates *value*.

`XPON (value)`

Example:

`XPON (123456)` returns `5` (since  $10^{5.0915\dots}$  equals 123456)



## Arithmetic

**Maximum** Maximum. The greater of two values.

`MAX (value1, value2)`

Example:

`MAX(8/3,11/4)` returns 2.75

Note that in Home view a non-integer result is given as a decimal fraction. If you want to see the result as a vulgar fraction, press . This opens the computer algebra system. If you want to return to Home view to make further calculations, press .

**Minimum** Minimum. The lesser of two values.

`MIN(value1,value2)`

Example:

`MIN(210,25)` returns 25

**Modulus** Modulo. The remainder of *value1*/*value2*.

`value1 MOD value2`

Example:

`74 MOD 5` returns 4

**Find Root** Function root-finder (like the Solve app). Finds the value for the given *variable* at which *expression* most nearly evaluates to zero. Uses *guess* as initial estimate.

`FNROOT(expression,variable,guess)`

Example:

`FNROOT((A*9.8/600)-1,A,1)` returns 61.224489796.

**Percentage** *x* percent of *y*; that is,  $x/100*y$ .

`%(x,y)`

Example:

`%(20,50)` returns 10

## Complex

**Argument** Argument. Finds the angle defined by a complex number. Inputs and outputs use the current angle format set in Home modes.

`ARG(x+y*i)`

Example:

`ARG(3+3*i)` returns 45 (degrees mode)

**Conjugate** Complex conjugate. Conjugation is the negation (sign reversal) of the imaginary part of a complex number.



CONJ (x+y\*i)

Example:

CONJ (3+4\*i) returns (3-4\*i)

**Real Part** Real part  $x$ , of a complex number,  $(x+y*i)$ .

RE (x+y\*i)

Example:

RE (3+4\*i) returns 3

**Imaginary Part** Imaginary part,  $y$ , of a complex number,  $(x+y*i)$ .

IM (x+y\*i)

Example:

IM (3+4\*i) returns 4

**Unit Vector** Sign of *value*. If positive, the result is 1. If negative,  $-1$ . If zero, result is zero. For a complex number, this is the unit vector in the direction of the number.

SIGN (value)

SIGN ((x, y))

Examples:

SIGN (POLYEVAL[1, 2, -25, -26, 2], -2) returns  $-1$

SIGN ((3, 4)) returns (.6, .8)

## Exponential

**ALOG** Antilogarithm (exponential).

ALOG (value)

**EXPM1** Exponent minus 1:  $e^x - 1$ .

EXPM1 (value)

**LNP1** Natural log plus 1:  $\ln(x+1)$ .

LNP1 (value)

## Trigonometry

The trigonometry functions can also take complex numbers as arguments. For SIN, COS, TAN, ASIN, ACOS, and ATAN, see "Keyboard functions" on page 285.

**CSC** Cosecant:  $1/\sin x$ .

CSC (value)

<b>ACSC</b>	Arc cosecant. ACSC (value)
<b>SEC</b>	Secant: $1/\cos x$ . SEC (value)
<b>ASEC</b>	Arc secant. ASEC (value)
<b>COT</b>	Cotangent: $\cos x/\sin x$ . COT (value)
<b>ACOT</b>	Arc cotangent. ACOT (value)

## Hyperbolic

The hyperbolic trigonometry functions can also take complex numbers as arguments.

<b>SINH</b>	Hyperbolic sine. SINH (value)
<b>ASINH</b>	Inverse hyperbolic sine: $\sinh^{-1}x$ . ASINH (value)
<b>COSH</b>	Hyperbolic cosine COSH (value)
<b>ACOSH</b>	Inverse hyperbolic cosine: $\cosh^{-1}x$ . ACOSH (value)
<b>TANH</b>	Hyperbolic tangent. TANH (value)
<b>ATANH</b>	Inverse hyperbolic tangent: $\tanh^{-1}x$ . ATANH (value)

## Probability

<b>Factorial</b>	Factorial of a positive integer. For non-integers, $! = \Gamma(x + 1)$ . This calculates the gamma function. value! Example:
------------------	--

5! returns 120

**Combination** The number of combinations (without regard to order) of  $n$  things taken  $r$  at a time.

COMB ( $n, r$ )

Example: Suppose you want to know how many ways five things can be combined two at a time.

COMB (5, 2) returns 10.

**Permutation** Number of permutations (with regard to order) of  $n$  things taken  $r$  at a time.

PERM ( $n, r$ )

Example: Suppose you want to know how many permutations there are for five things taken two at a time.

PERM (5, 2) returns 20.

## Random

**Number** Random number. With no argument, this function returns a random number between zero and one. With one integer argument  $a$ , it returns a random number between 0 and  $a$ . With three integer arguments,  $n$ ,  $a$ , and  $b$ , returns  $n$  random number between  $a$  and  $b$ .

RANDOM

RANDOM ( $a$ )

RANDOM ( $n, a, b$ )

**Integer** Random integer. With one integer argument  $a$ , it returns a random integer between 0 and  $a$ . With three integer arguments,  $n$ ,  $a$ , and  $b$ , returns  $n$  random integers between  $a$  and  $b$ .

RANDINT ( $a$ )

RANDINT ( $n, a, b$ )

**Normal** Random real number with normal distribution  $N(\mu, \sigma)$ .

RANDNORM ( $\mu, \sigma$ )

**Seed** Sets the seed value on which RAND() operates. By specifying the same seed value on two or more calculators, you ensure that the same random numbers appear on each calculator when RAND() is executed.

RANDSEED ( $value$ )

## Density

**Normal** Normal probability density function. Computes the probability density at value  $x$ , given the mean,  $\mu$ , and standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , of a normal distribution. If only one argument is supplied, it is taken as  $x$ , and the assumption is that  $\mu=0$  and  $\sigma=1$ .

```
NORMALD ([ $\mu$ ,  $\sigma$ , ]  $x$ )
```

Example:

```
NORMALD (0.5) and NORMALD (0, 1, 0.5) both return  
0.352065326764.
```

**T** Student's  $t$  probability density function. Computes the probability density of the Student's  $t$ -distribution at  $x$ , given  $n$  degrees of freedom.

```
STUDENT ( $n$ ,  $x$ )
```

Example:

```
student (3, 5.2) returns 0.00366574413491.
```

$\chi^2$   $\chi^2$  probability density function. Computes the probability density of the  $\chi^2$  distribution at  $x$ , given  $n$  degrees of freedom.

```
CHISQUARE ( $n$ ,  $x$ )
```

Example:

```
CHISQUARE (2, 3.2) returns 0.100948258997.
```

**F** Fisher (or Fisher–Snedecor) probability density function. Computes the probability density at the value  $x$ , given numerator  $n$  and denominator  $d$  degrees of freedom.

```
FISHER ( $n$ ,  $d$ ,  $x$ )
```

Example:

```
FISHER (5, 5, 2) returns 0.158080231095.
```

**Binomial** Binomial probability density function. Computes the probability of  $k$  successes out of  $n$  trials, each with a probability of success of  $p$ . Returns  $\text{Comb}(n,k)$  if there is no third argument. Note that  $n$  and  $k$  are integers with  $k \leq n$ .

```
BINOMIAL ( $n$ ,  $k$ ,  $p$ )
```

Example: Suppose you want to know the probability that just 6 heads would appear during 20 tosses of a fair coin.

```
BINOMIAL (20, 6, 0.5) returns 0.03696441652002.
```

**Poisson** Poisson probability mass function. Computes the probability of  $k$  occurrences of an event during a future interval given  $\mu$ , the mean of the occurrences of that event during that interval in the past. For this function,  $k$  is a non-negative integer and  $\mu$  is a real number.

`POISSON(m, k)`

Example: Suppose that on average you get 20 emails a day. What is the probability that tomorrow you will get 15?

`POISSON(20, 15)` returns 0.0516488535318.

## Cumulative

**Normal** Cumulative normal distribution function. Returns the lower-tail probability of the normal probability density function for the value  $x$ , given the mean,  $\mu$ , and standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , of a normal distribution. If only one argument is supplied, it is taken as  $x$ , and the assumption is that  $\mu=0$  and  $\sigma=1$ .

`NORMAL_CDF( $\mu$ ,  $\sigma$ , ]  $x$ )`

Example:

`NORMAL_CDF(0, 1, 2)` returns 0.97724986805.

**T** Cumulative student's  $t$  distribution function. Returns the lower-tail probability of the student's  $t$ -probability density function at  $x$ , given  $n$  degrees of freedom.

`STUDENT_CDF(n, x)`

Example:

`student_cdf(3, -3.2)` returns 0.0246659214814.

$\chi^2$  Cumulative  $\chi^2$  distribution function. Returns the lower-tail probability of the  $\chi^2$  probability density function for the value  $x$ , given  $n$  degrees of freedom.

`CHISQUARE_CDF(n, k)`

Example:

`CHISQUARE_CDF(2, 6.1)` returns 0.952641075609.

**F** Cumulative Fisher distribution function. Returns the lower-tail probability of the Fisher probability density function for the value  $x$ , given numerator  $n$  and denominator  $d$  degrees of freedom.

`FISHER_CDF(n, d, x)`

Example:

`FISHER_CDF(5,5,2)` returns 0.76748868087.

**Binomial** Cumulative binomial distribution function. Returns the probability of  $k$  or fewer successes out of  $n$  trials, with a probability of success,  $p$  for each trial. Note that  $n$  and  $k$  are integers with  $k \leq n$ .

`BINOMIAL_CDF(n,p,k)`

Example: Suppose you want to know the probability that during 20 tosses of a fair coin you will get either 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 heads.

`BINOMIAL_CDF(20,0.5,6)` returns 0.05765914517.

**Poisson** Cumulative Poisson distribution function. Returns the probability  $x$  or fewer occurrences of an event in a given time interval, given  $\mu$  expected occurrences.

`POISSON_CDF( $\mu$ , x)`

Example:

`POISSON_CDF(4,2)` returns 0.238103305554.

## Inverse

**Normal** Inverse cumulative normal distribution function. Returns the cumulative normal distribution value associated with the lower-tail probability,  $p$ , given the mean,  $\mu$ , and standard deviation,  $\sigma$ , of a normal distribution. If only one argument is supplied, it is taken as  $p$ , and the assumption is that  $\mu=0$  and  $\sigma=1$ .

`NORMAL_ICDF([ $\mu$ ,  $\sigma$ , ]p)`

Example:

`NORMAL_ICDF(0,1,0.841344746069)` returns 1.

**T** Inverse cumulative student's t distribution function. Returns the value  $x$  such that the student's-t lower-tail probability of  $x$ , with  $n$  degrees of freedom, is  $p$ .

`STUDENT_ICDF(n,p)`

Example:

`STUDENT_ICDF(3,0.0246659214814)` returns -3.2.

$\chi^2$  Inverse cumulative  $\chi^2$  distribution function. Returns the value  $x$  such that the  $\chi^2$  lower-tail probability of  $x$ , with  $n$  degrees of freedom, is  $p$ .

CHISQUARE\_ICDF ( $n, p$ )

Example:

CHISQUARE\_ICDF (2, 0.952641075609) returns 6.1.

**F** Inverse cumulative Fisher distribution function. Returns the value  $x$  such that the Fisher lower-tail probability of  $x$ , with numerator  $n$  and denominator  $d$  degrees of freedom, is  $p$ .

FISHER\_ICDF ( $n, d, p$ )

Example:

FISHER\_ICDF (5, 5, 0.76748868087) returns 2.

**Binomial** Inverse cumulative binomial distribution function. Returns the number of successes,  $k$ , out of  $n$  trials, each with a probability of  $p$ , such that the probability of  $k$  or fewer successes is  $q$ .

BINOMIAL\_ICDF ( $n, p, q$ )

Example:

BINOMIAL\_ICDF (20, 0.5, 0.6) returns 11.

**Poisson** Inverse cumulative Poisson distribution function. Returns the value  $x$  such that the probability of  $x$  or fewer occurrences of an event, with  $\mu$  expected (or mean) occurrences of the event in the interval, is  $p$ .

POISSON\_ICDF ( $\mu, p$ )

Example:

POISSON\_ICDF (4, 0.238103305554) returns 3.

## List

These functions work on data in a list. They are explained in detail in chapter 23, "Lists", beginning on page 399.

## Matrix

These functions work on matrix data stored in matrix . They are explained in detail in chapter 24, "Matrices", beginning on page 411.

## Special

**Beta** Returns the value of the beta function (B) for two reals  $a$  and  $b$ .

Beta ( $a, b$ )

**Gamma** Returns the value of the gamma function ( $\Gamma$ ) for a number  $a$ .

$\text{Gamma}(a)$

**Psi** Returns the value of the  $n$ th derivative of the digamma function at  $x=a$ , where the digamma function is the first derivative of  $\ln(\Gamma(x))$ .

$\text{Psi}(a, n)$

**Zeta** Returns the value of the zeta function ( $Z$ ) for a real  $x$ .

$\text{Zeta}(x)$

**erf** Returns the floating point value of the error function at  $x=a$ .

$\text{erf}(a)$

**erfc** Returns the value of the complementary error function at  $x=a$ .

$\text{erfc}(a)$

**Ei** Returns the exponential integral of an expression.

$\text{Ei}(\text{Expr})$


**Si** Returns the sine integral of an expression.

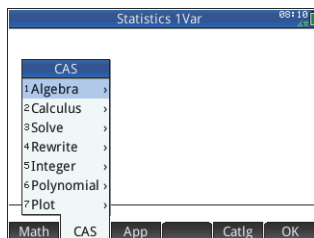
$\text{Si}(\text{Expr})$

**Ci** Returns the cosine integral of an expression.

$\text{Ci}(\text{Expr})$

## CAS menu

Press  to open the Toolbox menus (one of which is the CAS menu). The functions on the CAS menu are those most commonly used. Many more functions are available. See “Ctlg menu”, beginning on page 338.



Note that the Geometry functions appear on the CAS menu when the Geometry app is currently active or was the last-used app. They are described in “Geometry functions and commands”, beginning on page 151.



# Algebra

- Simplify** Returns an expression simplified.  
`simplify(Expr)`
- Collect** Returns a polynomial or list of polynomials factorized over the field of the coefficients.  
`collect(Poly or LstPoly)`
- Expand** Returns an expression expanded.  
`expand(Expr)`
- Factor** Returns a polynomial factorized.  
`factor(Poly)`
- Substitute** Returns the solution when a value is substituted for a variable in an expression.  
`subst(Expr, Var(v)=value(a))`
- Partial Fraction** Returns the partial fraction expansion of a rational fraction.  
`partfrac(RatFrac)`

## Extract

- Numerator** Returns the numerator of a fraction (after simplifying the fraction if necessary).  
`numer(Frac(a/b) or RatFrac)`
- Denominator** Returns the denominator of a fraction (after simplifying the fraction if necessary).  
`denom(Frac(a/b) or RatFrac)`
- Left Side** Returns the left side of an equation or the left bound of an interval.  
`lhs(Equal(a=b) or Interval(a...b))`
- Right Side** Returns the right side of an equation or the left bound of an interval.  
`rhs(Equal(a=b) or Interval(a...b))`

# Calculus

- Differentiate** With one expression as argument, returns derivative of the expression with respect to  $x$ . With one expression and one

variable as arguments, returns the derivative or partial derivative of the expression with respect to the variable. With one expression and more than one variable as arguments, returns the derivative of the expression with respect to the derivation in the second argument onwards. In the arguments can be followed by  $k$  ( $k$  is an integer) to indicate the number of times the expression should be derived with respect to the variable. For example,  $\text{diff}(\exp(x*y), x^3, y^2, z)$  is the same as  $\text{diff}(\exp(x*y), x, x, x, y, y, z)$ .

```
diff(Expr, [var])
```

or

```
diff(Expr, var1$k1, var2$k2, ...)
```

**Integrate** Returns the indefinite integral of an expression. With one expression as argument, returns the indefinite integral with respect to  $x$ . With the optional second, third and fourth arguments you can specify the variable of integration and the bounds of the integrate.

```
int(Expr, [Var(x)], [Real(a)], [Real(b)])
```

**Limit** Returns the limit of an expression when the variable approaches a limit point  $a$  or  $+/-$  infinity. With the optional fourth argument you can specify whether it is the limit from below, above or bidirectional ( $d=-1$  for limit from below and  $d=+1$  for limit from above,  $d=0$  for bidirectional limit). If the fourth argument is not provided, the limit returned is bidirectional.

```
limit(Expr, Var, Val(a), [Dir(d)])
```

**Series** Returns the series expansion of an expression in the vicinity of a given equality variable. With the optional third and fourth arguments you can specify the order and direction of the series expansion. If no order is specified the series returned is fifth order. If no direction is specified, the series is bidirectional.

```
series(Expr, Equal(var=limit_point), [Order], [Dir(1, 0, -1)])
```

**Summation** With two arguments, returns the discrete antiderivative of the expression with respect to the variable.

```
sum(Expr, Var)
```

With four arguments, returns the discrete sum of the expression with respect to the variable from  $a$  to  $b$ .

sum (Expr, Var, VarMin (a) , VarMax (b) )

## Differential

**Curl** Returns the rotational curl of a vector field, defined by:  
 $\text{curl}([A,B,C],[x,y,z])=[dC/dy-dB/dz,dA/dz-dC/dx,dB/dx-dA/dy]$ .

curl (Lst (A, B, C) , Lst (x, y, z) )

**Divergence** Returns the divergence of a vector field, defined by:  
 $\text{divergence}([A,B,C],[x,y,z])=dA/dx+dB/dy+dC/dz$ .

divergence (Lst (A, B, C) , Lst (x, y, z) )

**Gradient** Returns the gradient of an expression. With a list of as second argument, returns the vector of partial derivatives for all .

grad (Expr, LstVar)

**Hessian** Returns the Hessian matrix of an expression.

hessian (Expr, LstVar)

## Integral

**By Parts v(x)** Performs integration by parts of the expression  $f(x)=u(x)*v'(x)$  with  $f(x)$  as the first argument and  $v(x)$  (or 0) as the second argument. With the optional third, fourth and fifth arguments you can specify a variable of integration and bounds of the integrate. If no variable of integration is provided, it is taken as  $x$ .

ibpdv (Expr (f (x) ) , Expr (v (x) ) , [Var (x) ] , [Real (a) ] , [Real (b) ] )

**By Parts u(v)** Performs integration by parts of the expression  $f(x)=u(x)*v'(x)$  with  $f(x)$  as the first argument and  $u(x)$  (or 0) as the second argument. With the optional third, fourth and fifth arguments you can specify a variable of integration and bounds of the integrate. If no variable of integration is provided, it is taken as  $x$ .

ibpu (Expr (f (x) ) , Expr (u (x) ) , [Var (x) ] , [Real (a) ] , [Real (b) ] )

**F(b)-F(a)** Returns  $F(b)-F(a)$ .

preval (Expr (F (var) ) , Real (a) , Real (b) , [Var ] )

## Limits

**Riemann Sum** Returns in the neighbourhood of  $n=+\infty$  an equivalent of the sum of  $Xpr(var1,var2)$  for  $var2$  from  $var2=1$  to  $var2=var1$  when the sum is looked at as a Riemann sum associated with a continuous function defined on  $[0,1]$ .

```
sum_riemann(Expr(Xpr), Lst(var1, var2))
```

**Taylor** Returns the Taylor series expansion of an expression. With the optional second and third arguments you can specify the limit point and the order of the expansion. If no limit point is provided, it is taken as  $x=0$ . If no order is provided, the series returned is fifth order.

```
taylor(Expr, [Var=limit_point], [Order])
```

**Taylor of Quotient** Returns the quotient  $Q$  of the division of polynomial  $A$  by polynomial  $B$  by increasing power order, with  $\text{degree}(Q) \leq n$  or  $Q=0$ . In other words,  $Q$  is the Taylor expansion at order  $n$  of  $A/B$  in the vicinity of  $x=0$ .

```
divpc(A, B, Intg(n))
```

## Transform

**Laplace** Returns the Laplace transform of an expression.

```
laplace(Expr, [Var], [LapVar])
```

**Inverse Laplace** Returns the inverse Laplace transform of an expression.

```
invlaplace(Expr, [Var], [IlapVar])
```

**FFT** With one argument, returns the discrete Fourier transform in  $\mathbb{R}$ .

```
fft(Vect)
```

With three arguments, returns the discrete Fourier transform in the field  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , with  $a$  as primitive  $n$ th root of 1 ( $n=\text{size}(L)$ ).

```
fft((Vect(L), Intg(a), Intg(p)))
```

**Inverse FFT** Returns the inverse discrete Fourier transform.

```
ifft(Vect)
```

## Solve

**Solve** Returns the solutions to a polynomial equation or a set of polynomial equations.

```
solve(Expr, [Var])
```

<b>Zeros</b>	With an expression as argument, returns the zeros (real or complex according to the mode) of the expression. With a list of expressions as argument, returns the matrix where the lines are the solutions of the system (i.e. $\text{expression1}=0$ , $\text{expression2}=0, \dots$ ).
	<code>zeros(Expr, [Var])</code>
	or
	<code>zeros([LstExpr], [LstVar])</code>
<b>Complex Solve</b>	Returns a list where the elements are complex solutions of the system of polynomial equations.
	<code>csolve(LstEq, LstVar)</code>
<b>Complex Zeros</b>	With an expression as argument, returns the complex zeros of the expression. With a list of expressions as argument, returns the matrix where the lines are the solutions of the system (i.e. $\text{expression1}=0$ , $\text{expression2}=0, \dots$ ).
	<code>Czeros(Expr, [Var])</code>
	or
	<code>Czeros([LstExpr], [LstVar])</code>
<b>Numerical Solve</b>	Returns the numerical solution of an equation or a system of equations. With the optional third argument you can specify a guess for the solution or an interval within which it is expected that the solution will occur. With the optional fourth argument you can name the iterative algorithm to be used by the solver.
	<code>nSolve(Expr, Var, [Guess or Interval], [Method])</code>
<b>Differential Equation</b>	Returns the solution to a differential equation.
	<code>deSolve(Eq, [TimeVar], FncVar)</code>
<b>ODE Solve</b>	Returns an approximate value of $y$ at a final value ( $t1$ ) of a given variable, where $y(t)$ is the solution of: $y'(t)=f(t,y(t))$ , $y(t0)=y0$ .
	<code>odesolve(Expr(f(t, y)), VectVar([t, y]), VectInitCond([t0, y0]), FinalVal(t1), [tstep=Val, curve])</code>
<b>Linear System</b>	Returns the solution to a system of linear equations.
	<code>linsolve(LstLinEq, LstVar)</code>

## Rewrite

**lncollect** Returns an expression rewritten with the logarithms collected. (applies  $\ln(a)+n*\ln(b)\rightarrow\ln(a*b^n)$  for integers  $n$ ).

`lncollect (Expr)`

**powexpand** Returns an expression with a power of sum rewritten as a product of powers.

`powexpand (Expr)`

**tExpand** Returns a transcendental expression in expanded form.

`tExpand (Expr)`

## Exp & Ln

**ey\*lnx** Returns an expression of the form  $\exp(n*\ln(x))$  rewritten as a power of  $x$ .

`exp2pow (Expr)`

**y\*lnx** Returns an expression with powers rewritten as an exponentials.

`pow2exp (Expr)`

**exp2trig** Returns an expression with complex exponentials rewritten in terms of sin and cos.

`exp2trig (Expr)`

**expexpand** Returns an expression with exponentials in expanded form.

`expexpand (Expr)`

## Sine

**asinx → acosx** Returns an expression with  $\arcsin(x)$  rewritten as  $\pi/2 - \arccos(x)$ .

`asin2acos (Expr)`

**asinx → atanx** Returns an expression with  $\arcsin(x)$  rewritten as  $\arctan(x/\sqrt{1-x^2})$ .

`asin2atan (Expr)`

**sinx → cosx/tanx** Returns an expression with  $\sin(x)$  rewritten as  $\cos(x)*\tan(x)$ .

`sin2costan (Expr)`

## Cosine

- acosx** → **asinx** Returns an expression with  $\arccos(x)$  rewritten as  $\pi/2 - \arcsin(x)$ .  
`acos2asin(Expr)`
- acosx** → **atanx** Returns an expression with  $\arccos(x)$  rewritten as  $\pi/2 - \arctan(x/\sqrt{1-x^2})$ .  
`acos2atan(Expr)`
- cosx** → **sinx/tanx** Returns an expression with  $\cos(x)$  rewritten as  $\sin(x)/\tan(x)$ .  
`cos2sintan(Expr)`

## Tangent

- atanx** → **asinx** Returns an expression with  $\arctan(x)$  rewritten as  $\arcsin(x/\sqrt{1+x^2})$ .  
`atan2asin(Expr)`
- atanx** → **acosx** Returns an expression with  $\arctan(x)$  rewritten as  $\pi/2 - \arccos(x/\sqrt{1+x^2})$ .  
`atan2acos(Expr)`
- tanx** → **sinx/cosx** Returns an expression with  $\tan(x)$  rewritten as  $\sin(x)/\cos(x)$ .  
`tan2sincos(Expr)`
- halftan** Returns an expression with  $\sin(x)$ ,  $\cos(x)$  or  $\tan(x)$  rewritten as  $\tan(x/2)$ .  
`halftan(Expr)`

## Trig

- trigx** → **sinx** Returns an expression simplified using the formulas  $\sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^2 = 1$  and  $\tan(x) = \sin(x)/\cos(x)$  (privileging sine).  
`trigsin(Expr)`
- trigx** → **cosx** Returns an expression simplified using the formulas  $\sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^2 = 1$  and  $\tan(x) = \sin(x)/\cos(x)$  (privileging cosine).  
`trigcos(Expr)`
- trigx** → **tanx** Returns an expression simplified using the formulas  $\sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^2 = 1$  and  $\tan(x) = \sin(x)/\cos(x)$  (privileging tangent).

	<code>trigtan (Expr)</code>
<b>atrig2ln</b>	Returns an expression with inverse trigonometric functions rewritten as logarithmic functions. <code>atrig2ln (Expr)</code>
<b>tlin</b>	Returns a trigonometric expression with the products and integer powers linearized. <code>tlin (ExprTrig)</code>
<b>tCollect</b>	Returns a trigonometric expression linearized and with any sine and cosine of the same angle put together. <code>tCollect (Expr)</code>
<b>trigexpand</b>	Returns a trigonometric expression in expanded form. <code>trigexpand (Expr)</code>
<b>trig2exp</b>	Returns an expression with trigonometric functions rewritten as complex exponentials (without linearization). <code>trig2exp (Expr)</code>

## Integer

<b>Divisors</b>	Returns the list of divisors of an integer or a list of integers. <code>idivis (Intg(a) or (LstIntg))</code>
<b>Factors</b>	Returns an integer decomposed into its prime factors. <code>ifactor (Intg(a))</code>
<b>Factor List</b>	Returns the list of prime factors of an integer or a list of integers. Each factor is followed by its multiplicity. <code>ifactors (Intg(a) or (LstIntg))</code>
<b>GCD</b>	Returns the greatest common divisor of two integers. <code>gcd ((Intg(a), Intg(b)))</code>
<b>LCM</b>	Returns the lowest common multiple of two integers. <code>lcm ((Intg(a), Intg(b)))</code>

### *Prime*

<b>Test if Prime</b>	Tests whether or not a given integer is a prime number. <code>isprime (Intg(a))</code>
----------------------	---



<b>Nth Prime</b>	Returns the $n$ th prime number less than 10000. <code>ithprime(Intg(n))</code>
<b>Next Prime</b>	Returns the next prime or pseudo-prime after an integer. <code>nextprime(Intg(a))</code>
<b>Previous Prime</b>	Returns the prime or pseudo-prime number closest to but smaller than an integer. <code>prevprime(Intg(a))</code>
<b>Euler</b>	Compute's Euler's totient for an integer. <code>euler(Intg(n))</code>

## Division

<b>Quotient</b>	Returns the integer quotient of the Euclidean division of two integers. <code>iquo(Intg(a), Intg(b))</code>
<b>Remainder</b>	Returns the integer remainder from the Euclidean division of two integers. <code>irem(Intg(a), Intg(b))</code>
<b><math>a^n \text{ MOD } p</math></b>	Returns $a^n$ modulo $p$ in $[0;p-1]$ . <code>powmod(Intg(a), Intg(n), Intg(p), [Expr(P(x))], [Var])</code>
<b>Chinese Remainder</b>	Returns the Chinese remainder of two lists of integers. <code>ichinrem(LstIntg(a,p), LstIntg(b,q))</code>

## Polynomial

<b>Find Roots</b>	Returns all computed roots of a polynomial given by its coefficients. (It may not work if roots are not simple.) <code>proot(Vect  Poly)</code>
<b>Coefficients</b>	With an integer as third argument, returns the coefficient of a polynomial of degree given in the third argument. With no third argument, returns the list of coefficients of the polynomial. <code>coeff(Expr, [Var], degree)</code>
<b>Divisors</b>	Returns the list of divisors of a polynomial or a list of polynomials.

```
divis(Poly or LstPoly)
```

**Factor List** Returns the list of prime factors of a polynomial or a list of polynomials. Each factor is followed by its multiplicity.

```
factors(Poly or LstPoly)
```

**GCD** Returns the greatest common divisor of two polynomials of several .

```
gcd(Poly, Poly)
```

**LCM** Returns the lowest common multiple of two polynomials of several .

```
lcm(Poly, Poly)
```

## Create

**Poly to Coef** With a variable as second argument, returns the coefficients of a polynomial with respect to the variable. With a list of as second argument, returns the internal format of the polynomial.

```
symb2poly(Expr, [Var])
```

or

```
symb2poly(Expr, ListVar)
```

**Coef to Poly** With one list as argument, returns a polynomial in  $x$  with coefficients (in decreasing order) obtained from the list. With a variable as second argument, returns a polynomial in the variable as for one argument but the polynomial is in the variable specified in the second argument.

```
poly2symb(Lst, Var)
```

**Roots to Coef** Returns the coefficients (in decreasing order) of the univariate polynomial of roots specified in the argument.

```
pcoef(Vect)
```

**Roots to Poly** Returns the rational function that has the roots and poles specified in the argument.

```
fcoeff(Lst(root || pole, order))
```

**Random** Returns a polynomial of variable specified in the first argument, of degree  $n$  and where the coefficients are random integers in the range  $-99$  through  $99$  with uniform distribution or according to the law specified in the third argument.

```
randPoly([Var(var)], Intg(n), [law])
```

**Minimum** With only a matrix as argument, returns the minimal polynomial in  $x$  of a matrix written as a list of its coefficients. With a matrix and a variable as arguments, returns the minimum polynomial of the matrix written in symbolic form with respect to the variable.

```
pmin(Mtrx, [Var])
```

## Algebra

**Quotient** Returns the Euclidean quotient of two polynomials written as vectors or in symbolic form.

```
quo((Vect), (Vect), [Var])
```

or

```
quo((Poly), (Poly), [Var])
```

**Remainder** Returns the Euclidean remainder of two polynomials written as vectors or in symbolic form.

```
rem((Vect), (Vect), [Var])
```

or

```
rem((Poly), (Poly), [Var])
```

**Degree** Returns the degree of a polynomial.

```
degree(Poly)
```

**Factor by Degree** Returns a polynomial factorized in  $x^n$ , where  $n$  is the degree of polynomial.

```
factor_xn(Poly)
```

**Coef. of GCD** Returns the greatest common divisor (GCD) of the coefficients of a polynomial.

```
content(Poly(P), [Var])
```

**Zero Count** With a polynomial and a variable as arguments, returns the list of the Sturm sequences and multiplicities of the square-free factors of the polynomial with respect to the variable. With a polynomial, a variable and two reals as arguments, returns the number of sign changes of the polynomial over the interval specified by the two reals.

```
sturmseq(Poly, [Var])
```

or

```
sturmseq(Poly, [Var], a, b)
```

**Chinese Remainder** Returns the Chinese remainder of the polynomials written as lists of coefficients or in symbolic form.

```
chinrem ([Lst | Expr, Lst | Expr], [Lst | Expr, Lst | Expr])
```

## *Special*

**Cyclotomic** Returns the list of coefficients of the cyclotomic polynomial of an integer.

```
cyclotomic (Int)
```

**Groebner Basis** Returns the Groebner basis of the ideal spanned by a list of polynomials.

```
gbasis (LstPoly, LstVar)
```

**Groebner Remainder** Returns the remainder of the division of a polynomial by the Groebner basis of a list of polynomials.

```
greduce (Poly, LstPoly, LstVar)
```

**Hermite** Returns the Hermite polynomial of degree  $n$ .

```
hermite (Intg (n))
```

**Lagrange** Returns the Lagrange polynomial for two lists. The list in the first argument corresponds to the abscissa values, and the list in the second argument corresponds to the ordinate values.

```
lagrange ((Lst_xk, Lst_yk)
```

or

```
lagrange (Mtrx_2*n)
```

**Laguerre** Returns the Laguerre polynomial of degree  $n$ .

```
laguerre (Intg (n))
```

**Legendre** Returns the Legendre polynomial of degree  $n$ .

```
legendre (Intg (n))
```

**Chebyshev Tn** Returns the Tchebyshev polynomial of first kind of degree  $n$ .

```
tchebyshev1 (Intg (n))
```


**Chebyshev Un** Returns the Tchebyshev polynomial of second kind of degree  $n$ .

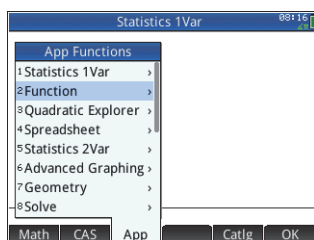
```
tchebyshev2 (Intg (n))
```

# Plot

- Function** Plots the graph of an expression of one or two with superposition.
- ```
plotfunc(Expr, [Var(x)], [Intg(color)])
```
- or
- ```
plotfunc(Expr, [VectVar], [Intg(color)])
```
- Implicit** Plots the graph of the implicit equation  $f(\text{Var1}, \text{Var2})=0$ .
- ```
plotimplicit(Expr, Var1, Var2)
```
- Density** Plots the graph of the function  $z=f(x,y)$  in the plane where the values of  $z$  are represented by different colors.
- ```
plotdensity(Expr, [x=xrange, y=yrange], [z], [xstep], [ystep])
```
- Slopefield** Draws the tangent of the differential equation  $y'=f(t,y)$ , where the first argument is the expression  $f(t,y)$  ( $y$  is the real variable and  $t$  is the abscissa), the second argument is the vector of (abscissa must be listed first), and the third argument is the optional range.
- ```
plotfield(Expr, VectVar, [Opt])
```
- Contour** Draws eleven contour lines of the surface defined by the expression  $z=f(x,y)$  for  $z=-10, -8, \dots, 8, 10$ . With a list of values as third argument, contour lines will be drawn instead for the  $z$  values given in the list.
- ```
plotcontour(Expr(Xpr), [LstVar], [LstVal])
```
- ODE** Draws the solution of the differential equation  $y'=f(t,y)$  that crosses the point  $(t0, y0)$ , where the first argument is the expression  $f(t,y)$ , the second argument is the vector of (abscissa must be listed first), and the third argument is  $(t0, y0)$ .
- ```
plotode(Expr, VectVar, VectInitCond)
```
- List** Draws the polygonal line through the points of abscissa  $0, \dots, n$  and ordinate  $l=[y0, \dots, yn]$ , or draws the line through the points of abscissa (the first column in the matrix) and ordinate (the second column in the matrix).
- ```
plotlist(Lst(l) | Mtrx(M))
```

## App menu

Press  to open the Toolbox menus (one of which is the App menu). App functions are used in HP apps to perform common calculations. For example, in the Function app, the Plot view **Fcn** menu has a function called `SLOPE` that calculates the slope of a given function at a given point. The `SLOPE` function can also be used from the Home view or a program to give the same results. The App functions described in this section are grouped by app.



## Function app functions

The Function app functions provide the same functionality found in the Function app's Plot view under the FCN menu. All these operations work on functions. The functions may be expressions in  $X$  or the names of the Function app variable  $F_0$  through  $F_9$ .

### AREA

Area under a curve or between curves. Finds the signed area under a function or between two functions. Finds the area under the function  $F_n$  or below  $F_n$  and above the function  $F_m$ , from lower  $X$ -value to upper  $X$ -value.

`AREA (Fn, [Fm, ] lower, upper)`

Example:

`AREA (-X, X2-2, -2, 1)` returns 4.5

### EXTREMUM

Extremum of a function. Finds the extremum (if one exists) of the function  $F_n$  that is closest to the  $X$ -value guess.

`EXTREMUM (Fn, guess)`

Example:

`EXTREMUM (X2-X-2, 0)` returns 0.5

### ISECT

Intersection of two functions. Finds the intersection (if one exists) of the two functions  $F_n$  and  $F_m$  that is closest to the  $X$ -value guess.

ISECT (Fn, Fm, guess)

Example:

ISECT (X, 3-X, 2) returns 1.5

## ROOT

Root of a function. Finds the root of the function Fn (if one exists) that is closest to the X-value guess.

ROOT (Fn, guess)

Example:

ROOT (3-X<sup>2</sup>, 2) returns 1.732...

## SLOPE

Slope of a function. Returns the slope of the function Fn at the X-value (if value exists).

SLOPE (Fn, value)

Example:

SLOPE (3-X<sup>2</sup>, 2) returns -4

## Solve app functions

The Solve app has a single function that solves a given equation or expression for one of its . En may be an equation or expression, or it may be the name of one of the Solve Symbolic E0-E9.

## SOLVE

Solve. Solves an equation for one of its . Solves the equation En for the variable var, using the value of guess as the initial value for the value of the variable var. If En is an expression, then the value of the variable var that makes the expression equal to zero is returned.

SOLVE (En, var, guess)

Example:

SOLVE (X<sup>2</sup>-X-2, X, 3) returns 2

This function also returns an integer that is indicative of the type of solution found, as follows:

0—an exact solution was found



1—an approximate solution was found

2—an extremum was found that is as close to a solution as possible

3—neither a solution, an approximation, nor an extremum was found

See chapter 12, “Solve app”, beginning on page 235, for more information about the types of solutions returned by this function.

## Spreadsheet functions

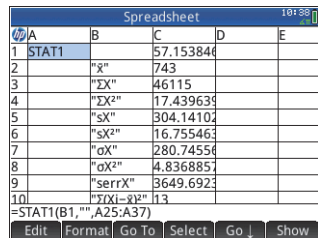
The spreadsheet functions can be selected from the App Toolbox menu (  > **App** > Spreadsheet). They can also be selected from the View menu (  ) when the Spreadsheet app is open.

The typical syntax of a spreadsheet function is:

```
functionName (output, "configuration",  
input, [optional parameters])
```

- Output is either a reference to a single cell, in which case the output is controlled by the configuration string, or a cell range reference where the output size is restricted by the size of the range. If the output range is wider than it is tall, it will change the output to horizontal layout instead of the default vertical layout.
- Configuration is a string that controls which values are output. Leaving the quotation marks empty ("" ) produces the default output. The order of the values can also be controlled by the order that they appear in the string.
- Input is the input list for the function. This can be a cell range reference, a simple list or anything that results in a list of values.
- [ ] denotes optional parameters.

For example: =STAT1 (B1, "", A25 : A37) produces the following output.



	A	B	C	D	E
1	=STAT1		57.153846		
2		"x"	743		
3		"EX"	46115		
4		"EX2"	17.439639		
5		"sX"	304.14102		
6		"sX2"	16.755463		
7		"aX"	280.74556		
8		"aX2"	4.8368857		
9		"serrX"	3649.6923		
10		"serrX2"	13		

=STAT1(B1,"",A25:A37)

Edit Format Go To Select Go ↓ Show



For example: `=STAT1 (B1, "HΣx̄", A25:A37)` produces the following output.

#	A	B	C	D
1	STAT1	ΣX	76267	
2		$\bar{x}$	5866.69...	
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
=STAT1(B1, "HΣx̄", A25:A37)				
<input type="button" value="EDIT"/> <input type="button" value="FORMAT"/> <input type="button" value="GOTO"/> <input type="button" value="COPY"/> <input type="button" value="SHOW"/>				

## SUM

Calculates the sum of a range of numbers.

`SUM([input])`

For example, `AVERAGE)B7:B23)` returns the arithmetic mean of the numbers in the range B7 to B23. You can also specify a block of cells, as in `AVERAGE (B7:C23)`.

An error is returned if a cell in the specified range contains a non-numeric object.

## AVERAGE

Calculates the arithmetic mean of a range of numbers.

`AVERAGE([input])`

For example, `AVERAGE)B7:B23)` returns the arithmetic mean of the numbers in the range B7 to B23. You can also specify a block of cells, as in `AVERAGE)B7:C23)`.

An error is returned if a cell in the specified range contains a non-numeric object.

## AMORT

Calculates the principal, interest, and balance of a loan over a specified period.

`AMORT(Range, "configuration", n, i, pv, pmt[ppyr=12, cpyr=ppyr, Grouping=ppyr, beg=false, fix=current])`

- `Range` is the cell range where the results will be placed. If only one cell is specified, the range of cells is automatically calculated.
- `Configuration` is a string that determines what information will be provided, in what order, and if a heading is to be provided. An empty string ("" ) will display all information and all headings. The

configuration codes are listed below. Add H as a prefix to have a heading generated for that information.

h – This column contains the row headers

S – This column contains the start of the period

E – This column contains the end of the period HB,HI

P – This column contains the Principal paid this period

B – This column contains the balance at the end of the period

I – This column contains the interest paid this period

n is the number of periods for the loan,

i is interest rate

pv is the present value

pmt is the per-period payment

- Optional parameters:

ppyr is the number of payments per year

cpyr is the number of compounding periods per year

- Grouping is the number of periods that need to be grouped together in the amortization table.

beg is 1 when payment is at the beginning of each period, else it is 0.

fix is the number of decimal places to be used for the calculations.


Example: =AMORT (A1, "", 12, 6, 100, 200)

## STAT1

he STAT1 function provides a range of one-variable statistics. It can calculate all or any of  $\bar{x}$ ,  $\Sigma$ ,  $\Sigma^2$ , s,  $s^2$ ,  $\sigma$ ,  $\sigma^2$ , serr, sqd, n, min, q1, med, q3, and max.

STAT1 (output, "configuration", input, [mode])

- Output is the cell range where the results are placed. If only one cell is specified, then the range of cells is automatically calculated.
- Configuration is a string that defines if a header row needs to be created (starts with H) and what result to place in which column. An empty string "" will use all the headers.

Note that many of the characters representing statistics—for example,  $\bar{x}$  and  $\sigma$ —can be selected from the symbol palette ( 9).

- Input is the can be a cell range reference, a simple list or anything that results in a list of values.
- Mode is optional and defines what to calculate the mean of. The valid values are:
  - 1 = one value
  - 2 = with frequency data
  - 3 = with weighted data
  - 4 = multiplies two data sets together to form a single data set

Examples:

```
STAT1 (B1, "", A25:A37)
```

```
STAT1 (B1, "H $\bar{x}$ , H $\sigma$ ", A25:A37)
```

## REGRS

Regression analysis function. Can calculate all or any of sl = (slope), int (intercept), cor, cd, sCov, pCov, px (predict x), and py (predict y).

```
REGRS (output, "configuration",  
input, [mode], [y], [x])
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note, if a range is specified, it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and in what order they appear. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.
- Input can be a cell range reference, a simple list or anything that results in a list of values.
- Input Parameters:
  - mode (optional) specifies the mode to be used for the regression:
    - 1 linear
    - 2 logarithmic

- 3 exponential
- 4 power
- 5 inverse
- 6 logistic
- 7 quadratic
- 8 cubic
- 9 quartic
- 10 trigonometric

**Important:** If  $px$  or  $py$  are specified, their opposite value must be one of the input values. For example, if  $px$  is specified in the configuration string then the  $y$ -value must be an input parameter and vice versa for  $py$ .

Example: `REGRS (J1, "", A25:B37, 2)`

## PredY

## PredX

## HypZ1 mean

The hypothesis test HypZ1 mean is a one-sample Z-test for comparing means.

Syntax:

```
HypZ1mean(ouput, "configuration", input
list)
```

```
HypZ1mean(ouput, "configuration", SampMean,
SampSize, NullPopMean, PopStdDev, SigLevel,
Mode)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

acc = Accept/Reject

tZ = Test Z  
tM = Test Mean  
prob = Probability  
cZ = Critical Z  
cx1 = Critical xbar 1  
cx2 = Critical xbar 2  
std = Standard deviation

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.
- Input Parameters:
  - SampMean:
  - SampSize:
  - NullPopMean:
  - PopStdDev:
  - SigLevel:
  - Mode: Specifies how to calculate the statistic
    - 1 = Less than
    - 2 = Greater than
    - 3 = Not Equal

Example: **XXXXX**

## **HYPZ2mean**

The hypothesis test HypZ2mean is a two-sample Z-test for comparing means.

Syntax:

```
HypZ2mean(ouput, "configuration", input  
list)
```

```
HypZ2mean(ouput, "configuration", SampMean,  
SampMean2, SampSize, SampSize2, PopStdDev,  
PopStdDev2, SigLevel, Mode)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string

"" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

acc = Accept/Reject

tZ = Test Z

tM = Test Mean

prob = Probability

cZ = Critical Z

cx1 = Critical xbar 1

cx2 = Critical xbar 2

std = Standard deviation

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.

- Input Parameters:

SampMean:

SampMean2:

SampSize:

SampSize2:

PopStdDev:

PopStdDev2:

SigLevel:

Mode: Specifies how to calculate the statistic

1 = Less than

2 = Greater than

3 = Not Equal

Example: **XXXXX**

## HypZ1prop

The hypothesis test HypZ1prop is a one-proportion Z-test.

Syntax:

```
HypZ1prop(output, "configuration", input  
list) HypZ1prop(ouput, "configuration",  
SuccCount, SampSize, NullPopProp, SigLevel,  
Mode)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation

from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.

- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

acc = Accept/Reject

tZ = Test Z

tP prob

cZ

cp1

cp2

std

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.

- Input Parameters:

SuccCount:

SampSize:

NullPopMean:

SigLevel:

Mode: Specifies how to calculate the statistic

1 = Less than

2 = Greater than

3 = Not Equal

Example: XXXXX

## HypZ2prop

The hypothesis test HypZ2prop is a two-proportion Z-test for comparing means.

Syntax:

```
HypZ2prop(ouput, "configuration", input  
list)
```

```
HypZ2prop(ouput, "configuration",  
SuccCount1, SuccCount2, SampSize1,  
SampSize2, SigLevel, Mode)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

acc = Accept/Reject

tZ = Test Z

tPd

prob

cZ

cp1

cp2

std

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.

- Input Parameters:

SuccCount1

SuccCount2

SampSize1

SampSize2

SigLevel

Mode: Specifies how to calculate the statistic

1 = Less than

2 = Greater than

3 = Not Equal

Example: **XXXXX**

## HypT1mean

The hypothesis test HypT1 mean is a one-sample T-test for comparing means.

Syntax:

```
HypT1mean(ouput, "configuration", input
list)
```



```
HypT1mean(ouput, "configuration", SampMean,  
SampStdDev, SampSize, NullPopProp, SigLevel,  
Mode)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

acc = Accept/Reject

tT

tM

prob

df

ct

cX1

cX2

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.
- Input Parameters:

SampMean

SampStdDev

SampSize:

NullPopMean:

SigLevel:

Mode: Specifies how to calculate the statistic

1 = Less than

2 = Greater than

3 = Not Equal

Example: **XXXXX**

## HypT2mean

The hypothesis test HypT2mean is a two-sample T-test for comparing means.

### Syntax:

```
HypT2mean(ouput, "configuration", input  
list)
```

```
HypT2mean(ouput, "configuration",  
SampMean1, SampMean2, SampStdDev1,  
SampStdDev2, SampSize1, SampSize2, pooled,  
SigLevel, Mode)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

acc = Accept/Reject

tT

tM

prob

df

ct

cX1

cX2

stD

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.
- Input Parameters:

SampMean1

SampMean2

SampStdDev1

SampStdDev2

SampSize1

SampSize2

pooled = 0 == false or 1 == true

SigLevel:

Mode: Specifies how to calculate the statistic

1 = Less than

2 = Greater than

3 = Not Equal

Example: XXXXX

## ConfZ1mean

The ConfZ1mean calculates the confidence interval for a one-sample Z-test.

Syntax:

```
ConfZ1mean(ouput, "configuration", input  
list)
```

```
ConfZ1mean(ouput, "configuration",  
SampMean, SampSize, PopStdDev, ConfLevel)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

Z

zXl

zXh

std

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.
- Input Parameters:  
SampMean,  
SampSize,  
PopStdDev,  
ConfLevel

Example: XXXXX

## ConfZ2mean

The ConfZ2mean calculates the confidence interval for a two-sample Z-test.

Syntax:

```
ConfZ2mean(ouput, "configuration", input  
list)
```

```
ConfZ2mean(ouput, "configuration",  
SampMean1, SampMean2, SampSize1, SampSize2,  
PopStdDev1, PopStdDev2 ConfLevel)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

Z

zXl

zXh

zXm

std

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.
- Input Parameters:

SampMean1,

SampMean2,

SampSize1,

SampSize2,

PopStdDev1,

PopStdDev2,

ConfLevel

Example: **XXXXX**

## ConfZ1prop

The ConfZ1prop calculates the confidence interval for a one-proportion Z-test.

Syntax:

```
ConfZ1prop(ouput, "configuration", input  
list) ConfZ1prop(ouput, "configuration",  
SuccCount, SampSize, ConfLevel)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

Z

zXl

zXh

zXm

std

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.

- Input Parameters:

SuccCount,

SampSize,

ConfLevel

Example: **XXXXX**

## ConfZ2prop

The ConfZ1mean calculates the confidence interval for a two-proportion Z-test.

Syntax:

```
ConfZ2prop(ouput, "configuration", input  
list)
```

```
ConfZ2prop(ouput, "configuration",  
SuccCount1, SuccCount2, SampSize1,  
SampSize2, ConfLevel)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

Z

zXl

zXh

zXm

std

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.

- Input Parameters:

SuccCount1,

SuccCount2,

SampSize1,

SampSize2,

ConfLevel

Example: **XXXXX**

## ConfT1mean

The ConfT1mean calculates the confidence interval for a one-sample T-test.

Syntax:

```
ConfT1mean(ouput, "configuration", input  
list)
```

```
ConfT1mean(ouput, "configuration",  
SampMean, SampStdDev, SampSize, ConfLevel)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.
- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

```
h = if present the header cells will be created
DF T
zX;
zXh
std
```

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.
- Input Parameters:  
SampMean,  
SampStdDev,  
SampSize,  
ConfLevel

Example: **XXXXX**

## ConfT2mean

The ConfT2mean calculates the confidence interval for a two-sample T-test.

Syntax:

```
ConfT2mean(ouput, "configuration", input
list)
```

```
ConfT2mean(ouput, "configuration",
SampMean, SampMean2, SampStdDev,
SampStdDev2, SampSize, SampSize2, pooled,
ConfLevel)
```

- Output is a reference to where you would like the output to be placed. Note if a range is specified it will limit the size of the output, but can also change the orientation

from vertical to horizontal if the range is wider than it is tall.

- Configuration is a string that controls what results are shown and what order they appear in. An empty string "" will default to show all in default order including headers.

h = if present the header cells will be created

DF T

zX;

zXh

zXm

Std

- Input list is the list of input (see Input Parameters below). This can be a range reference, a list of cell references or a simple list of values.
- Input Parameters:

SampMean,

SampMean2,

SampStdDev,

SampStdDev2,

SampSize,

SampSize2,


pooled,

ConfLevel

## Statistics 1Var app functions

The Statistics 1Var app has three functions designed to work together to calculate summary statistics based on one of the statistical analyses (H1–H5) defined in the Symbolic view of the Statistics 1Var app.

### Do1VStats

Do1:variable statistics. Performs the same calculations as tapping  in the Numeric view of the Statistics 1Var app and stores the results in the appropriate Statistics 1Var app results . Hn must be one of the Statistics 1Var app Symbolic view H1–H5.

Do1VStats (Hn)



## SetFreq

Set frequency. Sets the frequency for one of the statistical analyses (H1–H5) defined in the Symbolic view of the Statistics 1Var app. The frequency can be either one of the column D0–D9, or any positive integer. *H<sub>n</sub>* must be one of the Statistics 1Var app Symbolic view H1–H5. If used, *D<sub>n</sub>* must be one of the column D0–D9; otherwise, *value* must be a positive integer.

```
SETFREQ (Hn, Dn)
```

or

```
SETFREQ (Hn, value)
```

## SetSample

Set sample data. Sets the sample data for one of the statistical analyses (H1–H5) defined in the Symbolic view of the Statistics 1Var app. Sets the data column to one of the column D0–D9 for one of the statistical analyses H1–H5.

```
SETSAMPLE (Hn, Dn)
```

# Statistics 2Var app functions

The Statistics 2Var app has a number of functions. Some are designed to calculate summary statistics based on one of the statistical analyses (S1–S5) defined in the Symbolic view of the Statistics 2Var app. Others predict X- and Y-values based on the fit specified in one of the analyses.

## PredX

Predict X. Uses the fit from the first active analysis (S1–S5) found to predict an x-value given the y-value.

```
PredX (value)
```

## PredY

Predict Y. Uses the fit from the first active analysis (S1–S5) found to predict a y-value given the x-value.

```
PredY (value)
```


## Resid

Residuals. Calculates a list of residuals, based on column data and a fit defined in the Symbolic view via S1-S5.

```
Resid (Sn) or Resid ()
```

Resid() looks for the first defined analysis in the Symbolic view (S1-S5).

## Do2VStats

Do 2:variable statistics. Performs the same calculations as tapping  in the Numeric view of the Statistics 2Var app

and stores the results in the appropriate Statistics 2Var app results . Sn must be one of the Statistics 2Var app Symbolic view S1-S5.

```
Do2VStats (Sn)
```

### **SetDepend**

Set dependent column. Sets the dependent column for one of the statistical analyses S1-S5 to one of the column C0-C9.


```
SetDepend (Sn, Cn)
```

### **SetIndep**


Set independent column. Sets the independent column for one of the statistical analyses S1-S5 to one of the column C0-C9.

```
SetIndep (Sn, Cn)
```

## **Inference app functions**

The Inference app has a single function that returns the same results as tapping  in the Numeric view of the Inference app. The results depend on the contents of the Inference app Method, Type, and AltHyp.

### **DoInference**

Calculate confidence interval or test hypothesis. Performs the same calculations as tapping  in the Numeric view of the Inference app and stores the results in the appropriate Inference app results.

```
DoInference ()
```

**HypZ1mean**

**HypZ2mean**

**HypZ1prop**

**HypZ2prop**

**HypT1mean**

**HypT2mean**

**ConfZ1mean**

**ConfZ2mean**

**ConfZ1Prop**

**ConfZ2Prop**

**ConfT1mean**

**ConfT2mean**

## Finance app functions

The Finance App uses a set of functions that all reference the same set of Finance app . There are 5 main TVM , 4 of which are mandatory for each of these functions (except DoFinance). There are 3 other that are optional and have default values. These occur as arguments to the Finance app functions in the following set order:

- NbPmt—the number of payments
- IPYR—the annual interest rate
- PV—the present value of the investment or loan
- PMTV—the payment value
- FV—the future value of the investment or loan
- PPYR—the number of payments per year (12 by default)

- CPYR—the number of compounding periods per year (12 by default)
- END—payments made at the end of the period

The arguments PPYR, CPYR, and END are optional; if not supplied, PPYR=12, CPYR=PPYR, and END=1.

### CalcFV

Solves for the future value of an investment or loan.

`CalcFV(NbPmt, IPYR, PV, PMTV[, PPYR, CPYR, END])`

### CalcIPYR

Solves for the interest rate per year of an investment or loan.

`CalcIPYR(NbPmt, PV, PMTV, FV[, PPYR, CPYR, END])`

### CalcNbPmt

Solves for the number of payments in an investment or loan.

`CalcNbPmt(IPYR, PV, PMTV, FV[, PPYR, CPYR, END])`

### CalcPMTV

Solves for the value of a payment for an investment or loan.

`CalcPMTV(NbPmt, IPYR, PV, FV[, PPYR, CPYR, END])`

### CalcPV

Solves for the present value of an investment or loan.

`CalcPV(NbPmt, IPYR, PMTV, FV[, PPYR, CPYR, END])`

### DoFinance

Calculate TVM results. Solves a TVM problem for the variable *TVMVar*. The variable must be one of the Finance app's Numeric view . Performs the same calculation as tapping **Solve** in the Numeric view of the Finance app with *TVMVar* highlighted.

`DoFinance(TVMVar)`

Example:

`DoFinance(FV)` returns the future value of an investment in the same way as tapping **Solve** in the Numeric view of the Finance app with *FV* highlighted.

## Linear Solver app functions

The Linear Solver app has 3 functions that offer the user flexibility in solving 2x2 or 3x3 linear systems of equations.

### Solve2x2

Solves a 2x2 linear system of equations.

`Solve2x2(a, b, c, d, e, f)`

Solves the linear system represented by:

$$ax+by=c$$

$$dx+ey=f$$

### Solve3x3

Solves a 3x3 linear system of equations.

`Solve3x3(a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l)`

Solves the linear system represented by:

$$ax+by+cz=d$$

$$ex+fy+gz=h$$

$$ix+jy+kz=l$$

### LinSolve

Solve linear system. Solves the 2x2 or 3x3 linear system represented by matrix.

`LinSolve (matrix)`

Example:

`LinSolve ([[A, B, C], [D, E, F]])` solves the linear system:

$$ax+by=c$$

$$dx+ey=f$$

## Triangle Solver app functions

The Triangle Solver app has a group of functions which allow solving a complete triangle from the input of three consecutive parts of the triangle. The names of these commands use A to signify an angle, and S to signify a side length. To use these commands, enter three inputs in the specified order given by the command name. These commands all return a list of six items consisting of the three arguments entered with the command and the three unknown values (lengths of sides and measures of angles).

### AAS

AAS Uses the measure of two angles and the length of the non-included side to calculate the measure of the third angle and the lengths of the other two sides. Returns all 6 values.

`AAS (angle, angle, side)`

### ASA

ASA Uses the measure of two angles and the length of the included side to calculate the measure of the third angle and the lengths of the other two sides. Returns all 6 values.

ASA (angle, side, angle)

## SAS

SAS Uses the length of two sides and the measure of the included angle to calculate the length of the third side and the measures of the other two angles. Returns all 6 values.

SAS (side, angle, side)

## SSA

SSA Uses the lengths of two sides and the measure of a non-included angle to calculate the length of the third side and the measures of the other two angles. Returns all 6 values.

SSA (side, side, angle)

## SSS

SSS Uses the lengths of the three sides of a triangle to calculate the measures of the three angles.

SSS (side, side, side)

## DoSolve

Solves the current problem in the Triangle Solver app. The Triangle Solver app must have enough data entered to successfully solve that is, there must be at least three values entered, one of which must be a side length.

DoSolve ()

Example:

In Degree mode, SAS (2, 90, 2) returns {45, 2.82..., 45}.

In the indeterminate case AAS where two solutions may be possible, AAS may return a list of two such lists containing both results.

## Linear Explorer functions

SolveForSlope

SolveForYIntercept

## Quadratic Explorer functions

SOLVE

DELTA

## Geometry app function

### GeoAppFunction

## Common app functions

In addition to the app functions specific to each app, there are two functions common to the following apps:

- Function
- Solve
- Parametric
- Polar
- Sequence
- Advanced Graphing

### CHECK

Checks—that is, selects—the Symbolic view variable  $Symbn$ .  $Symbn$  can be any of the following:

- F0–F9—for the Function app
- E0–E9—for the Solve app
- H1–H5—for the Statistics 1Var app
- S1–S5—for the Statistics 2Var app
- X0/Y0–X9/Y9—for the parametric app
- R0–R9—for the Polar app
- U0–U9—for the Sequence app

CHECK ( $Symbn$ )

Example:

CHECK (F1) checks the Function app Symbolic view variable F1. The result is that F1(X) is drawn in the Plot view and has a column of function values in the Numeric view of the Function app.

### UNCHECK

Unchecks the Symbolic view variable  $Symbn$ .

UNCHECK ( $Symbn$ )

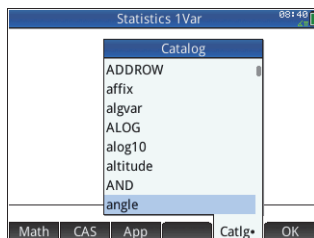
Example:

UNCHECK (R1) unchecks the Polar app Symbolic view variable R1. The result is that R1( $\theta$ ) is not drawn in the Plot

view and does not appear in the Numeric view of the Polar app.

## Ctlg menu

The Catlg menu brings together all the functions and commands available on the HP Prime. However, this section describes the functions and commands that can only be found on the Catlg menu. The



functions and commands that are also on the Math menu are described in “Keyboard functions” on page 285. Those that are also on the CAS menu are described in “CAS menu” on page 298. The functions and commands specific to the Geometry app are described in “Geometry functions and commands” on page 151, and those specific to programming are described in “Program commands” on page 464.

Some of the options on the Catlg menu can also be chosen from relations palette



- ( Inserts opening parenthesis.
- \* Multiplication symbol. Returns the product of numbers or the scalar product of two vectors.
- + Addition symbol. Returns the term-by-term sum of two lists or two matrices, or adds two strings together.
- − Subtraction symbol. Returns the term-by-term subtraction of two lists or two matrices.
- .\* List or matrix multiplication symbol. Returns the term-by-term multiplication of two lists or two matrices.
- ./ List or matrix division symbol. Returns the term-by-term division of two lists or two matrices.
- .^ Returns the list or matrix where each term is the corresponding term of the list or matrix given as argument, raised to the power  $n$ .



- $\cdot^{(Lst \text{ or } Mtrx, Intg(n))}$
- :=** Stores the evaluated expression in the variable. Note that **:=** cannot be used with the graphics G0–G9. See the command **BLIT**.
- `var:=expression`
- <** Strict inequality test. Returns 1 if the inequality is true, and 0 if the inequality is false. Note that more than two objects can be compared. Thus  $6 < 8 < 11$  returns 1 (because it is true) whereas  $6 < 8 < 3$  returns 0 (as it is false).
- <=** Inequality test. Returns 1 if the inequality is true, and 0 if the inequality is false. Note that more than two objects can be compared. See comment above regarding **<**.
- <>** Inequality test. Returns 1 if the inequality is true, and 0 if the inequality is false.
- =** Equality symbol. Connects two members of an equation.
- ==** Equality test. Returns 1 if the equality is true, and 0 if the equality is false.
- >** Strict inequality test. Returns 1 if the inequality is true, and 0 if the inequality is false. Note that more than two objects can be compared. See comment above regarding **<**.
- >=** Inequality test. Returns 1 if the inequality is true, and 0 if the inequality is false. Note that more than two objects can be compared. See comment above regarding **<**.
- ^** Inserts the power symbol.
- a2q** Returns the symbolic expression in quadratic form in the given in **VectVar** of the symmetric matrix **A**.
- `a2q(MtrxA, VectVar)`
- abcuv** Returns the polynomials **U** and **V** such that for polynomials **A**, **B** and **C**,  $PU+QV=R$ . With only polynomials as arguments, the variable used is **x**. With a variable as the final argument, the polynomials are expressions of it.
- `abcuv(Poly(A), Poly(B), Poly(C), [Var])`
- ACOS** Arc cosine:  $\cos^{-1}x$ .
- `ACOS(value)`

- additionally** Used in programming with `assume` to state an additional assumption about a variable.
- ```
assume(n, integer);
additionally(n>5);
```
- algvar** Returns the list of the symbolic variable names used in an expression. The list is ordered by the algebraic extensions required to build the original expression.
- ```
algvar(Expr)
```
- alog10** Returns the solution when 10 is taken to the power of an expression.
- ```
alog10(Expr)
```
- altitude** Draws the altitude through A of the triangle ABC.
- ```
altitude(Pnt or Cplx(A), Pnt or Cplx(B), Pnt or Cplx(C))
```
- AND** Logical And.
- ```
expr1 AND expr2
```
- Example:
- ```
3+1==4 AND 4 < 5 returns 1.
```
- angleatraw** Displays the value of the measure of the angle AB-AC at point z0.
- ```
angleatraw(Pnt(A), Pnt(B), Pnt(C), (Pnt or Cplx(z0)))
```
- Ans** If  $n \geq 0$ , returns the  $(n+1)$ th answer in the command history. If  $n < 0$ , returns the  $(-n)$ th previous answer. If no  $n$  is provided, returns the previous answer.
- ```
ans(Intg(n))
```
- append** Appends an element to a list, sequence or set.
- ```
append((Lst||Seq||Set, Elem))
```
- apply** Returns the result of applying a function to the elements in a list.
- ```
apply(Fnc, Lst)
```
- approx** With one argument, returns the numerical evaluation of it. With a second argument, returns the numerical evaluation of the first argument with the number of significant figures taken from the second argument.

	<code>approx (Expr, [Int])</code>
<b>areaat</b>	Displays the algebraic area at point $z_0$ of a circle or a polygon. A legend is provided. <code>areaat (Polygon, Pnt   Cplx (z0))</code>
<b>areaatraw</b>	Displays the algebraic area at point $z_0$ of a circle or a polygon. <code>areaatraw (Polygone, Pnt   Cplx (z0))</code>
<b>ASIN</b>	Arc sine: $\text{sine}^{-1}x$ . <code>ASIN (value)</code>
<b>assume</b>	Used in programming to state an assumption about a variable. <code>assume (Expr)</code>
<b>ATAN</b>	Arc tan: $\text{tan}^{-1}x$ . <code>ATAN (value)</code>
<b>barycenter</b>	Draws the barycenter of the system consisting of point 1 with weight coefficient 1, point 2 with weight coefficient 2, point 3 with weight coefficient 3, etc. <code>barycenter ([Pnt1, Coeff1], [Pnt2, Coeff2], [Pnt3, Coeff3])</code>
<b>basis</b>	Returns the basis of the linear subspace defined by the set of vectors consisting of vector 1, vector 2, ..., and vector $n$ . <code>basis (Lst (vector1, ..., vectorn))</code>
<b>BEGIN</b>	Used in programming to begin a set of statements that should be taken as a single statement.
<b>bisector</b>	Draws the bisector of the angle AB-AC. <code>bisector ((Pnt (A) or Cplx), (Pnt (B) or Cplx), Pnt (C) or Cplx)</code>
<b>black</b>	Used with <code>display</code> to specify the color of the geometrical object to be displayed.
<b>blue</b>	Used with <code>display</code> to specify the color of the geometrical object to be displayed.
<b>bounded_function</b>	<a href="#"><u>What does this one do?</u></a>
<b>BREAK</b>	Used in programming to interrupt a loop.

**breakpoint** Used in programming to insert an intentional stopping or pausing point.

**canonical\_form** Returns a second degree trinomial in canonical form.  
`canonical_form(Trinom(a*x^2+b*x+c), [Var])`

**cat** Evaluates the objects in a sequence, then returns them concatenated as a string.

`cat(SeqObj)`

**center** Displays a circle with its center indicated.

`center(Crcle)`

**cfactor** Returns an expression factorized over the complex field (on Gaussian integers if there are more than two).

`cfactor(Expr)`

**charpoly** Returns the coefficients of the characteristic polynomial of a matrix. With only one argument, the variable used in the polynomial is  $x$ . With a variable as second argument, the polynomial is an expression of it.

`charpoly(Mtrx, [Var])`

**chrem** Returns the Chinese remainders for two lists of integers.

`chrem(LstIntg(a,b,c...), LstIntg(p,q,r,...))`

**circle** With two arguments, draws a circle. If the second argument is a point, then the distance between it and the point given as the first argument is equal to the diameter the circle. If the second argument is a complex, then the center of the circle is at the point given in the first argument and the absolute value of the second argument is the radius of the circle.

`circle((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or Cplx(B)), [Real(a)], [Real(b)], [Var(A)], [Var(B)])`

**circumcircle** Returns the circumcircle of the triangle ABC.

`circumcircle((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or Cplx(B)), ((Pnt or Cplx(C)))`

**col** Returns the column of index  $n$  of a matrix.

`col(Mtrx,n)`

**colDim** Returns the number of columns of a matrix.

`colDim(Mtrx)`

<b>comDenom</b>	Rewrites a sum of rational fractions as a one rational fraction. The denominator of the one rational fraction is the common denominator of the rational fractions in the original expression. With a variable as second argument, the numerator and denominator are developed according to it.  <code>comDenom(Expr, [Var])</code>
<b>common_perpendicular</b>	Draws the common perpendicular of the lines D1 and D2.  <code>common_perpendicular(Line(D1), Line(D2))</code>
<b>companion</b>	Returns the companion matrix of a polynomial.  <code>companion(Poly, Var)</code>
<b>compare</b>	Compares objects, and returns 1 if <code>type(arg1)&lt;type(arg2)</code> or if <code>type(arg1)=type(arg2)</code> and <code>arg1&lt;arg2</code> , and returns 0 otherwise.  <code>compare(Obj(arg1), Obj(arg2))</code>
<b>complexroot</b>	With two arguments, returns vectors, each of which is either a complex root of the polynomial P with its multiplicity or an interval the boundaries of which are the opposite vertices of a rectangle with sides parallel to the axis and containing a complex root of the polynomial with the multiplicity of this root. With four arguments, returns vectors described as for two arguments, but only for those roots lying in the rectangle with sides parallel to the axis having complex <i>a</i> and complex <i>b</i> as opposite vertices  <code>complexroot(Poly(P), Real(l), [Cplx(a)], [Cplx(b)])</code>
<b>cone</b>	Draws a cone with vertex at A, direction given by v, half angle t, and, if provided, height h and -h.  <code>cone(Pnt(A), Vect(v), Real(t), [Real(h)])</code>
<b>conic</b>	Defines a conic from an expression and draws it. Without a second argument, x and y are taken as the default.  <code>conic(Expr, [LstVar])</code>
<b>contains</b>	Returns 1 if a list or set contains an element, and 0 if the list or set does not contain the element.  <code>contains((Lst(l) or Set(l)), Elem(e))</code>
<b>CONTINUE</b>	Used in programming to bypass remaining statements in the current iteration and begin the next iteration in a loop.
<b>CONVERT</b>	Returns the value of an expression subjected to a command.

`convert (Expr, Cmd)`

**convexhull** Returns the convex hull of a list of two-dimensional points.

`convexhull (Lst)`

**CopyVar** Copies the first variable into the second variable without evaluation.

`CopyVar (Var1, Var2)`

**correlation** Returns the correlation of the elements of a list or matrix.

`correlation (Lst | Mtrx)`

**COS** Cosine:  $\cos x$ .

`COS (value)`

**count** Applies a function to the elements in a list or matrix and returns their sum.

`count (Fnc, (Lst | Mtrx))`

**covariance** Returns the covariance of the elements in a list or matrix.

`covariance (Lst | Mtrx)`

**covariance\_correlation** Returns the list of the covariance and the correlation of the elements of a list or matrix.

`covariance_correlation (Lst | Mtrx)`

**cpartfrac** Returns the result of partial fraction decomposition of a rational fraction in the complex field.

`cpartfrac (RatFrac)`

**crationalroot** Returns the list of complex rational roots of a polynomial without indicating the multiplicity.

`crationalroot (Poly)`

**cube** Draws a cube with a vertex at the line AB and a face in the plane containing A, B, and C.

`cube (Pnt (A), Pnt (B), Pnt (C))`

**cumSum** Returns the list, sequence or string whose elements are the cumulative sum of the original list, sequence or string.

`cumSum (Lst | Seq | Str)`

**cyan** Used with `display` to specify the color of the geometrical object to be displayed.

- cylinder** Draws a cylinder with axis from A in the direction of vector v, with radius r, and, if provided, with height h.
- ```
cylinder (Pnt (A) , Vect (v) , Real (r) , [Real (h) ])
```
- DEBUG** Starts the debugger for the program name you specify. In a program, `DEBUG ( )` will act as a breakpoint and launch the debugger at that location. This allows you to start debugging at a specific location, rather than starting at the beginning of the program.
- ```
debug (program_name)
```
- delcols** Returns the matrix that is matrix A with the columns n1...nk deleted.
- ```
delcols (Mtrx (A) , Interval (n1 . . . nk) | | n1)
```
- delrows** Returns the matrix that is matrix A with the rows n1...nk deleted.
- ```
delrows (Mtrx (A) , Interval (n1 . . . n2) | | n1)
```
- deltalist** Returns the list of the differences between consecutive terms in the original list.
- ```
deltalist (Lst)
```
- Dirac** Returns the value of the Dirac delta function for a real number.
- ```
Dirac (Real)
```
- division\_point** Returns a point M such that for the given a and b,  $(z-a)=k*(z-b)$  and  $z=MA=k*MB$ .
- ```
division_point (Pnt or Cplx (a) , Pnt or Cplx (b) , Cplx (k) )
```
- DO** Used in programming to initiate a step or sequence of steps.
- DrawSlp** Draws the line with slope m that goes through the point (a,b) (i.e.  $y-b=m(x-a)$ ).
- ```
DrawSlp (Real (a) , Real (b) , Real (m) )
```
- e** Enters the mathematical constant e (Euler's number).
- egcd** Returns three polynomials U, V and D such that for two polynomials A and B:
- $$U(x)*A(x)+V(x)*B(x)=D(x)=\text{GCD}(A(x),B(x))$$
- (where  $\text{GCD}(A(x),B(x))$  is the greatest common divisor of polynomials A and B).

The polynomials can be provided in symbolic form or as lists. Without a third argument, it is assumed that the polynomials are expressions of  $x$ . With a variable as third argument, the polynomials are expressions of it.

```
egcd((Poly or Lst(A)), (Poly or Lst(B)), [Var])
```

**eigenvals** Returns the sequence of eigenvalues of a matrix.

```
eigenvals(Mtrx)
```

**eigenvects** Returns the eigenvectors of a diagonalizable matrix..

```
eigenvects(Mtrx)
```

**eigVc** Returns the eigenvectors of a diagonalizable matrix.

```
eigVc(Mtrx)
```

**eigVl** Returns the Jordan matrix associated with a matrix when the eigenvalues are calculable.

```
eigVl(Mtrx)
```

**element** Shows a point on a curve or a real in an interval.

```
element((Curve or Real_interval), (Pnt or Real))
```

**ellipse** With three points (F1, F2, and M) as arguments, draws an ellipse with foci at F1 and F2 that passes through M. With two points and a real (F1, F2, and a) as arguments, draws an ellipse with foci at F1 and F2 that passes through point M such that  $MF1+MF2=2a$ . With one second degree polynomial  $p(x,y)$  as argument, draws the ellipse defined when the polynomial is set to equal 0.

```
ellipse(Pnt(F1), Pnt(F2), (Pnt(M) or Real(a)))
```

or

```
ellipse(p(x, y))
```


**ELSE** Used in programming to introduce the false clause in a conditional statement.

**END** Used in programming to end a set of statements that should be taken as a single statement.

**equilateral\_triangle** With three arguments, draws the equilateral triangle ABC of side AB. With four arguments, draws the equilateral triangle ABC in the plane ABP.

```
equilateral_triangle((Pnt(A) or Cplx), (Pnt(B) or Cplx), [Pnt(P)], [Var(C)])
```



- EVAL** Evaluates an expression.  
`eval (Expr)`
- evalc** Returns an complex expression written in the form `real+i*imag`.  
`evalc (Expr)`
- evalf** With one argument, returns the numerical evaluation of it. With a second argument, returns the numerical evaluation of the first argument with the number of significant figures taken from the second argument.  
`evalf (Expr, [Int])`
- exact** Converts an irrational expression to a rational or real expression.  
`exact (Expr)`
- exbisector** Draws the exterior bisector of the angle AB-AC given by A,B, and C.  
`exbisector((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or Cplx(B)), (Pnt or Cplx(C)))`
- excircle** Draws the excircle of the triangle ABC.  
`excircle((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or Cplx(B)), (Pnt or Cplx(C)))`
- EXP** Returns the solution to the mathematical constant e to the power of an expression.  
`exp (Expr)`
- exponential\_regression** Returns the coefficients (a,b) of  $y=b*a^x$ , where y is the exponential which best approximates the points whose coordinates are the elements in two lists or the rows of a matrix.  
`exponential_regression(Lst||Mtrx(A), [Lst])`
- EXPORT** Export. Exports the function `FunctionName` so that it is globally available and appears on the User menu .  
`EXPORT (FunctionName)`
- EXPR** Parses the string *str* into a number or expression.  
`expr (str)`
- Examples:

`expr ("2+3")` returns 5.

`expr ("X+10")` returns 100.

(If the variable *X* has the value 90)

- ezgcd** Uses the EZ GCD algorithm to return the greatest common divisor of two polynomials with at least two .
- `ezgcd(Poly, Poly)`
- f2nd** Returns a list consisting of the numerator and denominator of an irreducible form of a rational fraction.
- `f2nd(RatFrac)`
- faces** Returns the list of the faces of a polygon or polyhedron. Each face is a matrix of *n* rows and three columns (where *n* is the number of vertices of the polygon or polyhedron).
- `faces(Polygon or Polyedr)`
- factorial** Returns the factorial of an integer or the solution to the gamma function for a non-integer.
- `factorial(Intg(n) || Real(a))`
- fMax** Returns the value of the abscissa at the maximum value of an expression. Without a second argument, it is assumed that it the abscissa is *x*. With a variable as second argument, it is taken as the abscissa.
- `fMax(Expr, [Var])`
- fMin** Returns the value of the abscissa at the minimum value of an expression. Without a second argument, it is assumed that it the abscissa is *x*. With a variable as second argument, it is taken as the abscissa.
- `fMin(Expr, [Var])`
- FOR** Used in programming in loops for which the number of iterations is known.
- format** Returns a real number as a string with the indicated format (f=float, s=scientific, e=engineering).
- `format(Real, Str("f4" || "s5" || "e6"))`
- fracmod** For a given integer *n* (representing a fraction) and an integer *p* (the modulus), returns the fraction *a/b* such that  $n = a/b \pmod{p}$ .
- `fracmod(Intg(n), Intg(p))`

- froot** Returns the list of roots and poles of a rational polynomial. Each root or pole is followed by its multiplicity.
- ```
froot(RatPoly)
```
- fsolve** Returns the numerical solution of an equation or a system of equations. With the optional third argument you can specify a guess for the solution or an interval within which it is expected that the solution will occur. With the optional fourth argument you can name the iterative algorithm to be used by the solver.
- ```
fsolve(Expr, Var, [Guess or Interval], [Method])
```
- function\_diff** Returns the derivative function of a function.
- ```
function_diff(Fnc)
```
- gauss** Using the Gauss algorithm, returns the quadratic form of an expression written as a sum or difference of squares of the given in VectVar.
- ```
gauss(Expr, VectVar)
```
- GETPIX\_C** Returns the color of the pixel *G* with coordinates *x*, *y*.
- ```
GETPIX_P([G], xposition, yposition)
```
- G* can be any of the graphics and is optional. The default is *GO*, the current graphic.
- GF** Creates a Galois Field of characteristic *p* with  $p^n$  elements.
- ```
GF(Intg(p), Intg(n))
```
- gramschmidt** For a basis *B* of a vector subspace, and a function *Sp* that defines a scalar product on this vector subspace, returns an orthonormal basis for *Sp*.
- ```
gramschmidt(Basis(B), ScalarProd(Sp))
```
- green** Used with `display` to specify the color of the geometrical object to be displayed.
- half\_cone** Draws a half-cone with vertex *A*, direction *v*, half angle *t* and, if applicable, height *h*.
- ```
half_cone(Pnt(A), Vect(v), Real(t), [Real(h)])
```
- half\_line** Draws the half-line *AB* with *A* as the origin.
- ```
half_line((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or Cplx(B)))
```
- halftan2hypexp** Returns an expression with  $\sin(x)$ ,  $\cos(x)$ ,  $\tan(x)$  rewritten in terms of  $\tan(x/2)$  and  $\sinh(x)$ ,  $\cosh(x)$ ,  $\tanh(x)$  rewritten in terms of  $\exp(x)$ .

halftan\_hyp2exp(ExprTrig)

**halt** Used in programming to go into step-by-step debugging mode.

**hamdist** Returns the Hamming distance between two integers.

hamdist(Intg, Intg)

**harmonic\_conjugate** Returns the harmonic conjugate of three points or of three parallel or concurrent lines, or returns the line of conjugates of a point with respect to two lines.

harmonic\_conjugate(Line or Pnt, Line or Pnt, Line or Pnt)

**harmonic\_division** With three points and a variable as arguments, returns four points that are in a harmonic division. With three lines and a variable as arguments, returns four lines that are in a harmonic division.

harmonic\_division(Pnt or Line, Pnt or Line, Pnt or Line, Var)

**has** Returns 1 if a variable is in an expression, and returns 0 otherwise.

has(Expr, Var)

**head** Returns the first element of a given vector, sequence or string.

head(Vect or Seq or Str)

**Heaviside** Returns the value of the Heaviside function for a given real (i.e. 1 if  $x \geq 0$ , and 0 if  $x < 0$ ).

Heaviside(Real)

**hexagon** Draws a hexagon of side AB in the plane ABP. The other four corners of the hexagon are named according to the given in the third, fourth, fifth and sixth arguments.

hexagon(Pnt or Cplx(A), Pnt or Cplx(B), [Pnt(P)], [Var(C)], [Var(D)], [Var(E)], [Var(F)])

**homothety** Returns a point A1 such that  $\text{vect}(C, A1) = k * \text{vect}(C, A)$ .

homothety(Pnt(C), Real(k), Pnt(A))

**hyp2exp** Returns an expression with hyperbolic terms rewritten as exponentials.

hyp2exp(ExprHyperb)

- hyperbola** With three points (F1, F2, and M) as arguments, draws an hyperbola with foci at F1 and F2 that passes through M. With two points and a real (F1, F2, and a) as arguments, draws an hyperbola with foci at F1 and F2 that passes through point M such that  $|MF1-MF2|=2a$ . With one second degree polynomial  $p(x,y)$  as argument, draws the hyperbola defined when the polynomial is set to equal 0.
- ```
hyperbola (Focus (F1) , Focus (F2) , (Pnt (M) or
Real (a) ) )
```
- iabcuv** Returns [u,v] such as  $au+bv=c$  for three integers a,b, and c. Note that c must be a multiple of the greatest common divisor of a and b for there to be a solution.
- ```
iabcuv (Intg (a) , Intg (b) , Intg (c) )
```
- ibasis** Returns the basis of the intersection of two vector spaces.
- ```
ibasis (Lst (Vect, .. , Vect) , Lst (Vect, .. , Vect) )
```
- icontent** Returns the greatest common divisor of the integer coefficients of a polynomial.
- ```
icontent (Poly, [Var] )
```
- icosahedron** Draws an icosahedron with center A, vertex B and such that the plane ABC contains one vertex among the five nearest vertices from B.
- ```
icosahedron (Pnt (A) , Pnt (B) , Pnt (C) )
```
- id** Returns the solution to the identity function for an expression.
- ```
id (Seq)
```
- identity** Returns the identity matrix of dimension  $n$ .
- ```
identity (Intg (n) )
```
- iegcd** Returns the extended greatest common divisor of two integers.
- ```
iegcd (Intg, Intg)
```
- IF** Used in programming to begin a conditional statement.
- IFERR** Executes sequence of *commands1*. If an error occurs during execution of *commands1*, execute sequence of *commands2*. Otherwise, execute sequence of *commands3*.
- ```
IFERR commands1 THEN commands2 [ELSE
commands3] END;
```
- IFTE** If a condition is satisfied, returns Expr1, otherwise returns Expr2.

`IFTE(Cond, Expr1, Expr2)`

**igcd** Returns the greatest common divisor of two integers or two rationals or two polynomials of several .

`igcd((Intg(a) or Poly), (Intg(b) or Poly))`

**ilaplace** Returns the inverse Laplace transform of a rational fraction.

`ilaplace(Expr, [Var], [IlapVar])`

**incircle** Draws the incircle of triangle ABC.

`incircle((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or Cplx(B)), (Pnt or Cplx(C)))`

**inter** With two curves or surfaces as arguments, returns the intersection of the curves or surfaces as a vector. With a point as the third argument, returns the intersection of the curves or surfaces close to the point.

`inter(Curve, Curve, [Pnt])`

**interval2center** Returns the center of an interval or object.

`interval2center(Interval or Real)`

**inv** Returns the inverse of an expression or matrix.

`inv(Expr | Mtrx)`

**inversion** Returns point A1 such that A1 is on line CA and  $\text{mes\_alg}(CA1 * CA) = k$ .

`inversion(Pnt(C), Real(k), Pnt(A))`

**iPart** Returns a real number without its fractional part or a list of real numbers each without its fractional part.

`iPart(Real || LstReal)`

**iquorem** Returns the Euclidean quotient and remainder of two integers.

`iquorem(Intg(a), Intg(b))`

**isobarycenter** Draws the isobarycenter of the given points.

`isobarycenter((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx))`

**isopolygon** With two points and  $n > 0$ , draws a regular polygon with vertices at the two points and  $\text{abs}(n)$  vertices in total. With three points and  $n > 0$ , draws a regular polygon with vertices at the first two points and the third point is in the plane of the polygon. With two points and  $n < 0$ , draws a regular polygon with center at the first point and a vertex at the second point.

With three points and  $n < 0$ , draws a regular polygon with center at the first point, vertex at the second point and the third point is a point in the plane of the polygon.

```
isopolygon (Pnt, Pnt, [Pnt], Intg (n))
```

**isosceles\_triangle** Draws the isosceles triangle ABC. With an angle (t) as the third argument, it is equal to angle AB-AC. With a point (P) as the third argument, the triangle is in the plane formed by A, B and P, and angle AB-AC is equal to angle AB-AP. With a list consisting of a point and an angle as the third argument (t,P), the triangle is in the plane formed by A, B and P, and the angle AB-AC is equal to t.

```
isosceles_triangle((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or  
Cplx(B)), (Angle(t) or Pnt(P) or  
Lst(P,t)), [Var(C)])
```

**jacobi\_symbol** Returns the Jacobi symbol of the given integers.

```
jacobi_symbol (Intg, Intg)
```

**KILL** Used in programming to stop a step-by-step execution with debugging.

**laplacian** Returns the Laplacian of an expression with respect to a list of .

```
laplacian (Expr, LstVar)
```

**lcoeff** Returns the coefficient of the term of highest degree of a polynomial. The polynomial can be expressed in symbolic form or as a list.

```
lcoeff (Poly || Lst)
```

**legendre\_symbol** Returns the Legendre symbol of the given integers.

```
legendre_symbol (Intg, Intg)
```

**length** Returns the length of a list, string or sequence.

```
length (Lst or Str or Seq)
```

**lgcd** Returns the greatest common divisor of a list of integers or polynomials.

```
lgcd (Seq or Lst)
```

**lin** Returns an expression with the exponentials linearized.

```
lin (Expr)
```

**line\_segments** Returns the list of the line segments (one line=one segment) of a polyhedron.

```
line_segments (Polygon or Polyedr(P))
```

<b>linear_interpolate</b>	Takes a regular sample from a polygonal line defined by a matrix of two rows.  <code>linear_interpolate(Mtrx, xmin, xmax, xstep)</code>
<b>linear_regression</b>	Returns the coefficients $a$ and $b$ of $y=a*x+b$ , where $y$ is the line that best approximates the points whose coordinates are the elements in two lists or the rows of a matrix.  <code>linear_regression(Lst  Mtrx(A), [Lst])</code>
<b>LineHorz</b>	Draws the horizontal line $y=a$ .  <code>LineHorz(Expr(a))</code>
<b>LineTan</b>	Draws the tangent to $y=f(x)$ at $x=a$ .  <code>LineTan(Expr(f(x)), [Var], Expr(a))</code>
<b>LineVert</b>	Draws the vertical line $x=a$ .  <code>LineVert(Expr(a))</code>
<b>list2mat</b>	Returns a matrix of $n$ columns made by splitting a list into rows each containing $n$ terms. If the number of elements in the list is not divisible by $n$ , then the matrix is completed with zeros.  <code>list2mat(Lst(l), Intg(n))</code>
<b>LN</b>	Returns the natural logarithm of an expression.  <code>ln(Expr)</code>
<b>lname</b>	Returns a list of the <code>ln</code> in an expression.  <code>lname(Expr)</code>
<b>lnexpand</b>	Returns the expanded form of a logarithmic expression.  <code>lnexpand(Expr)</code>
<b>LOCAL</b>	Used in programming to define local <code>.</code>  <code>LOCAL var1, var2, ..varn</code>
<b>locus</b>	<code>locus(M,A)</code> draws the locus of $M$ . <code>locus(d,A)</code> draws the envelope of $d$ . <code>A:=element(C)</code> ( $C$ is a curve).  <code>locus(Pnt, Elem)</code>
<b>LOG</b>	Returns the natural logarithm of an expression.  <code>LOG(Expr)</code>
<b>log10</b>	Returns the log base 10 of an expression.



	$\log_{10}(\text{Expr})$
<b>logarithmic_regression</b>	Returns the coefficients $a$ and $b$ of $y=a*\ln(x)+b$ , where $y$ is the natural logarithm that best approximates the points whose coordinates are the elements in two lists or the rows of a matrix.  <code>logarithmic_regression(Lst Mtrx(A), [Lst])</code>
<b>logb</b>	Returns the logarithm of base $b$ of $a$ .  <code>log(a,b)</code>
<b>logistic_regression</b>	Returns $y, y', C, y'\text{max}, x\text{max}$ , and $R$ , where $y$ is a logistic function (the solution of $y'/y=a*y+b$ ), such that $y(x0)=y0$ and where $[y'(x0),y'(x0+1)...]$ is the best approximation of the line formed by the elements in the list $L$ .  <code>logistic_regression(Lst(L), Real(x0), Real(y0))</code>
<b>lvar</b>	Returns a list of <code>used</code> in an expression.  <code>lvar(Expr)</code>
<b>magenta</b>	Used with <code>display</code> to specify the color of the geometrical object to be displayed.
<b>map</b>	Applies a function to the elements of the list.  <code>map(Lst, Fnc)</code>
<b>mat2list</b>	Returns the list of the terms of a matrix.  <code>mat2list(Mtrx)</code>
<b>matpow</b>	Calculates the $n$ th power of a matrix by jordanization  <code>matpow(Mtrx, Intg(n))</code>
<b>MAXREAL</b>	Returns the maximum real number that the HP Prime is capable of representing: 9.999999999999999E499.
<b>mean</b>	Returns the arithmetic mean of a list ( <a href="#">with the second argument as pound</a> ) or of the columns of a matrix. <a href="#">What does the bit in parentheses mean?</a>  <code>mean(Lst Mtrx, [Lst])</code>
<b>median</b>	Returns the median of a list ( <a href="#">with the second argument as pound</a> ) or of the columns of a matrix. <a href="#">What does the bit in parentheses mean?</a>  <code>median(Lst Mtrx, [Lst])</code>
<b>median_line</b>	Draws the median line through $A$ of the triangle $ABC$ .

```
median_line((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or  
Cplx(B)), (Pnt or Cplx(C)))
```

**member** Tests if an element is in a list or set. If the element is in the list or set, returns the subsequent element. If the element is not in the list or set, returns 0.

```
member(Elem(e), (Lst(l) or Set(l)))
```

**midpoint** Draws the midpoint of the line segment AB.

```
midpoint((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or Cplx(A)))
```

**MINREAL** Returns the minimum real number that the HP Prime is capable of representing:  $1E-99$ .

**MKSA** Converts a unit object into a unit object written with the compatible MKSA base unit.

```
mksa(Unit)
```

**modgcd** Uses the modular algorithm to return the greatest common divisor of two polynomials.

```
modgcd(Poly, Poly)
```

**mRow** Multiplies the row  $n1$  of the matrix A by an expression.

```
mRow(Expr, Mtrx(A), Intg(n1))
```

**mult\_c\_conjugate** If the given complex expression has a complex denominator, returns the expression after both the numerator and the denominator have been multiplied by the complex conjugate of the denominator. If the given complex expression does not have a complex denominator, returns the expression after both the numerator and the denominator have been multiplied by the complex conjugate of the numerator.

```
mult_c_conjugate(Expr)
```

**mult\_conjugate** Takes an expression in which the numerator or the denominator contains a square root. If the denominator contains a square root, returns the expression after both the numerator and the denominator have been multiplied by the complex conjugate of the denominator. If the denominator does not contain a square root, returns the expression after both the numerator and the denominator have been multiplied by the complex conjugate of the numerator.

```
mult_conjugate(Expr)
```

**nDeriv** Returns an approximate value of the derivative of an expression at a given point, using  $f'(x) = (f(x+h) - f(x-h)) / 2 \cdot h$ .

Without a third argument, the value of  $h$  is set to 0.001. With a real as third argument, it is the value of  $h$ .

```
nDeriv (Expr, Var (var) , [Real (h) ])
```

**NEG** Unary minus. Enters the negative sign.

**normal** Returns the expanded irreducible form of an expression.

```
normal (Expr)
```

**normalize** Returns a vector divided by its  $l^2$  norm (where the  $l^2$  norm is the square root of the sum of the squares of the vector's coordinates).

```
normalize (Lst | Cplx)
```

**NOT** Returns the logical inverse of a Boolean expression.

```
not (Boolean)
```

**NTHROOT** Gives the expression for calculating the  $n$ th root of a number.

**octahedron** Draws an octahedron with center A and vertex B and such that the plane ABC contains four vertices.

```
octahedron (Pnt (A) , Pnt (B) , Pnt (C) )
```

**odd** Returns 1 if a given integer is odd, and returns 0 otherwise.

```
odd (Intg (n) )
```

**open\_polygon** Draws a polygonal line with vertices at the elements of the given list.

```
open_polygon (LstPnt | |LstCplx)
```

**OR** Logical Or.

```
expr1 OR expr2
```

Example:

```
3 + 1 == 4 OR 8 < 5 returns 1.
```

**order\_size** Returns the remainder (O term) of a series expansion:  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} (x^a \cdot \text{order\_size}(x)) = 0$  if  $a > 0$ .

```
order_size (Expr)
```

**orthocenter** Shows the orthocenter of the triangle made with three points.

```
orthocenter ((Pnt or Cplx) , (Pnt or Cplx) , (Pnt or Cplx) )
```

**orthogonal** With a point (A) and a line (BC) as arguments, draws the orthogonal plane of the line that passes through the point.

With a point (A) and a plane (BCD) as arguments, draws the orthogonal line of the plane that passes through the point.

```
orthogonal (Pnt (A) , (Line (BC) or Plane (BCD) )
```

**pa2b2** Takes a prime integer  $n$  congruent to 1 modulo 4 and returns  $[a,b]$  such that  $a^2+b^2=n$ .

```
pa2b2 (Intg (n) )
```

**pade** Returns the Pade approximation i.e. a rational fraction  $P/Q$  such that  $P/Q \equiv X^p \pmod{x^{(n+1)}}$  or  $\pmod{N}$  with  $\text{degree}(P) < p$ .

```
pade (Expr (Xpr) , Var (x) , (Intg (n) || Poly (N) ) , Intg (p) )
```

**parabola** With two points (F, A) as arguments, draws a parabola of focus F and top A. With three points (F, A and P) as arguments, draws a parabola with focus F and top A in the plane ABP. With a complex (A) and a real (c) as arguments, draws a parabola of equation  $y = yA + c \cdot (x - xA)^2$ . With one second degree polynomial (P(x,y)) as argument, draws the parabola when the polynomial is set to equal 0.

```
parabola (Pnt (F) || Pnt (xA+i*yA) , Pnt (A) || Real (c) , [Pnt (P) ] )
```

**parallel** With a point and a line as arguments, draws the line through the point that is parallel to the given line. With a point and a plane as arguments, draws the plane through the point that is parallel to the given plane. With a point and two lines as arguments, draws the plane through the point that is parallel to the plane made by the two given lines.

```
parallel (Pnt or Line , Line or Plane , [Line] )
```

**parallelepiped** Draws a parallelepiped with sides AB, AC, and AD. The faces of the parallelepiped are parallelograms.

```
parallelepiped (Pnt (A) , Pnt (B) , Pnt (C) , Pnt (D) )
```

**parallelogram** Draws the parallelogram ABCD such that  $\text{vector}(AB) + \text{vector}(AD) = \text{vector}(AC)$ .

```
parallelogram (Pnt (A) || Cplx , Pnt (B) || Cplx , Pnt (C) || Cplx , [Var (D) ] )
```

**perimeterat** Displays the perimeter at point  $z_0$  of a circle or polygon. A legend is provided.

```
perimeterat (Polygon , Pnt || Cplx (z0) )
```

**perimeteratraw** Displays the perimeter at point  $z_0$  of a circle or polygon.

```
perimeteratraw (Polygon , Pnt || Cplx (z0) )
```

<b>perpen_bisector</b>	Draws the bisection (line or plane) of the segment AB. <code>perpen_bisector((Pnt or Cplx(A)), (Pnt or Cplx(B)))</code>
<b>perpendicular</b>	With a point and a line as arguments, returns the line that is orthogonal to the given line and that passes through the given point. With a line and a plane as arguments, draws the plane that is orthogonal to the given plane and that contains the given line. <code>perpendicular((Pnt or Line), (Line or Plane))</code>
<b>PI</b>	Inserts pi.
<b>PIECEWISE</b>	Takes as arguments pairs consisting of a condition and an expression. Each of these pairs defines a subfunction of the piecewise function and the domain over which it is active. <code>piecewise(Cond1, Expr1, ..., Cond2p, Expr2p, [Expr2p+1])</code>
<b>plane</b>	With three points as arguments, draws the plane made by the three points. With a point and a line as arguments, draws the plane made by the point and the line. With an equation as argument, draws the plane corresponding to the equation in 3D space. <code>plane(Pnt or Eq, [Pnt or Line], [Pnt])</code>
<b>plotinequation</b>	Draws the points of the plane whose coordinates satisfy the inequations of two <code>plotinequation(Expr, [x=xrange, y=yrange], [xstep], [ystep])</code>
<b>plotparam</b>	With a complex $a(t)+i*b(t)$ and a list of values for the variable (t) as arguments, draws the parametric representation of the curve defined by $x=a(t)$ and $y=g(t)$ over the interval specified in the second argument. With a list of expressions of two $(a(u,v), b(u,v), c(u,v))$ and a list of values for the $(u=u0...u1, v=v0...v1)$ as arguments, draws the surface defined by $x=a(u,v)$ , $y=b(u,v)$ , and $z=c(u,v)$ over the intervals specified by in the second argument. <code>plotparam(Cplx   Lst, Var   Lst (Var))</code>
<b>plotpolar</b>	For an expression $f(x)$ , draws the polar curve $r=f(x)$ for $x$ over the interval $VarMin$ to $VarMax$ . <code>plotpolar(Expr, Var, VarMin, VarMax)</code>
<b>plotseq</b>	Displays the $p$ th terms of the sequence $u(0)=a, u(n)=f(u(n-1))$ .

`plotseq(Expr (f (Var)), Var=[a, xm, xM], Intg (p))`

- point** With a complex as argument, plots it. With the coordinates of a point in three dimensions as argument, plots it.
- `point (Cplx || Vect)`
- polar** Returns the line of the conjugated points of A with respect to a circle.
- `polar (Crcle, Pnt or Cplx (A))`
- polar\_coordinates** Returns the list of the norm and of the argument of the affix of a point, complex number or list of rectangular coordinates.
- `polar_coordinates (Pnt or Cplx or LstRectCoord)`
- polar\_point** Returns the point with polar coordinates r and t.
- `polar_point (Real (r), Real (t))`
- pole** Returns the point for which the line is polar with respect to the circle.
- `pole (Crcle, Line)`
- POLYCOEF** Returns the coefficients of a polynomial with roots given in the vector argument.
- `polyCoef (Vect)`
- POLYEVAL** Evaluates a polynomial given by its coefficients at x0.
- `polyEval (Vect, Real (x0))`
- polygon** Draws the polygon whose vertices are elements in a list.
- `polygon (LstPnt || LstCplx)`
- polygonplot** Draws the polygons made by joining the points (xk,yk), where xk=element row k column 0 and yk=element row k column j (for j fixed and for k=0...nrows).
- `polygonplot (Mtrx)`
- polygonscatterplot** Draws the points (xk,yk) and the polygons made by joining the points (xk,yk), where xk=element row k column 0 and yk=element row k column j (for j fixed and for k=0...nrows).
- `polygonscatterplot (Mtrx)`
- polyhedron** Draws a convex polyhedron whose vertices are the points in the sequence.
- `polyhedron (SeqPnt (A, B, C...))`

**polynomial\_regression** Returns the coefficients  $(a_n, \dots, a_1, a_0)$  of  $y = a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$ , where  $y$  is the  $n$ th order polynomial which best approximates the points whose coordinates are the elements in two lists or the rows of a matrix.

```
polynomial_regression(Lst|Mtrx(A), [Lst], Intg(n))
```

**POLYROOT** Returns the zeros of the polynomial given as argument (either as symbolic expression or as a vector of coefficients).

```
POLYROOT(P(x) or Vect)
```

**potential** Returns a function whose gradient is the vector field defined by  $\text{Vect}(V)$  and  $\text{VectVar}$ .

```
potential(Vect(V), VectVar)
```

**power\_regression** Returns the coefficients  $(m, b)$  of  $y = b * x^m$ , where  $y$  is the monomial which best approximates the points whose coordinates are the elements in two lists or the rows of a matrix.

```
power_regression(Lst|Mtrx(A), [Lst])
```

**powerpc** Returns the real number  $d^2 - R^2$ , where  $d$  is the distance between the point and the center of the circle, and  $R$  is the radius of the circle.

```
powerpc(Crcle, Pnt or Cplx)
```

**prepend** Adds an element to the beginning of a list.

```
prepend(Lst, Elem)
```

**primpart** Returns a polynomial divided by the greatest common divisor of its coefficients.

```
primpart(Poly, [Var])
```

**prism** Draws a prism whose base is the plane ABCD and whose edges are parallel to the line made by A and A1.

```
prism(LstPnt([A, B, C, D]), Pnt(A1))
```

**product** With an expression as the first argument, returns the product of solutions when the variable in the expression is substituted from  $a$  to  $b$  with step  $p$ . If  $p$  is not provided, it is taken as 1. With a list as the first argument, returns the product of the values in the list. With a matrix as the first argument, returns the element-by-element product of the matrix.

```
product(Expr|Mst, [Var|Mst], [Intg(a)], [Intg(b)], [Intg(p)])
```

<b>projection</b>	Returns the orthogonal projection of the point on the curve. <code>projection (Curve, Pnt)</code>
<b>propfrac</b>	Returns a fraction or rational fraction $A/B$ simplified to $Q+r/B$ , where $R<B$ or the degree of $R$ is less than the degree of $B$ . <code>propfrac (Frac or RatFrac)</code>
<b>ptayl</b>	Returns the Taylor polynomial $Q$ such as $P(x)=Q(x-a)$ . <code>ptayl (Poly (P (var) ), Real (a) , [Var] )</code>
<b>purge</b>	Unassigns a variable name. <code>purge (Var)</code>
<b>pyramid</b>	With three points as arguments, draws the pyramid with a face in the plane of the three points and with two vertices at the first and second points. With four points as arguments, draws the pyramid with vertices at the four points. <code>pyramid (Pnt (A) , Pnt (B) , Pnt (C) , [Pnt (D) ] )</code>
<b>q2a</b>	Returns the matrix of a quadratic form with respect to the given in VectVar. <code>q2a (QuadraForm, VectVar)</code>
<b>quadrilateral</b>	Draws the quadrilateral ABCD. <code>quadrilateral (Pnt (A)    Cplx, Pnt (B)    Cplx, Pnt (C)    Cplx, Pnt (D)    Cplx)</code>
<b>quantile</b>	Returns the quantile of the elements of a list corresponding to $p$ ( $0<p<1$ ). <code>quantile (Lst (l) , Real (p) )</code>
<b>quartile1</b>	Returns the first quartile of the elements of a list or the columns of a matrix. <code>quartile1 (Lst   Mtrx, [Lst] )</code>
<b>quartile3</b>	Returns the third quartile of the elements of a list or the columns of a matrix. <code>quartile3 (Lst   Mtrx, [Lst] )</code>
<b>quartiles</b>	Returns the minimum, first quartile, median, third quartile, and maximum of the elements of a list or the columns of a matrix. <code>quartiles (Lst   Mtrx, [Lst] )</code>
<b>quorem</b>	Returns the quotient and remainder of the Euclidean division (by decreasing power) of two polynomials. The polynomials



can be expressed as vectors of their coefficients or in symbolic form.

```
quorem((Vect or Poly), (Vect or Poly), [Var])
```

**QUOTE** Returns an expression unevaluated.

```
quote (Expr)
```

**radical\_axis** Returns the line which is the locus of points at which tangents drawn to two circles have the same length.

```
radical_axis (Circle, Circle)
```

**randexp** Returns a random real according to the exponential distribution of parameter  $a > 0$ .

```
randexp (Real (a))
```

**randperm** Returns a random permutation of  $[0, 1, 2, \dots, n-1]$ .

```
randperm (Intg (n))
```

**ratnormal** Rewrites an expression as an irreducible rational fraction.

```
ratnormal (Expr)
```

**reciprocation** Returns the list where a point is replaced with its polar or a line is replaced with its pole with respect to the circle.

```
reciprocation (Circle, Lst (Pnt, Line))
```

**rectangle** Draws the rectangle ABCD, where, if  $k$  is provided,  $AD = k \cdot AB$  if  $k > 0$ , and where, if  $k$  and  $P$  are provided, the rectangle is in the plane ABP with  $AD = AP$  and  $AD = k \cdot AB$ .

```
rectangle (Pnt (A) || Cplx, Pnt (B) || Cplx, Real (k) ||  
Pnt (P) || Lst (P, k), [Var (D)], [Var (C)])
```

**rectangular\_coord  
inat** Returns the list of the abscissas and of the ordinates of points given by a list of their polar coordinates.

```
rectangular_coordinates (Lst PolCoord)
```

**red** Used with `display` to specify the color of the geometrical object to be displayed.

**reduced\_conic** Takes a conic expression and a vector of , and returns the origin of the conic, the matrix of a basis in which the conic is reduced, 0 or 1 (0 if the conic is degenerate), the reduced equation of the conic, and a vector of the conic's parametric equations.

```
reduced_conic (Expr, [LstVar])
```

- ref** Returns the solution to a system of linear equations written in matrix form.
- ```
ref (Mtrx(M))
```
- reflection** With a line (D) and a point (C) as arguments, returns the reflection of the point across the line (i.e. the line is taken as a line of symmetry). With a point (A) and a curve (C) as arguments, returns the reflection of the curve about the point (i.e. the point is taken as the point of symmetry).
- ```
reflection((Pnt(A) or Line(D)), (Pnt(C) or Curve(C)))
```
- remove** Returns a list with the elements that satisfy the Boolean function removed.
- ```
remove(FncBool(f) || e, Lst(l))
```
- reorder** Reorders the in an expression according to the order given in LstVar.
- ```
reorder(Expr, LstVar)
```
- REPEAT** Used in programming to indicate a statement or statements that should be repeated until a given condition is true.
- residue** Returns the residue of an expression at  $a$ .
- ```
residue(Expr, Var(v), Cplx(a))
```
- restart** Purges all the .
- ```
restart(NULL)
```
- resultant** Returns the resultant (i.e. the determinant of the Sylvester matrix) of two polynomials.
- ```
resultant(Poly, Poly, Var)
```
- RETURN** Used in programming return a value of a function at a certain point.
- ```
return(Expr)
```
- revlist** Returns a list with the elements in reverse order.
- ```
revlist(Lst)
```
- rhombus** With two points (A and B) and an angle ( $\alpha$ ) as arguments, draws the rhombus ABCD such that the angle AB-AD= $\alpha$ . With three points as arguments (A, B and P), draws the rhombus ABCD in the plane ABP such that angle AB-AD=angle AB-AP.
- ```
rhombus(Pnt(A) || Cplx, Pnt(B) || Cplx, Angle(a) || Pnt(P) || Lst(P, a), [Var(C)], [Var(D)])
```

**right\_triangle** With two points (A and B) and a real (k) as arguments, draws right-angled triangle such ABC such that  $AC=k*AB$ . With three points (A, B and P) as arguments, draws the right-angled triangle ABC in the plane ABP and such that  $AC=AP$ .

```
right_triangle((Pnt(A) or Cplx), (Pnt(B) or
Cplx), (Real(k) or Pnt(P) or
Lst(P, k)), [Var(C)])
```

**romberg** Uses Romberg's method to return the approximate value of the integral of the expression over the interval a to b.

```
romberg(Expr(f(x)), Var(x), Real(a), Real(b))
```

**rotation** With a point (B), an angle (a1) and another point (A) as arguments, returns the result of rotating the second point by the angle about the center of rotation given by the first point. With a line (Dr3), an angle (a1) and a curve as arguments, returns the result of rotating the curve by the angle about the axis of rotation given by the line.

```
rotation((Pnt(B) or Cplx or
Dr3), Angle(a1), (Pnt(A) or Curve))
```

**row** Returns the row n or the sequence of the rows n1...n2 of the matrix A.

```
row(Mtrx(A), Intg(n) || Interval(n1..n2))
```

**rowAdd** Returns the matrix obtained from matrix A after the n2th row is replaced by the sum of the n1th row and the n2th row.

```
rowAdd(Mtrx(A), Intg(n1), Intg(n2))
```

**rowDim** Returns the number of rows of a matrix.

```
rowDim(Mtrx)
```

**rowSwap** Returns the matrix obtained from matrix A after the n1th row and the n2th row are swapped.

```
rowSwap(Mtrx(A), Intg(n1), Intg(n2))
```

**rsolve** Returns the values of a recurrent sequence or a system of recurrent sequences.

```
rsolve((Expr or LstExpr), (Var or
LstVar), (InitVal or LstInitVal))
```

**segment** Draws a line segment connecting two points.

```
segment((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or
Cplx), [Var], [Var])
```

- select** Returns a list with only the elements that satisfy the Boolean function remaining.
- ```
select (FuncBool (f) , Lst (l) )
```
- seq** With an expression and two integers (a and b) as arguments, returns the sequence obtained when the expression is evaluated within the interval given by a and b. With an expression and three integers (a, b and p) as arguments, returns the sequence obtained when the expression is evaluated with step of p within the interval given by a and b. With an expression and three integers (n, a and b) as arguments, returns the sequence obtained when the expression is evaluated n times of equal spacing within the interval given by a and b.
- ```
seq (Expr, Intg (n) || Var (var) , [Intg (a) ] , [Intg (b) ] , [Intg (p) ] )
```
- seqsolve** Returns the value of a recurrent sequence or a system of recurrent sequences ( $u_{\{n+1\}}=f(u_n)$  or  $u_{\{n+2\}}=f(u_{\{n+1\}},u_n)$ ...).
- ```
seqsolve ((Expr or LstExpr) , (Var or LstVar) , (InitVal or LstInitVal) )
```
- shift\_phase** Returns the result of applying a phase shift of  $\pi/2$  to a trigonometric expression.
- ```
shift_phase (Expr)
```
- signature** Returns the signature of a permutation.
- ```
signature (Permut)
```
- similarity** With two points (B and A), a real (k) and an angle (a1) as arguments, returns a point that is the point similar to A across center B with angle a1 and with scaling coefficient k. With an axis (Dr3), a real (k) an angle (a1) and a point (A) as arguments, returns a point that is the point similar to A across the axis given by the line with angle a1 and with scaling coefficient k.
- ```
similarity (Pnt (B) or Dr3, Real (k) , Angle (a1) , Pnt (A) )
```
- simult** Returns the solution to a system of linear equations or several systems of linear equations presented in matrix form. In other words, in the case of one system of linear equations, takes a matrix A and a column matrix B, and returns column matrix X such  $A*X=B$ .
- SIN** Sine:  $\sin x$ .

`SIN(value)`

**sincos** Returns an expression with the complex exponentials rewritten in terms of sin and cos.

`sincos(Expr)`

**single\_inter** With two curves or two surfaces as arguments, returns one of the intersections of the two curves or surfaces. With two curves or surfaces and a point or list of points as arguments, returns an intersection of the curves or surfaces that is nearest to the point or not in the list of points.

`single_inter(Curve, Curve, [Pnt(A) | LstPnt(L)])`

**slopeat** Displays the value at point `z0` of the slope of the line or segment `d`. A legend is provided.

`slopeat(Line, Pnt | Cplx(z0))`

**slopeatraw** Displays the value at point `z0` of the slope of the line or segment `d`.

`slopeatraw(Line, Pnt | Cplx(z0))`

**sphere** With two points as arguments, draws the sphere of diameter made by the line from one point to another. With a point and a real as arguments, draws the sphere with center at the point and radius given by the real.

`sphere((Pnt or Vect), (Pnt or Real))`

**spline** Returns the natural spline through the points given by two lists. The polynomials in the spline are in variable `x` and of degree `d`.

`spline(Lst(lx), Lst(ly), Var(x), Intg(d))`

**sqrt** Returns the square root of an expression.

`sqrt(Expr)`

**square** Draws the square of side `AB` in the plane `ABP`.

`square((Pnt(A) or Cplx), (Pnt(B) or Cplx), [Pnt(P), Var(C), Var(D)])`

**stddev** Returns the standard deviance of the elements in a list with the second argument as pound or returns the list of standard deviances of the columns of a matrix. What does the "pound" mean?

`stddev(Lst | Mtrx, [Lst])`

<b>stddevp</b>	Returns the population standard deviation of the elements in a list with the <a href="#">second argument as pound</a> or returns the list of standard deviations of the columns of a matrix. <a href="#">What does the "pound" mean?</a>
	<code>stddevp(Lst Mtrx, [Lst])</code>
<b>STEP</b>	Used in programming to indicate the step in an iteration or the step size of an incrementation.
<b>sto</b>	Stores a real or string in a variable.
	<code>sto((Real or Str),Var)</code>
<b>sturmseq</b>	Returns the Sturm sequence for a polynomial or a rational fraction.
	<code>sturmseq(Poly, [Var])</code>
<b>subMat</b>	Extracts from a matrix a sub matrix with first element= $A[n1,n2]$ and last element= $A[n3,n4]$ .
	<code>subMat(Mtrx(A), Intg(n1), Intg(n2), Intg(n3), Intg(n4))</code>
<b>suppress</b>	Returns a list without the nth element.
	<code>suppress(Lst, Intg(n))</code>
<b>surd</b>	Returns an expression to the power of $1/n$ .
	<code>surd(Expr, Intg(n))</code>
<b>sylvester</b>	Returns the Sylvester matrix of two polynomials.
	<code>sylvester(Poly, Poly, Var)</code>
<b>table</b>	Defines an array where the indexes are strings or real numbers.
	<code>table(SeqEqual(index_name=element_value))</code>
<b>tail</b>	Returns a list or sequence or string without its first element.
	<code>tail(Lst or Seq or Str)</code>
<b>TAN</b>	Tangent: $\tan(x)$ .
	<code>tan(value)</code>
<b>tan2cossin2</b>	Returns an expression with $\tan(x)$ rewritten as $(1-\cos(2*x))/\sin(2*x)$ .
	<code>tan2cossin2(Expr)</code>
<b>tan2sincos2</b>	Returns an expression with $\tan(x)$ rewritten as $\sin(2*x)/(1+\cos(2*x))$ .

`tan2sincos2 (Expr)`

**tangent** With a curve as argument, draws the tangent line to the curve at point A. With a surface as argument, draws the tangent plane to the surface at point A.

`tangent (Curve or surface(C), Pnt(A))`

**THEN** Used in programming to introduce a statement dependent on a conditional statement.

**TO** Used in programming in a loop when expressing the range of values of a variable for which a statement should be executed.

**translation** With a vector and a point as arguments, returns the point translated by the vector. with two points as arguments, returns the second point translated by the vector from the origin to the first point.

`translation (Vect, Pnt(C))`

**transpose** Returns a matrix transposed (without conjugation).

`transpose (Mtrx)`

**triangle** Draws a triangle with vertices at the three points.

`triangle ((Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx), (Pnt or Cplx))`

**trunc** Returns a value or a list of values truncated to n decimal places. If n is not provided, it is taken as 0. Accepts complex numbers.

`trunc (Real | LstReal, Int(n))`

**tsimplify** Returns an expression with transcendentals rewritten as complex exponentials.

`tsimplify (Expr)`

**type** Returns the type of an expression (e.g. list, string).

`type (Expr)`

**UFACTOR** Factorizes a unit in a unit object.

`ufactor (Unit, Unit)`

**unapply** Returns the function defined by an expression and a variable.

`unapply (Expr, Var)`

**UNTIL** Used in programming to indicate the conditions under which a statement should stop being executed.

<b>USIMPLIFY</b>	Simplifies a unit in a unit object. <code>usimplify(Unit)</code>
<b>valuation</b>	Returns the valuation (degree of the term of lowest degree) of a polynomial. With only a polynomial as argument, the valuation returned is for $x$ . With a variable as second argument, the valuation is performed for it. <code>valuation(Poly, [Var])</code>
<b>variance</b>	Returns the variance of a list <u>with the second argument as pound</u> or the list of variances of the columns of a matrix. <code>variance(Lst   Mtrx, [Lst])</code>
<b>vector</b>	With one point as argument, defines a vector from the origin to the point. With two points as arguments, defines a vector from the first point to the second point. With a point and a vector as arguments, defines a vector beginning from the point and with direction and magnitude of the vector. <code>vector(Pnt, Pnt   Pnt, Vect)</code>
<b>vertices</b>	Returns the list of the vertices of a polygon or polyhedron. <code>vertices(Polygon or Polyedr)</code>
<b>vertices_abca</b>	Returns the closed list $[A, B, \dots A]$ of the vertices of a polygon or polyhedron. <code>vertices_abca(Polygon or Polyedr)</code>
<b>vpotential</b>	Returns $U$ such as $\text{curl}(U)=V$ . <code>vpotential(Vect(V), LstVar)</code>
<b>when</b>	Used to introduce a conditional statement.
<b>WHILE</b>	Used to indicate the conditions under which a statement should be executed.
<b>XOR</b>	Exclusive or. Returns 1 if the first expression is true and the second expression is false or if the first expression is false and the second expression is true. Returns 0 otherwise. <code>xor(Expr1, Expr2)</code>
<b>yellow</b>	Used with <code>display</code> to specify the color of the geometrical object to be displayed.
<b>zip</b>	Applies a bivariate function to the elements of two lists. Without the default value its length is the minimum of the lengths of the two lists and the shorter list is padded with the default value.



`zip(Fnc2d(f),Lst(l1),Lst(l2),[Val(default)])`

| Substitutes a value for a variable in an expression.

| (`Expr`, `Var(v1)=value(a1) [,v2=a2, ...]`)

2 Returns the square of an expression.

$(\text{Expr})^2$

$\pi$  Inserts pi.

10^ [What does this one do?](#)

$\partial$  Inserts a template for a partial derivative expression.

$\Sigma$  Inserts a template for a summation expression.

- Inserts a minus sign.

$\sqrt{\quad}$  Inserts a square root sign.

$\int$  Inserts a template for an antiderivative expression.

$\neq$  Inserts a not-equal-to sign.

$\leq$  Inserts a less-than-or-equal-to sign.

$\geq$  Inserts a greater-than-or-equal-to sign.

► Evaluates the expression then stores the result in variable `var`. Note that ► cannot be used with the graphics G0–G9. See the command `BLIT`.

`expression ► var`

$i$  Inserts the imaginary number  $i$ .

<sup>-1</sup> Returns the inverse of an expression.

$(\text{Expr})^{-1}$

## Creating your own functions

You can create your own function by writing a program (see chapter 26) or by using the simpler `DEFINE` functionality. Functions you create yourself appear on the User menu (one of the Toolbox menus).

Suppose you wanted to create the function `SINCOS(A,B)=SIN(A)+COS(B)+C`.

1. Press **Shift** **x t 0 n** (Define).
2. In the **Name** field, enter a name for the function—for example, SINCOS—and tap **OK**.
3. In the **Function** field, enter the function.



New fields appear below your function, one for each potential parameter it will take. You need to decide which ones are to be parameters when the function is called. In this example, we'll make A and B parameters. The value of C will be provided by global variable C (which by default is zero).

4. Make sure that **A** and **B** are selected and **C** is not.
5. Tap **OK**.

You can run your function by entering it on the entry line in Home view, or by selecting it from the USER menu. You enter the value for each variable you chose to be a parameter. In this example, we chose A and B to be parameters. Thus you might enter SINCOS(0.5, 0.75).

# Variables

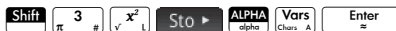
Variables are placeholders for objects (such as function definitions, numbers, matrices, the results of calculations, and the like). Some are built-in and cannot be deleted. But you can also create your own.

Many built-in variables are automatically assigned objects as a result of some operation (such as defining a polar function, performing a calculation, or setting an option). For example, if you define a polar function, that definition is assigned to variable named  $R_0$  to  $R_n$ . If you use the Function app to find the slope of a curve at some  $x$ -value, the slope is assigned to a variable named `Slope`. And if you choose *binary* as the base for integer arithmetic, a built-in variable named `Base` is given the value 0. If you had chosen octal instead, `Base` would have been given the value 1.

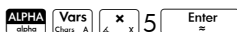
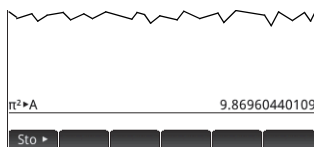
## Creating variables

Variables you create are assigned whatever value you give them. You can assign a value to certain built-in variables (such as the Home variables). You can also create your own variables. Example 1 below gives an example of assigning a value to a built-in variable, and example 2 illustrates how to create a variable and assign a value to it

**Example 1:** To assign  $\pi^2$  to the built-in variable A:



Your stored value appears as shown at the right. If you then wanted to multiply your stored value by 5, you could enter:



To assign an object to a built-in variable, it is important that you choose a variable that matches the type of object. For example, you cannot assign a complex number to the variables A through Z. These are reserved for real numbers. Complex numbers need to be assigned to variables Z0 through Z9. Likewise, matrices can only be assigned to the built-in variables M0 through M9. See “Home variables” on page 377 for more information.

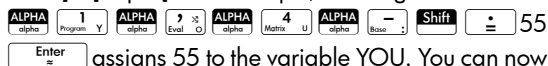
You can also take advantage of the built-in variables in CAS view. However, the built-in CAS variables must be entered in lowercase:  $a-z$ .

**Example 2:** You can create your own variables—in Home view and in CAS view. For example, suppose you want to create a variable called ME and assign  $\pi^2$  to it. You would enter:



A message appears asking if you want to create a variable called ME. Tap **OK** or press **Enter** to confirm your intention. You can now use that variable in subsequent calculations:  $ME * 3$  will yield 303, for example.

You can also create variables by entering [variable name]=[object]. For example, entering



**Enter** assigns 55 to the variable YOU. You can now use that variable in subsequent calculations:  $YOU+60$  will yield 115, for example.

## Using variables to change settings

Just as you can assign values to variables you create yourself, you can assign values to certain built-in variables. You could modify Home settings on the **Home Settings** screen (**Shift** **Settings**). But you can also modify a Home setting from Home view by assigning a value to the variable that represents that setting. For example, entering  $0$  **Storable** **Base** **Enter** in Home view forces the setting for the integer base to binary. (A value of 1 would force it to octal, 2 to decimal, and 3 to hex.) Another example: you can change the angle measure setting from radians to

degrees by entering 1 **Sto** **HAngle** **Enter** in Home view. Entering 0 **Sto** **HAngle** **Enter** forces the setting to return to radians.

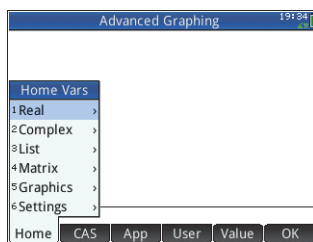
[\[What are the allowable attributes for the other settings?\]](#)

## Retrieving variables

You can see what value has been assigned to a variable—built-in or user-defined—by entering its name in Home view and pressing **Enter**. You can enter the name letter by letter, or choose the variable from the Variables menu.

The Variables menu is opened by tapping **Vars** (Vars A).

There are four sub-menus, covering Home, CAS, app, and user variables. Home variables are the built-in variables set by what you



do in Home view or by the settings you choose on the **Home Settings** screen. Some examples are **HAngle** and **Base**. App variables are also built-in, but they are set by what you do in an app. Some examples are **XMax** and **Slope**. The CAS variables and user variables are those you create yourself.

If you want to retrieve just the value of a variable and not its name, tap **Value** before you select the variable from a Variables menu.

## Qualifying variables

Some variables are common to more than one app. For example, the Function app has a variable named **Xmin**, but so too does the Polar app, the Parametric app, the Sequence app, and the Solve app. Likewise, the  **$\Sigma X$**  variable is common to both the Statistics 1Var and Statistics 2Var apps. Although named identically, these variables can hold different values.



If you attempt to retrieve a variable that is used in more than one app by entering just its name in Home view, you will get the value that was *last* calculated for that variable. This might not

Variable	Value
ΣX	185
Statistics_2Var.ΣX	232

be the value that you want. To ensure you get the right value, you need to qualify the variable with the name of the app that generated it. In the example at the right, the variable  $\Sigma X$  was entered, but it returned the value of that variable as it was calculated in the Statistics 1Var app (the first entry). However, it was the value of the variable as it was calculated in the Statistics 2Var app that was sought. To retrieve that value, the variable name had to be qualified by prefixing it with the name of the app that generated it: `Statistics_2Var` followed by a period (the second entry).



Note the syntax required:

```
app_name.variable_name
```

Spaces are not allowed in an app name and must be represented by the underscore character:  . The app can be a built-in app or one you have created based on a built-in app. The name of a built-in variable must match a name listed in the Home variables or App variables tables below.

---






**Tip**

Non-standard characters in variables name—such as  $\Sigma$  and  $\sigma$ —can be entered by selecting them from the special symbols palette:  .



---

# Home variables

The Home variables are accessed by pressing  and tapping .

Category	Available names
Real	A to Z and $\theta$ For example, 7.45  A
Complex	Z0 to Z9 For example, $2+3 \times i$  Z1 or (2,3)  Z1 (depending on your Complex number settings)
List	L0 to L9 For example, {1,2,3}  L1.
Matrix	M0 to M9 Store matrices and vectors in these variables. For example, [[1,2],[3,4]]  M1.
Graphics	G0 to G9
Settings	HAngle HFormat HDigits HComplex Date Time Language Entry Integer Base Bits Signed

## App variables

The app variables are accessed by pressing  and tapping . They are grouped below by app. (You can find them grouped by view—Symbolic, Numeric, Plot,—in “Variables and Programs” on page 492.)

Note that if you have customized a built-in app, your app will appear on the App variables menu under the name you gave it. You access the variables in a customized app in the same way that you access the variables in built-in apps.

## Function app variables

Category	Names	
Results <sup>a</sup>	Area	Root
	Extremum	Slope
	Isect	
Symbolic	F1	F6
	F2	F7
	F3	F8
	F4	F9
	F5	F0
Plot	Axes	Xmin
	Cursor	Xtick
	GridDots	Xzoom
	GridLines	Ymax
	Labels	Ymin
	Method	Ytick
	Recenter	Yzoom
	Xmax	
Numeric	NumStart	NumType
	NumStep	NumZoom
	Automatic	BuildYourOwn
	NumIndep	
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat



- a. The Results variables contain the last value found by the Signed Area, Extremum, Intersection, Root, and Slope functions respectively.

## Geometry app variables

Category	Names	
Numeric	XMin YMin	XMax
Modes	AAngle AComplex	ADigits AFormat

## Spreadsheet app variables

Category	Names	
Numeric	ColWidth Row Cell	RowHeight Col
Modes	AAngle AComplex	ADigits AFormat

## Advanced Graphing app variables

Category	Names	
Symbolic	S1	S6
	S2	S7
	S3	S8
	S4	S9
	S5	S0
Plot	Axes	Xmin
	Cursor	Xtick
	GridDots	Xzoom
	GridLines	Ymax
	Labels	Ymin
	Method	Ytick
	Recenter	Yzoom
	Xmax	
Numeric	NumXStart	NumType
	NumYStart	NumXZoom
	NumXStep	NumYZoom
	NumYStep	Automatic
	NumIndep	BuildYourOwn
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Solve app variables

Category	Names	
Symbolic	E1	E6
	E2	E7
	E3	E8
	E4	E9
	E5	E0
Plot	Axes	Xmin
	Cursor	Xtick
	GridDots	Xzoom
	GridLines	Ymax
	Labels	Ymin
	Method	Ytick
	Recenter	Yzoom
	Xmax	

Category	Names (Continued)	
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Statistics 1Var app variables

Category	Names	
Results	Nbltem	$\Sigma X$
[explained below]	Min	$\Sigma X^2$
	Q1	MeanX
	Med	sX
	Q3	$\sigma X$
	Max	serrX
Symbolic	H1	H1Type
	H2	H2Type
	H3	H3Type
	H4	H4Type
	H5	H5Type
Plot	Axes	Xmax
	Cursor	Xmin
	GridDots	Xtick
	GridLines	Xzoom
	Hmin	Ymax
	Hmax	Ymin
	Hwidth	Ytick
	Labels	Yzoom
	Recenter	
Numeric	D1	D6
	D2	D7
	D3	D8
	D4	D9
	D5	D0
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Results

<b>NbItem</b>	Contains the number of data points in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b>Min</b>	Contains the minimum value of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b>Q1</b>	Contains the value of the first quartile in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b>Med</b>	Contains the median in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b>Q3</b>	Contains the value of the third quartile in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b>Max</b>	Contains the maximum value in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b><math>\Sigma X</math></b>	Contains the sum of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b><math>\Sigma X^2</math></b>	Contains the sum of the squares of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b>MeanX</b>	Contains the mean of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b>sX</b>	Contains the sample standard deviation of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b><math>\sigma X</math></b>	Contains the population standard deviation of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).
<b>serrX</b>	Contains the standard error of the data set in the current 1-variable analysis (H1-H5).

# Statistics 2Var app variables

Category	Names	
Results [explained below]	Nbltem	sX
	Corr	$\sigma_X$
	CoefDet	serrX
	sCov	MeanY
	$\sigma_{Cov}$	$\Sigma_Y$
	$\Sigma_{XY}$	$\Sigma_{Y^2}$
	MeanX	sY
	$\Sigma_X$	$\sigma_Y$
	$\Sigma_{X^2}$	serrY
	Symbolic	S1
S2		S2Type
S3		S3Type
S4		S4Type
S5		S5Type
Plot	Axes	Xmin
	Cursor	Xtick
	GridDots	Xzoom
	GridLines	Ymax
	Labels	Ymin
	Method	Ytick
	Recenter	Yzoom
	Xmax	
Numeric	C1	C6
	C2	C7
	C3	C8
	C4	C9
	C5	C0
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Results

### Nbltem

Contains the number of data points in the current 2-variable analysis (S1-S5).

<b>Corr</b>	Contains the correlation coefficient from the latest calculation of summary statistics. This value is based on the linear fit only, regardless of the fit type chosen.
<b>CoefDet</b>	Contains the coefficient of determination from the latest calculation of summary statistics. This value is based on the fit type chosen.
<b>sCov</b>	Contains the sample covariance of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
$\sigma$ <b>Cov</b>	Contains the population covariance of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
$\Sigma$ <b>XY</b>	Contains the sum of the X·Y products for the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
<b>MeanX</b>	Contains the mean of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
$\Sigma$ <b>X</b>	Contains the sum of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
$\Sigma$ <b>X2</b>	Contains the sum of the squares of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
<b>sX</b>	Contains the sample standard deviation of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
$\sigma$ <b>X</b>	Contains the population standard deviation of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
<b>serrX</b>	Contains the standard error of the independent values (X) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
<b>MeanY</b>	Contains the mean of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).
$\Sigma$ <b>Y</b>	Contains the sum of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1-S5).

$\Sigma Y^2$	Contains the sum of the squares of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).
$s_Y$	Contains the sample standard deviation of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).
$\sigma_Y$	Contains the population standard deviation of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).
$serr_Y$	Contains the standard error of the dependent values (Y) of the current 2-variable statistical analysis (S1–S5).

## Inference app variables

Category	Names
Results [explained below]	Result TestScore TestValue Prob CritScore CritVal1 CritVal2 DF
Symbolic	AltHyp Method Type
Numeric	Alpha Conf Mean1 Mean2 n1 n2 $\mu_0$ $\pi_0$ Pooled s1 s2 $\sigma_1$ $\sigma_2$ x1 x2
Modes	AAngle AComplex ADigits AFormat

## Results

<b>CritScore</b>	Contains the value of the Z- or t-distribution associated with the input $\alpha$ -value
------------------	--

<b>CritVal1</b>	Contains the lower critical value of the experimental variable associated with the negative <code>TestScore</code> value which was calculated from the input $\alpha$ -level.
<b>CritVal2</b>	Contains the upper critical value of the experimental variable associated with the positive <code>TestScore</code> value which was calculated from the input $\alpha$ -level.
<b>DF</b>	Contains the degrees of freedom for the t-tests.
<b>Prob</b>	Contains the probability associated with the <code>TestScore</code> value.
<b>Result</b>	For hypothesis tests, contains 0 or 1 to indicate rejection or failure to reject the null hypothesis.
<b>TestScore</b>	Contains the Z- or t-distribution value calculated from the hypothesis test or confidence interval inputs.
<b>TestValue</b>	Contains the value of the experimental variable associated with the <code>TestScore</code> .



## Parametric app variables

Category	Names	
Symbolic	X1	X6
	Y1	Y6
	X2	X7
	Y2	Y7
	X3	X8
	Y3	Y8
	X4	X9
	Y4	Y9
	X5	X0
	Y5	Y0
	Plot	Axes
Cursor		Xmax
GridDots		Xmin
GridLines		Xtick
Labels		Xzoom
Method		Ymax
Recenter		Ymin
Tmin		Ytick
Tmax		Yzoom
Numeric	Automatic	NumStep
	BuildYourOwn	NumType
	NumIndep	NumZoom
	NumStart	
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Polar app variables

Category	Names	
Symbolic	R1	R6
	R2	R7
	R3	R8
	R4	R9
	R5	R0

Category	Names (Continued)	
Plot	$\theta$ min	Recenter
	$\theta$ max	Xmax
	$\theta$ step	Xmin
	Axes	Xtick
	Cursor	Xzoom
	GridDots	Ymax
	GridLines	Ymin
	Labels	Ytick
	Method	Yzoom
Numeric	Automatic	NumStep
	BuildYourOwn	NumType
	NumIndep	NumZoom
	NumStart	
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Finance app variables

Category	Names	
Numeric	CPYR	NbPmt
	BEG	PMTV
	FV	PPYR
	IPYR	PV
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Linear Solver app variables

Category	Names	
Numeric	LSystem	LSolution <sup>a</sup>
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

- a. Contains a vector with the last solution found by either the Linear Solver app or the `LSolve` app function.

## Triangle Solver app variables

Category	Names	
Numeric	SideA	AngleA
	SideB	AngleB
	SideC	AngleC
	Rect	
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Linear Explorer app variables

Category	Names	
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Quadratic Explorer app variables

Category	Names	
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

## Trig Explorer app variables

Category	Names	
Modes	AAngle	ADigits
	AComplex	AFormat

# Sequence app variables

<b>Category</b>	<b>Names</b>		
Symbolic	U1	U6	
	U2	U7	
	U3	U8	
	U4	U9	
	U5	U0	
	Plot	Axes	Xmax
Cursor		Xmin	
GridDots		Xtick	
GridLines		Xzoom	
Labels		Ymax	
Nmin		Ymin	
<b>Nmax</b>		Ytick	
Recenter		Yzoom	
Numeric		Automatic	NumStep
	<b>BuildYourOwn</b>	NumType	
	<b>NumIndep</b>	NumZoom	
	NumStart		
Modes	AAngle	ADigits	
	AComplex	AFormat	

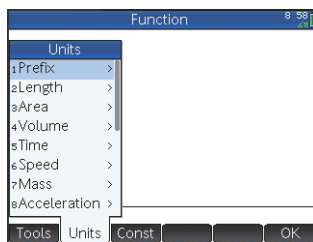
# Units and constants

## Units

A unit of measurement—such as inch, ohm, or Becquerel—enables you to give a precise magnitude to a physical quantity.

You can attach a unit of measurement to any number or numerical result. A numerical value with units attached is referred to as a *measurement*. You can operate on measurements just as you do on numbers without attached units. The units are kept with the numbers in subsequent operations.

The units are on the **Units** menu. Press **Shift**  (Units) and, if necessary, tap .



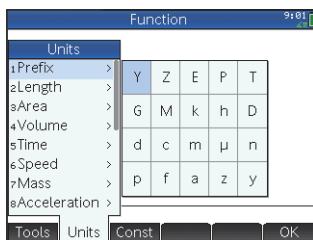
The menu is organized by *category*. Each category is listed at the left, with the units in the selected category listed at the right.

### Unit categories

- length
- area
- volume
- time
- speed
- mass
- acceleration
- force
- energy
- power
- pressure
- temperature
- electricity
- light
- angle
- viscosity
- radiation

## Prefixes

The **Units** menu includes an entry that is not a unit category, namely, *Prefix*. Selecting this option displays a palette of prefixes.



---

Y: yotta	Z: zetta	E: exa	P: peta	T: tera
G: giga	M: mega	k: kilo	h: hecto	D: deca
d: deci	c: centi	m: milli	μ: micro	n: nano
p: pico	f: femto	a: atto	z: zepto	y: octo

---

Unit prefixes provide a handy way of entering large or small numbers. For example, the speed of light is approximately 300,000 m/s. If you wanted to use that in a calculation, you could enter it as 300\_km/s, with the prefix *k* selected from the prefix palette.

Select the prefix you want *before* selecting the unit.

## Unit calculations

A number plus a unit is a measurement. You can perform calculations with multiple measurements providing that the units of each measurement are from the same category. For example, you can add two measurements of length (even lengths of different units, as illustrated in the following example). But you cannot add, say, a length measurement to a volume measurement.

### Example

Suppose you want to add 20 centimeters and 5 inches and have the result displayed in centimeters.

- If you want the result in cm, enter the centimeter measurement first.

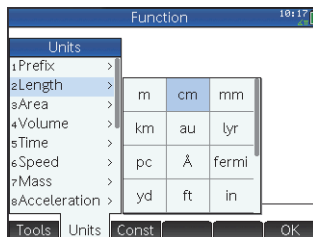
20   (Units)






Select Length



Select cm



- Now add 5 inches.

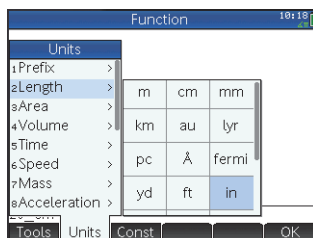
 5  

Select Length

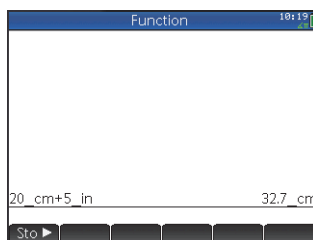


Select in








The result is shown as 32.7 cm. If you had wanted the result in inches, then you would have entered the 5 inches first.



- To continue the example, let's divide the result by 4 seconds.

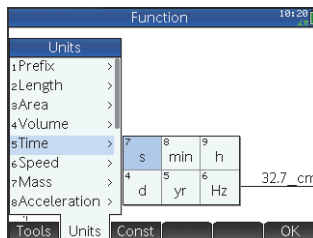
 4  

Select Time

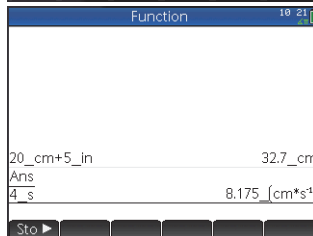


Select s





The result is shown as 8.175 cm\*s<sup>-1</sup>.



4. Now convert the result to kilometers per hour.

**Shift** **Units** **Tools**

Select CONVERT

Select 8.175\_ (cm/s) in History.

**Copy** **Eval** 1

**Shift** **Units** **Units**

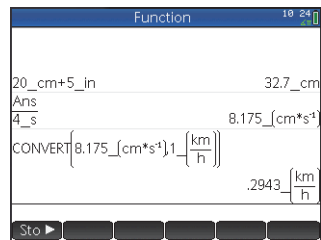
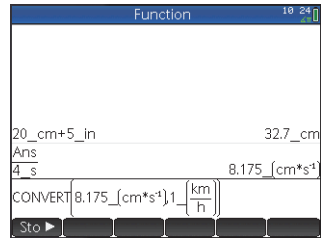
Select Speed



Select km/h

**Enter**

The result is shown as 0.2943 kilometers per hour.



## Unit tools

There are a number of tools for managing and operating on units. These are available by pressing **Shift** **Units** **Tools** and tapping **Tools**.

### CONVERT

Converts one unit to another unit of the same category.

`CONVERT(5_m,1_ft)` returns `16.4041994751_ft`

You can also use the last answer as the first argument in a new conversion calculation. Pressing **Shift** **+** places the last answer on the entry line. You can also select a value from history and tap **Copy** to copy it to the entry line.

### MKSA

Meters, kilograms, seconds, amperes. Converts a complex unit into the base components of the MKSA system.

`MKSA(8.175_cm/s)` returns `.08175_m*s-1`

### UFACTOR

Unit factor conversion. Converts a measurement using a compound unit into a measurement expressed in constituent units. For example, a Coulomb—a measure of electric charge—is a compound unit derived from the SI base units of Ampere and second:  $1\text{ C} = 1\text{ A} * 1\text{ s}$ . Thus:

`UFACTOR(100_C,1_A)` returns `100 A*s`




## USIMPLIFY

Unit simplification. For example, a Joule is defined as one  $\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$ . Thus:

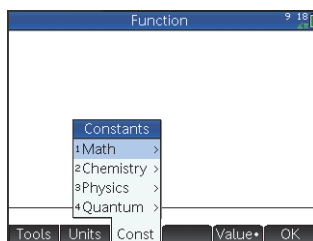
USIMPLIFY (5\_kg\*m2/s2) returns 5\_J

## Physical constants

The values of 34 math and physical constants can be selected by name and used in calculations. These constants are grouped into four categories: math, chemistry, physics and quantum mechanics. A list of all these constants is given in “List of constants” on page 396.

To display the constants, press **Shift**  and then tap

**Const** :



### Example

Suppose you want to know the potential energy of a mass of 5 units according to the equation  $E = mc^2$ .

1. Enter the mass and the multiplication operator:

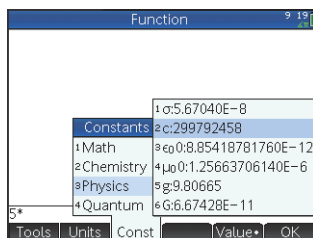
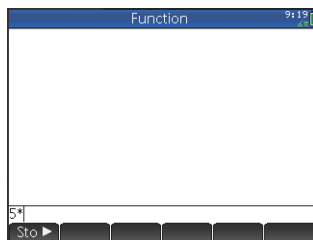
5 

2. Open the constants menu.

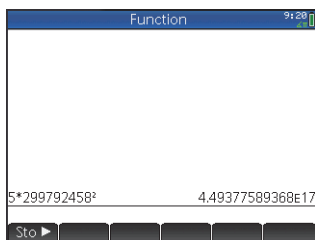
**Shift**  **Const**

3. Select **Physics**.

4. Select **c**:  
299792458.



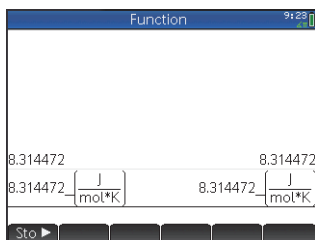
5. Square the speed of light and evaluate the expression.



## Value or measurement?

You can enter just the value of a constant or the constant and its units (if it has units). If **Value•** is showing on the screen, the value is inserted at the cursor point. If **Value** is showing on the screen, the value and its units are inserted at the cursor point.

In the example at the right, the first entry shows the Universal Gas Constant after it was chosen with **Value•** showing. The second entry shows the same constant, but chosen when **Value** was showing.



Tapping **Value** displays **Value•**, and vice versa.

## List of constants

Category	Name and symbol
Math	e
	MAXREAL
	MINREAL
	$\pi$
	i
Chemistry	Avogadro NA
	Boltmann, k
	molar volume, Vm
	universal gas, R
	standard temperature, StdT
	standard pressure, StdP

Category	Name and symbol (Continued)
Physics	Stefan-Boltzmann, $\sigma$ speed of light, $c$ permittivity, $\epsilon_0$ permeability, $\mu_0$ acceleration of gravity, $g$ gravitation, $G$
Quantum	Planck, $h$ Dirac, $\hbar$ electronic charge, $q$ electron mass, $m_e$ $q/m_e$ ratio, $q/m_e$ proton mass, $m_p$ $m_p/m_e$ ratio, $m_p/m_e$ fine structure, $\alpha$ magnetic flux, $\Phi$ Faraday, $F$ Rydberg, $R_\infty$ Bohr radius, $a_0$ Bohr magneton, $\mu_B$ nuclear magneton, $\mu_N$ photon wavelength, $\lambda_0$ photon frequency, $f_0$ Compton wavelength, $\lambda_c$



## Lists

A list consists of comma-separated real or complex numbers, expressions, or matrices, all enclosed in braces. A list may, for example, contain a sequence of real numbers such as  $\{1, 2, 3\}$ . Lists represent a convenient way to group related objects.

You can do list operations in Home and in programs.

There are ten list variables available, named  $L_0$  to  $L_9$ . You can use them in calculations or expressions in Home or in a program. Retrieve a list name from the Vars menu ( $\text{Vars}_{\text{Class A}}$ ), or just type its name from the keyboard.

You can create, edit, delete, send, and receive named lists in the List Catalog:  $\text{Shift} \text{List} \text{7} \text{O} (\text{List})$ . You can also create and store lists—named or unnamed—in Home view.

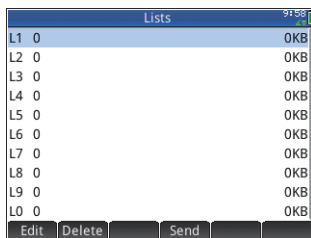
List variables are identical in behavior to the columns  $C_1$ – $C_0$  in the Statistics 2Var app and the columns  $D_1$ – $D_0$  in the Statistics 1Var app. You can store a statistics column as a list (or vice versa) and use any of the list functions on the statistics columns, or the statistics functions on the list variables.

## Create a list in the List Catalog

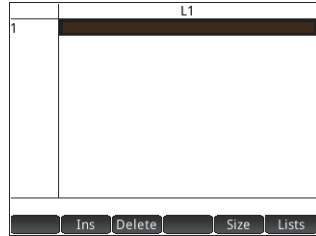
1. Open the List Catalog.

$\text{Shift} \text{List} \text{7} \text{O} (\text{List})$


The number of elements in a list is shown beside the list name.



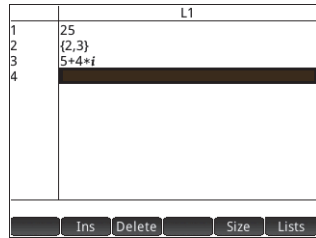
- Tap on the name you want to assign to the new list (L1, L2, etc.). The list editor appears.



If you're creating a new list rather than changing, make sure you choose a list with out any elements in it.

- Enter the values you want in the list, pressing  after each one.










Values can be real or complex numbers (or an expression). If you enter a expression, it is evaluated and the result is inserted in the list.



- When done, press   (List) to return to the List catalog, or press  to go to Home view.


## List Catalog: Buttons and keys

The buttons and keys in the List Catalog are:

Button or Key	Purpose
	Opens the highlighted list for editing. You can also just tap on a list name.
 or 	Deletes the contents of the selected list.
	Transmits the highlighted list to another HP Prime.
  (Clear)	Clears all lists.
  or 	Moves to the end or the beginning of the catalog.












# The List Editor

The List Editor is a special environment for entering data into lists. There are two ways to open the List Editor once the List Catalog is open:

- Highlight the list and tap  or
- Tap the name of the list.



## List Editor: Buttons and keys

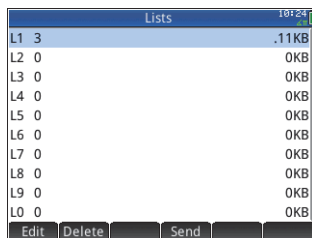
When you open a list, the following buttons and keys are available to you:

Button or Key	Purpose
	Copies the highlighted list item into the entry line.
	Inserts a new value—with default zero—before the highlighted item.
 or 	Deletes the highlighted item.
	Displays a menu for you to choose the small font, medium font, or large font
	Displays a menu for you to choose how many lists to display at one time: one, two, three, or four. For example, if you have only L4 displayed and you choose 3 from the <b>Lists</b> menu, lists L5 and L6 will be displayed in addition to L4.
  (Clear)	Clears all items from the list.
  or 	Moves the cursor to the start or the end of the list.

## To edit a list

1. Open the List Catalog.

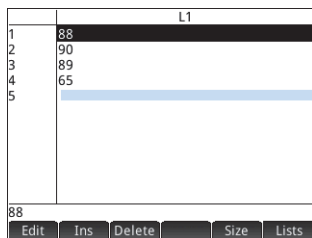
  7 (List)



Lists		10/24
L1	3	.11KB
L2	0	OKB
L3	0	OKB
L4	0	OKB
L5	0	OKB
L6	0	OKB
L7	0	OKB
L8	0	OKB
L9	0	OKB
L0	0	OKB



Buttons: Edit, Delete, Send

2. Tap on the name of the list (L1, L1,etc.). The List Editor appears.

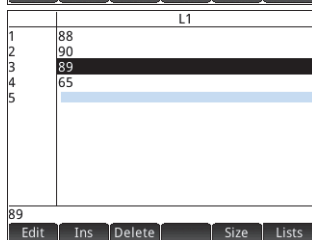


L1	
1	88
2	90
3	89
4	65
5	

Buttons: Edit, Ins, Delete, Size, Lists

3. Tap on the element you want to edit. (Alternatively, press  or  until the element you want to edit is highlighted.) In this example, edit the third element so that it has a value of 5.

5 

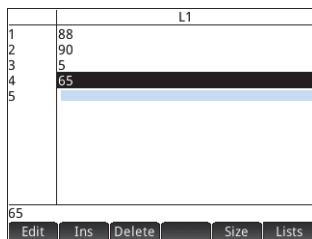


L1	
1	88
2	90
3	89
4	65
5	

Buttons: Edit, Ins, Delete, Size, Lists

## To insert an element in a list

Suppose you want to insert a new value, 9, in L1(2) in the list L1 shown to the right.



L1	
1	88
2	90
3	5
4	65
5	

Buttons: Edit, Ins, Delete, Size, Lists



Select L1(2), that is, the second element in the list.

Ins 9 OK




L1	
1	88
2	9
3	90
4	5
5	65
6	

90

Edit Ins Delete Size Lists



## Deleting lists

### To delete a list

In the List Catalog, use the cursor keys to highlight the list and press . You are prompted to confirm your decision. Tap  or press .

Only the contents of the list is deleted. The list is simply stripped of its contents.

### To delete all lists



In the List Catalog, press   (Clear).

Only the contents of each list is deleted. The lists are simply stripped of their contents.

## Lists in Home view

You can enter and operate on lists directly in Home view. The lists can be named or unnamed.

### To enter a list


1. Press   ({}).

A pair of braces appears on the entry line. All lists must be enclosed in braces.

2. Enter the first element in the list followed by a comma:

[element] 

3. Continue adding elements, separating each with a comma.

4. When you have finished entering the elements, press . The list is added to History (with any expressions among the elements evaluated).

## To store a list

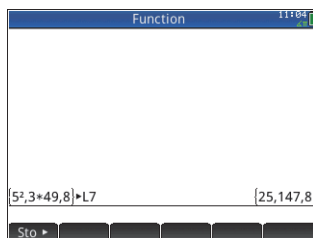
You can store a list in a variable. You can do this before the list is added to History, or you can copy it from History. When you've entered a list in the entry line or copied it from History to the entry line, tap **Sto ▸**, enter a name for the list and press **Enter**. The list variable names available to you are L0 through L9.

For example, to store the list {25,147,8} in L7:

1. Create the list on the entry line.
2. Press **▶** to move the cursor outside the list.
3. Tap **Sto ▸**.
4. Enter the name:

**ALPHA**  $\sqrt{x^2}$  7

5. Complete the operation: **Enter**.



## To display a list

To display a list in Home view, type its name and press **Enter**.

If the list is empty, a pair of empty braces is returned.

## To display one element

To display one element of a list in Home view, enter *listname* (*element#*). For example, if L6 is {3,4,5,6}, then L6 (2) **Enter** returns 4.

## To store one element

To store a value in one element of a list in Home view, enter *value* **Sto ▸** *listname* (*element#*). For example, to store 148 as the second element in L2, type 148 **Sto ▸** L2 (2) **Enter**.

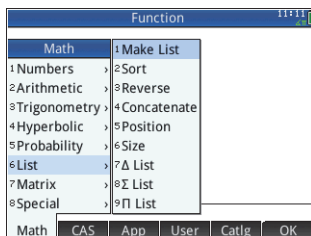
## To send a list


You can send lists to another calculator or a PC just as you can apps, programs, matrices, and notes. See "Sharing data" on page 40 for instructions.




# List functions

List functions are found on the Math menu. You can use them in Home and in programs.

You can type in the name of the function, or you can copy the name of the function from the List category of the Math menu.



Press  6 to select the

List category in the left column of the Math menu. (*List* is the sixth category on the Math menu, which is why pressing 6 will take you straight to the List category.) Press  to move to the sub-menu of list functions, select a function, and either tap  or press .

List functions are enclosed in parentheses. They have arguments that are separated by commas, as in `CONCAT (L1, L2)`. An argument can be either a list variable name (such as L1) or the actual list. For example, `REVERSE ({1, 2, 3})`.

Common operators like +, −, ×, and ÷ can take lists as arguments. If there are two arguments and both are lists, then the lists must have the same length, since the calculation pairs the elements. If there are two arguments and one is a real number, then the calculation operates on each element of the list.

Example:

`5 * {1, 2, 3}` returns `{5, 10, 15}`.

Besides the common operators that can take numbers, matrices, or lists as arguments, there are commands that can only operate on lists.

## Menu format

By default, a List function is presented on the Math menu using its descriptive name, not its common command name. Thus the shorthand name `CONCAT` is presented as **Concatenate** and `POS` is presented as **Position**.

If you prefer the Math menu to show command names instead, deselect the **Menu Display** option on page 2 of the **Home Settings** screen (see page 26).

## Make List

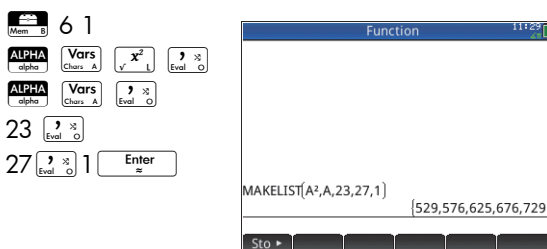
Calculates a sequence of elements for a new list using the syntax:

`MAKELIST (expression, variable, begin, end, increment)`

Evaluates *expression* with respect to *variable*, as *variable* takes on values from *begin* to *end* values, taken at *increment* steps.

Example:

In Home, generate a series of squares from 23 to 27:



## Sort

Sorts the elements in a list in ascending order.

`SORT (list)`

**Example:**

`SORT ({2, 5, 3})` returns `{2, 3, 5}`

## Reverse

Creates a list by reversing the order of the elements in a list.

`REVERSE (list)`

**Example:**

`REVERSE ({1, 2, 3})` returns `{3, 2, 1}`

## Concatenate

Concatenates two lists into a new list.

CONCAT (*list1, list2*)

**Example:**

CONCAT ({1, 2, 3}, {4}) returns {1, 2, 3, 4}.

**Position**

Returns the position of an element within a list. The *element* can be a value, a variable, or an expression. If there is more than one instance of the element, the position of the first occurrence is returned. A value of 0 is returned if there is no occurrence of the specified element.

POS (*list, element*)

**Example:**

POS ({3, 7, 12, 19}, 12) returns 3

**Size**

Returns the number of elements in a list.

SIZE (*list*)

**Example:**

SIZE ({1, 2, 3}) returns 3

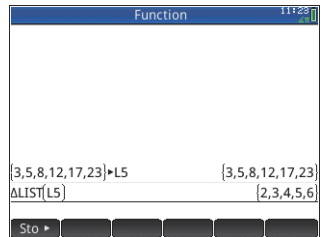
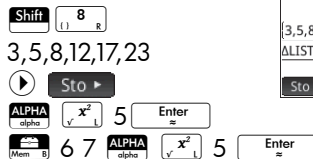
**ΔLIST**

Creates a new list composed of the first differences, that is, the differences between consecutive elements in a list. The new list has one less element than the original list. The differences for  $\{x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$  are  $\{x_2-x_1, x_3-x_2, \dots, x_n-x_{n-1}\}$ .

ΔLIST (*list1*)

**Example:**

In Home view, store {3,5,8,12,17,23} in L5 and find the first differences for the list.



## $\Sigma$ LIST

Calculates the sum of all elements in a list.

$$\Sigma\text{LIST}(\textit{list})$$

### Example:

$$\Sigma\text{LIST}(\{2, 3, 4\}) \text{ returns } 9.$$

## $\Pi$ LIST

Calculates the product of all elements in list.

$$\Pi\text{LIST}(\textit{list})$$

### Example:

$$\Pi\text{LIST}(\{2, 3, 4\}) \text{ returns } 24.$$

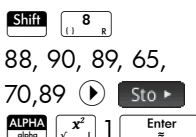
## Finding statistical values for lists

To find statistical values—such as the mean, median, maximum, and minimum of a list—you create a list, store it in a data set and then use the Statistics 1Var app.

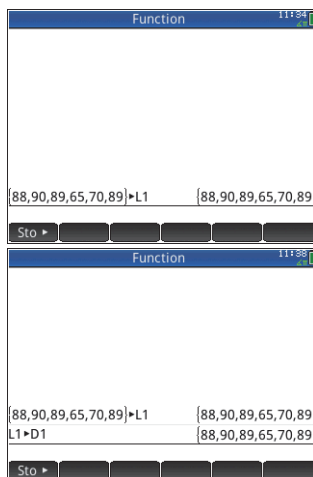
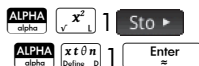
### Example

In this example, use the Statistics 1Var app to find the mean, median, maximum, and minimum values of the elements in the list L1, being 88, 90, 89, 65, 70, and 89.

1. In Home view, create L1.



2. In Home view, store L1 in D1.



You will now be able to see the list data in the Numeric view of the Statistics 1Var app.

3. Start the Statistics 1Var app.

 Select

Statistics 1Var  
Notice that your list elements are in data set D1.

	D1	D2	D3	D4
1	88			
2	90			
3	89			
4	65			
5	70			
6	89			
7				

88

Edit Ins Sort Size Make Stats

4. In the Symbolic view, specify the data set whose statistics you want to find.




By default, H1 will use the data in D1, so nothing further needs to be done in Symbolic view. However, if the data of interest were in D2, or any column other than D1, you would have to specify the desired data column here.

Statistics 1Var Symbolic View		11:43
✓ H1:	D1	Freq
✓ Plot1:	Histogram	
H2:		
Plot2:	Histogram	
H3:		
Plot3:	Histogram	
H4:		
Enter independent column		
Edit	✓	D Show Eval

5. Calculate the statistics.

6. Tap  when you are done.

X	H1		
n	6		
Min	65		
Q1	70		
Med	88.5		
Q3	89		
Max	90		
$\Sigma X$	491		
$\Sigma X^2$	40811		
$\bar{x}$	8.1833333e1		
sX	1.1232394e1		
$\sigma X$	1.0253726e1		
6			

Size Column OK

See the chapter 9, “Statistics 1Var app”, beginning on page 187, for the meaning of each statistic.





## Matrices

---

You can perform matrix calculations in Home view and in programs. The matrix and each row of a matrix appear in square brackets, and the elements and rows are separated by commas. For example, the following matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

is displayed in History as:

```
[[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6]]
```

You can enter matrices directly on the entry line, or create them in the Matrix Editor.

### Vectors

Vectors are one-dimensional arrays. They are composed of just one row. A vector is represented by single brackets; for example, [1,2,3]. A vector can be a real number vector, or a complex number vector such as [(1,2), (7,3)].

### Matrices

Matrices are two-dimensional arrays. They are composed of at least two rows and at least one column.

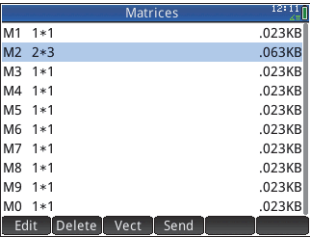
Two-dimensional matrices are represented by nested brackets; for example, [[1,2,3],[4,5,6]]. You can also create complex matrices, for example, [[[1,2), (3,4)], [(4,5), (6,7)]]].

### Matrix Variables

There are ten matrix variables available, named M0 to M9. You can use them in calculations in Home view or in a program. You can retrieve matrix names from the Vars menu, or just type their names from the keyboard.

# Creating and storing matrices

The Matrix Catalog contains the matrix variables M0–M9. Once you select a matrix name, you can create, edit, and delete matrices in the Matrix Editor. You can also send a matrix to another HP Prime.



To open the Matrix Catalog, press **Shift** **4** (Matrix).

In the Matrix Catalog, the size of a matrix is shown beside the matrix name. (An empty matrix is shown as 1\*1.) The number of elements in it is shown beside a vector.

You can also create and store matrices—named or unnamed—in Home view. For example, the command:

```
POLYROOT ([ 1, 0, -1, 0 ]) ►M1
```

stores the roots of the complex vector of length 3 into the variable M1. M1 will thus contain the three roots of  $x^3 - x = 0$ : 0, 1 and -1.


## Matrix Catalog: buttons and keys

The buttons and keys available in the Matrix Catalog are:

Button or Key	Purpose
<b>Edit</b>	Opens the highlighted matrix for editing.
<b>Delete</b> or <b>Del</b>	Deletes the content of the selected matrix.
<b>Vect</b>	Changes the selected matrix into a one-dimensional vector.
<b>Send</b>	Transmits the highlighted matrix to another HP Prime.
<b>Shift Esc</b> (Clear)	Clears the contents of all matrices.












# Working with matrices

## To open the Matrix Editor










To create or edit a matrix, go to the Matrix Catalog, and tap on a matrix. (You could also use the cursor keys to highlight the matrix and then press ) The Matrix Editor opens.

## Matrix Editor: Buttons and keys



The buttons and keys available in the Matrix Editor are.:

Button or Key	Purpose
	Copies the highlighted element to the entry line.
	Inserts a row of zeros above, or a column of zeros to the left, of the highlighted cell. You are prompted to choose row or column.
	Displays a menu for you to choose the small font, medium font, or large font.
	A three-way toggle that controls how the cursor will move after an element has been entered.  moves the cursor to the right,  moves it downward, and  does not move it at all.
	Displays a menu for you to choose 1, 2, 3, or 4 columns to be displayed at a time.
	Replaces the contents of the highlighted cell with a zero.
 (Clear)	Deletes the highlighted row, or column, or the entire matrix. (You are prompted to make a choice.)
	Moves the cursor to the first row, last row, first column, or last column respectively.












## To create a matrix in the Matrix Editor

1. Open the Matrix Catalog:  
  (Matrix)
2. If you want to create a vector, press  or  until the matrix you want to use is highlighted, tap , and then press . Continue from step 4 below.
3. If you want to create a matrix, either tap on the name of the matrix (M0–M9), or press  or  until the matrix you want to use is highlighted and then press .

Note that an empty matrix will be shown with a size of  $1 \times 1$  beside its name.

4. For each element in the matrix, type a number or an expression, and then tap  or press .

You can enter **complex numbers** in complex form, that is,  $(a, b)$ , where  $a$  is the real part and  $b$  is the imaginary part. You can also enter them in the form  $a+bi$ .

5. By default, on entering an element the cursor moves to the next column in the same row. You can use the cursor keys to move to a different row or column. You can also change the direction the cursor automatically moves by tapping . The  button toggles between the following options:
  - : the cursor moves to the cell below the current cell when you press .
  - : the cursor moves to the cell to the right of the current cell when you press .
  - : the cursor stays in the current cell when you press .
6. When done, press   (Matrix) to return to the Matrix Catalog, or press  to return to Home view. The matrix entries are automatically saved.

## Matrices in Home view

You can enter and operate on matrices directly in Home view. The matrices can be named or unnamed.

1. Enter the vector or matrix on the entry line. The vector or matrix must be enclosed in square brackets. Start

each row of a matrix with square brackets as well.  
(For a pair of square brackets, press **Shift** **5**.)

Separate each element and each row with a comma  
(**2nd** **0**).

- When you have finished entering the elements, press **Enter**. The vector or matrix is added to History (with any expressions among the elements evaluated).
- Press **Enter** to evaluate and display the vector or matrix.

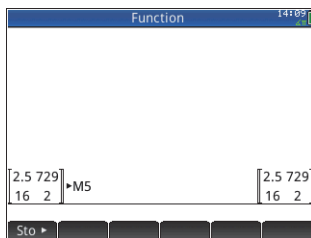
## To store a matrix

You can store it a vector or matrix in a variable. You can do this before it is added to History, or you can copy it from History. When you've entered a vector or matrix in the entry line or copied it from History to the entry line, tap **Sto** **▶**, enter a name for it and press **Enter**. The vector and matrix names variable names available to you are M0 through M9.

The screen at the left shows the matrix

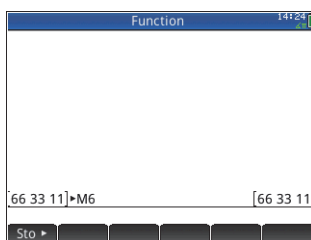
$[[2.5, 729], [16, 2]]$   
being stored in M5.

Note that you can enter an expression (like  $5/2$ ) for an element of the matrix, and it will be evaluated.



The screen at the right shows the vector


$[66, 33, 11]$  being stored in M6.




## To display a matrix

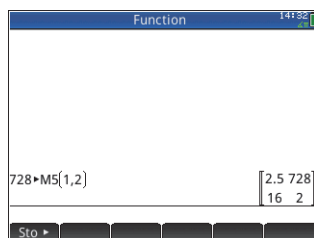
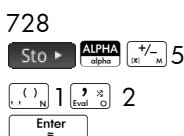
In Home view, enter the name of the vector or matrix and press **Enter**. If the vector or matrix is empty, zero is returned inside double square brackets.

## To display one element

In Home view, enter *matrixname(row,column)*. For example, if M2 is  $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ , then  $M2(1,2)$   returns 4.

## To store one element

In Home view, enter *value*, tap , and then enter *matrixname(row,column)*. For example, to change the element in the first row and second column of M5 to 728 and then display the resulting matrix:



An attempt to store an element to a row or column beyond the size of the matrix results in re-sizing the matrix to allow the storage. Any intermediate cells will be filled with zeroes.

## To send a matrix

You can send matrices between calculators just as you can send apps, programs, lists, and notes. See “Sharing data” on page 40 for instructions.

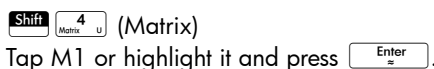
# Matrix arithmetic

You can use the arithmetic functions (+, −, ×, ÷, and powers) with matrix arguments. Division left-multiplies by the inverse of the divisor. You can enter the matrices themselves or enter the names of stored matrix variables. The matrices can be real or complex.

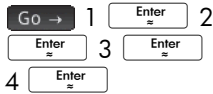
For the next examples, store  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$  in M1 and  $\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$  in M2.

## Example

1. Select the first matrix:



2. Enter the matrix elements:



M1	1	2		
1	1	2		
2	3	4		

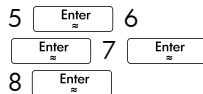
Ins Size Go → Column

3. Select the second matrix:



Tap M2 or highlight it and press Enter =.

4. Enter the matrix elements:



M2	1	2		
1	5	6		
2	7	8		

Ins Size Go → Column

5. In Home view, add the two matrices you have just created.

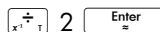


Function		14:45
M1+M2		$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 8 \\ 10 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$
Sto →		

## To multiply and divide by a scalar

For division by a scalar, enter the matrix first, then the operator, then the scalar. For multiplication, the order of the operands does not matter.

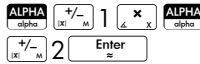
The matrix and the scalar can be real or complex. For example, to divide the result of the previous example by 2, press the following keys:



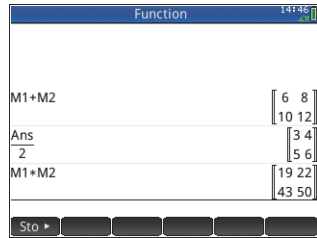
Function		14:45
M1+M2		$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 8 \\ 10 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$
Ans		$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$
Sto →		

## To multiply two matrices

To multiply the two matrices that you created for the previous example, press the following keys:

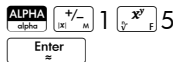


To multiply a matrix by a vector, enter the matrix first, then the vector. The number of elements in the vector must equal the number of columns in the matrix.

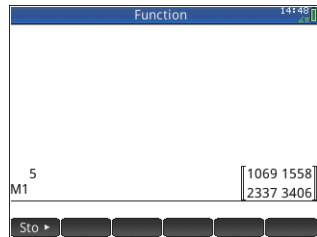


## To raise a matrix to a power

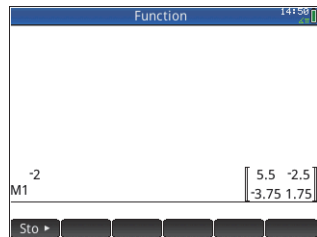
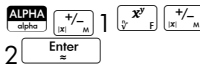
You can raise a matrix to any power as long as the power is an integer. The following example shows the result of raising matrix M1, created earlier, to the power of 5.



You can also raise a matrix to a power without first storing it as a variable.



Matrices can also be raised to negative powers. In this case, the result is equivalent to  $1/[\text{matrix}]^{\text{ABS}(\text{power})}$ . In the following example, M1 is raised to the power of  $-2$ .



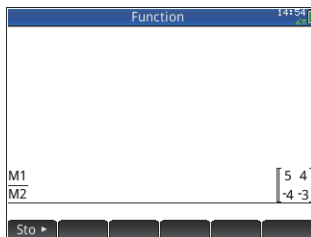
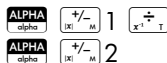
## To divide by a square matrix

For division of a matrix or a vector by a square matrix, the number of rows of the dividend (or the number of elements, if it is a vector) must equal the number of rows in the divisor.

This operation is not a mathematical division: it is a left-multiplication by the inverse of the divisor.  $M1/M2$  is equivalent to  $M2^{-1} * M1$ .



To divide the two matrices you created for the previous example, press the following keys:



### To invert a matrix

You can invert a *square matrix* in Home view by typing the matrix (or its variable name) and pressing

**Shift**  $x^{-1}$  **T** **Enter**. You can also use the **INVERSE** command in the Matrix category of the Math menu.

### To negate each element

You can change the sign of each element in a matrix by pressing  $+/-$ , entering the matrix name, and pressing **Enter**.

## Solving systems of linear equations

You can use matrices to solve systems of linear equations, such as the following:

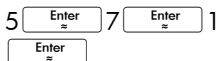
$$\begin{aligned} 2x+3y+4z &= 5 \\ x+y-z &= 7 \\ 4x-y+2z &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

In this example we will use matrices M1 and M2, but you could use any of the ten matrices available.

1. Open the Matrix Catalog, clear M1, choose to create a vector, and open the Matrix Editor:



2. Create the vector of the three constants in the linear system.



M1		1			
1		5			
2		7			
3		1			

3. Return to the Matrix Catalog.



The size of M1 should be showing as 3.

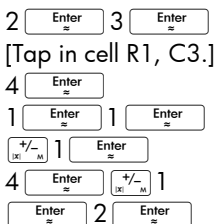
Matrices		15:18
M1	3	.039KB
M2	2*2	.047KB
M3	1*1	.023KB
M4	1*1	.023KB
M5	2*2	.047KB
M6	3	.039KB
M7	1*1	.023KB
M8	1*1	.023KB
M9	1*1	.023KB
M0	1*1	.023KB

4. Select and clear M2, and re-open the Matrix Editor:



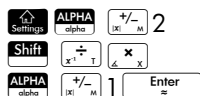
M2		1			
1		0			

5. Enter the equation coefficients.



M2		1	2	3	
1		2	3	4	
2		1	1	-1	
3		4	-1	2	

6. Return to Home view and left-multiply the constants vector by the inverse of the coefficients matrix:



The result is a vector of the solutions:  $x = 2$ ,  $y = 3$  and  $z = -2$ .

Function		09:18
$M2^{-1} * M1$		[2 3 -2]

An alternative method is to use the RREF function (see page 422).

## Matrix functions and commands

### Functions

- Functions can be used in any app or in Home view. They are listed on the Math menu under the Matrix category. They can be used in mathematical expressions—primarily in Home view—as well as in programs.
- Functions always produce and display a result. They do not change any stored variables, such as a matrix variable.
- Functions have arguments that are enclosed in parentheses and separated by commas; for example,  $\text{CROSS}(\text{vector1}, \text{vector2})$ . The matrix input can be either a matrix variable name (such as  $M1$ ) or the actual matrix data inside brackets. For example,  $\text{CROSS}(M1, [1, 2])$ .



### Menu format

By default, a Matrix function is presented on the Math menu using its descriptive name, not its common command name. Thus the shorthand name  $\text{TRN}$  is presented as **Transpose** and  $\text{DET}$  is presented as **Determinant**.

If you prefer the Math menu to show command names instead, deselect the **Menu Display** option on page 2 of the **Home Settings** screen (see page 26).

### Commands

Functions differ from commands in that a function can be used in an expression. Commands cannot be used in an expression.

Matrix commands are listed among the functions and commands in the commands catalog, one of the Toolbox menus. Press  and tap  to display the commands catalog.

### Argument conventions

- For *row#* or *column#*, supply the number of the row (counting from the top, starting with 1) or the number of the column (counting from the left, starting with 1).

- The argument *matrix* can refer to either a vector or a matrix.

## Matrix functions

The matrix functions are available in the Matrix category on the Math menu:  Select Matrix  Select a function.

**Transpose** Transposes *matrix*. For a complex matrix, TRN finds the conjugate transpose.

$$\text{TRN}(\textit{matrix})$$

**Determinant** Determinant of a square *matrix*.

$$\text{DET}(\textit{matrix})$$

**RREF** Reduced Row-Echelon Form. Changes a rectangular *matrix* to its reduced row-echelon form.

$$\text{RREF}(\textit{matrix})$$

### Create

**Make** Creates a matrix of dimension *rows*  $\times$  *columns*, using *expression* to calculate each element. If *expression* contains the variables I and J, then the calculation for each element substitutes the current row number for I and the current column number for J. You can also create a vector by the number of elements (*e*) instead of the number of rows and columns.

$$\text{MAKEMAT}(\textit{expression}, \textit{rows}, \textit{columns})$$

$$\text{MAKEMAT}(\textit{expression}, \textit{elements})$$

### Examples

$\text{MAKEMAT}(0, 3, 3)$  returns a  $3 \times 3$  zero matrix,  
 $[[0, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0]]$ .

$\text{MAKEMAT}(\sqrt{2}, 2, 3)$  returns the  $2 \times 3$  matrix  
 $[[\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}], [\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}]]$ .

$\text{MAKEMAT}(I+J-1, 2, 3)$  returns the  $2 \times 3$  matrix  
 $[[1, 2, 3], [2, 3, 4]]$

Note in the example above that each element is the sum of the row number and column number minus 1.

`MAKEMAT( $\sqrt{2}, 2$ )` returns the 2-element vector  $[\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}]$ .

**Identity** Identity matrix. Creates a square matrix of dimension  $size \times size$  whose diagonal elements are 1 and off-diagonal elements are zero.

`IDENMAT( $size$ )`

**Random** Returns a list of size  $n$  or a  $n \times m$  matrix that contains random integers in the range  $-99$  through  $99$  with uniform distribution or that contains random numbers according to the law put between quote.

`randMat(Intg( $n$ ), [Intg( $m$ )], [Interval or quote(DistribLaw)])`

**JordanBlock** Returns a matrix  $n \times n$  with  $a$  on the diagonal, 1 above and 0 everywhere else.

`JordanBlock(Expr( $a$ ), Intg( $n$ ))`

**Hilbert** Returns the order  $n$  Hilbert matrix:  $H_{jk} = 1/(j+k+1)$   $j, k = 1 \dots n$ .

`hilbert(Intg( $n$ ))`

**Isometric** Matrix of an isometry given by its proper elements.

`mkisom(Vect, (Sign(1) or -1))`

**Vandermonde** Returns the Vandermonde matrix= $[V^0, V^1, \dots]$ .

`vandermonde(Vect(V))`

## Basic

**Norm** Finds the norm of a matrix.

`ABS( $matrix$ )`

**Row Norm** Row Norm. Finds the maximum value (over all rows) for the sums of the absolute values of all elements in a row.

`ROWNORM( $matrix$ )`

**Column Norm** Column Norm. Finds the maximum value (over all columns) of the sums of the absolute values of all elements in a column.

`COLNORM( $matrix$ )`

<b>Spectral Norm</b>	Spectral Norm of <i>matrix</i> . <code>SPECNORM(matrix)</code>
<b>Spectral Radius</b>	Spectral Radius of a square <i>matrix</i> . <code>SPECRAD(matrix)</code>
<b>Condition</b>	Condition Number. Finds the 1-norm (column norm) of a square <i>matrix</i> . <code>COND(matrix)</code>
<b>Rank</b>	Rank of a rectangular <i>matrix</i> . <code>RANK(matrix)</code>
<b>Pivot</b>	Performs one step of the Gauss-Jordan reduction method on an $n \times m$ matrix <i>A</i> using the element $A[nl,nc]$ ( $0 \leq nl \leq n$ and $0 \leq nc \leq m$ ) as pivot, and returns an equivalent matrix with zeros in all elements in column <i>nc</i> except that in row <i>nl</i> . <code>pivot (Mtrx (A) , Intg (nl) , Intg (nc) )</code>
<b>Trace</b>	Finds the trace of a square <i>matrix</i> . The trace is equal to the sum of the diagonal elements. (It is also equal to the sum of the eigenvalues.) <code>TRACE(matrix)</code>

### Advanced

<b>Eigenvalues</b>	Displays the eigenvalues in vector form for <i>matrix</i> . <code>EIGENVAL(matrix)</code>
<b>Eigenvectors</b>	Eigenvectors and eigenvalues for a square <i>matrix</i> . Displays a list of two arrays. The first contains the eigenvectors and the second contains the eigenvalues. <code>EIGENVV(matrix)</code>
<b>Jordan</b>	Returns the list made by the matrix of passage and the Jordan form of a matrix. <code>jordan (Mtrx)</code>
<b>Diagonal</b>	Returns either the diagonal matrix with diagonal <i>l</i> or the diagonal of <i>A</i> . <code>diag (Lst (l)    Mtrx (A) )</code>

**Cholesky** For a numerical symmetric matrix  $A$ , returns  $L$  matrix such that  $A=L*tran(L)$ .

`cholesky (Mtrx)`

**Hermite** Hermite normal form of a matrix with coefficients in  $Z$ : returns  $U,B$  such that  $U$  is invertible in  $Z$ ,  $B$  is upper triangular and  $B=U*A$ .

`ihermite (Mtrx (A) )`

**Hessenberg** Matrix reduction to Hessenberg form. Returns  $[P,B]$  such that  $B=inv(P)*A*P$ .

`hessenberg (Mtrx (A) )`

**Smith** Smith normal form of a matrix with coefficients in  $Z$ : returns  $U,B,V$  such that  $U$  and  $V$  invertible in  $Z$ ,  $B$  is diagonal,  $B[i,i]$  divides  $B[i+1,i+1]$ , and  $B=U*A*V$ .

`ismith (Mtrx (A) )`

## Factorize

**LQ** LQ Factorization. Factorizes a  $m \times n$  matrix into three matrices  $L$ ,  $Q$ , and  $P$ , where  $\{[L[m \times n \text{ lowertrapezoidal}]], [Q[n \times n \text{ orthogonal}]], [P[m \times m \text{ permutation}]]\}$  and  $P*A=L*Q$ .

`LQ (matrix)`

**LSQ** Least Squares. Displays the minimum norm least squares matrix (or vector) corresponding to the system  $matrix1*X=matrix2$ .

`LSQ(matrix1, matrix2)`

**LU** LU Decomposition. Factorizes a square matrix into three matrices  $L$ ,  $U$ , and  $P$ , where  $\{[L[\text{lowertriangular}]], [U[\text{uppertriangular}]], [P[\text{permutation}]]\}$  and  $P*A=L*U$ .

`LU (matrix)`

**QR** QR Factorization. Factorizes an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  numerically as  $Q*R$ , where  $Q$  is an orthogonal matrix and  $R$  is an upper triangular matrix, and returns  $R$ .  $R$  is stored in `var2` and  $Q=A*inv(R)$  is stored in `var1`.

`QR (matrix A, var1, var2)`

- SCHUR** Schur Decomposition. Factorizes a square *matrix* into two matrices. If *matrix* is real, then the result is `[[orthogonal],[[upper-quasi triangular]]]`. If *matrix* is complex, then the result is `[[unitary],[[upper-triangular]]]`.
- `SCHUR(matrix)`
- SVD** Singular Value Decomposition. Factorizes an  $m \times n$  *matrix* into two matrices and a vector: `[[m x m square orthogonal],[[n x n square orthogonal]], [real]]`.
- `SVD(matrix)`
- SVL** Singular Values. Returns a vector containing the singular values of *matrix*.
- `SVL(matrix)`

## Vector



- Cross Product** Cross Product of *vector1* with *vector2*.
- `CROSS(vector1, vector2)`
- Dot Product** Dot Product of two arrays, *matrix1* and *matrix2*.
- `DOT(matrix1, matrix2)`
- L<sup>2</sup> Norm** Returns the  $l^2$  norm ( $\sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2 + \dots + x_n^2}$ ) of a vector.
- `l2norm(Vect)`
- L<sup>1</sup> Norm** Returns the  $l^1$  norm (sum of the absolute values of the coordinates) of a vector.
- `l1norm(Vect)`
- Max Norm** Returns the  $l^\infty$  norm (the maximum of the absolute values of the coordinates) of a vector.
- `maxnorm(Vect or Mtrx)`

## Examples

### Identity Matrix

You can create an identity matrix with the `IDENMAT` function. For example, `IDENMAT(2)` creates the  $2 \times 2$  identity matrix `[[1,0],[0,1]]`.



You can also create an identity matrix using the `MAKEMAT` (*make matrix*) function. For example, entering `MAKEMAT(I ≠ J,4,4)` creates a  $4 \times 4$  matrix showing the numeral 1 for all elements except zeros on the diagonal. The logical operator ( $\neq$ ) returns 0 when I (the row number) and J (the column number) are equal, and returns 1 when they are not equal. (You can insert  $\neq$  by choosing it from the relations palette:  .)

## Transposing a Matrix

The `TRN` function swaps the row-column and column-row elements of a matrix. For instance, element 1,2 (row 1, column 2) is swapped with element 2,1; element 2,3 is swapped with element 3,2; and so on.

For example, `TRN ([[1, 2], [3, 4]])` creates the matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ .

## Reduced-Row Echelon Form

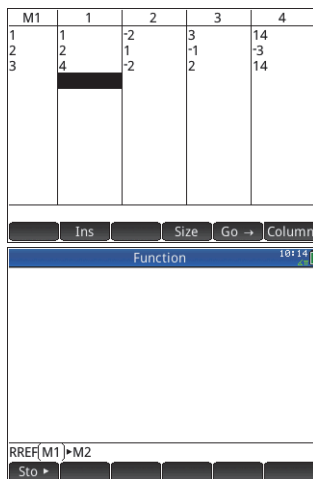
The set of equations

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y + 3z &= 14 \\ 2x + y - z &= -3 \\ 4x - 2y + 2z &= 14 \end{aligned}$$

can be written as the augmented matrix

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 3 & 14 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & -3 \\ 4 & -2 & 2 & 14 \end{array} \right]$$

which can then be stored as a  $3 \times 4$  real matrix in any matrix variable. M1 is used in this example.



You can then use the `RREF` function to change this to reduced-row echelon form, storing it in any matrix variable. M2 is used in this example.

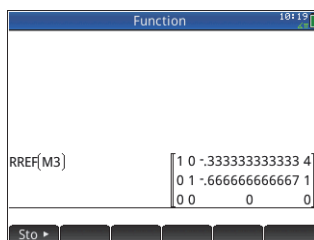
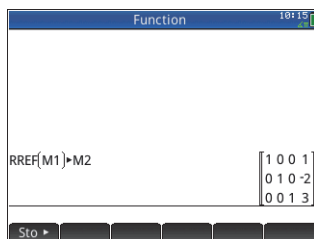
The reduced row echelon matrix gives the solution to the linear equation in the fourth column.

An advantage of using the RREF function is that it will also work with inconsistent matrices resulting from systems of equations which have no solution or infinite solutions.

For example, the following set of equations has an infinite number of solutions:

$$\begin{aligned}x + y - z &= 5 \\2x - y &= 7 \\x - 2y + z &= 2\end{aligned}$$

The final row of zeros in the reduced-row echelon form of the augmented matrix indicates an inconsistent system with infinite solutions.



## Notes and Info

---

The HP Prime has two text editors for entering notes:




- The Note Editor: opens from within the Note Catalog (which is a collection of notes independent of apps).
- The Info Editor: opens from the Info view of an app. A note created in the Info view is associated with the app and stays with it if you send the app to another calculator.

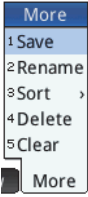



## The Note Catalog

Subject to available memory, you can store as many notes as you want in the Note Catalog. These notes are independent of any app. The Note Catalog lists the notes by name. This list excludes notes that were created in any app's Info view, but these can be copied and then pasted into the Note Catalog via the clipboard. From the Note Catalog, you create or edit individual notes in the Note Editor.

### Note Catalog: button and keys

While you are in the Note Catalog, you can use the following buttons and keys. Note that some buttons will not be available if there are no notes in the Note Catalog.

Button or Key	Purpose
	Opens the selected note for editing.
	Begins a new note, and prompts you for a name.
	Tap to provide additional features. See below.

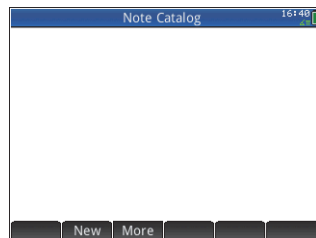
Button or Key	Purpose (Continued)
      	<p>Save creates a copy of the selected note and prompts you to save it under a new name.</p> <p>Rename renames the selected note.</p> <p>Sort sorts the list of notes (sort options are alphabetical and chronological).</p> <p>Delete deletes the selected note.</p> <p>Clear deletes all notes.</p> <p>Deletes the selected note.</p> <p>Deletes all notes in the catalog.</p> <p>Sends the selected note to another HP Prime or PC.</p>

## The Note Editor

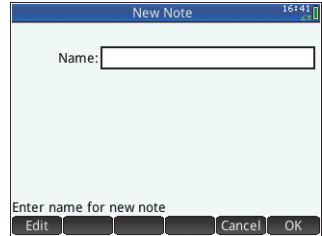
The Note Editor is where you create and edit notes. You can launch the Note Editor from the Notes Catalog, and also from within an app. Notes created within an app stay with that app even if you send the app to another calculator. Such notes do not appear in the Notes Catalog. They can only be read when the associated app is open. Notes created via the Notes Catalog are not specific to any app and can be viewed at any time by opening the Notes Catalog. Such notes can also be sent to another calculator.

### To create a note from the Notes Catalog

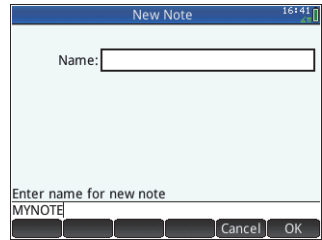
1. Open the Note Catalog.



2. Create a new note.

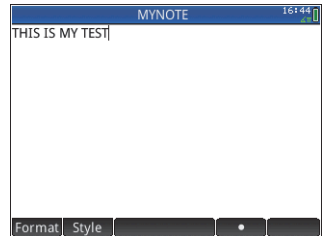


3. Enter a name for your note. In this example, we'll call the note MYNOTE.



4. Write your note, using the editing keys and formatting options described in the following sections.

When you are finished, exit the Note Editor by pressing  or pressing  and opening an app. Your work is automatically saved.



















To access your new note, return to the Notes Catalog.






## To create a note for an app

You can also create a note that is specific to an app and which stays with the app should you send the app to another calculator. See "Adding a note to an app" on page 96. Notes created this way take advantage of all the formatting features of the Note Editor (see below).

## Note Editor: buttons and keys




















The following buttons and keys are available while you are adding or editing a note.

Button or Key	Purpose
	Opens the text formatting menu. See “Formatting Options” on page 434.
	Provides bold, italic, underline, full caps, superscript and subscript options. See “Formatting Options” on page 434
	A toggle button that offers three types of bullet. See “Formatting Options” on page 434
	Provides options for inserting formulas
	Enters a space during text entry.
	Moves from page to page in a multi-page note.
	Shows options for copying text in a note. See below.
	Copy option. Mark where to begin a text selection.
	Copy option. Mark where to end a text selection.
	Copy option. Select the entire note.
	Copy option. Cut the selected text.
	Copy option. Copy the selected text.
	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.
	Starts a new line.
	Erases the entire note.
	Menu for entering variable names, and the contents of variables.

Button or Key	Purpose (Continued)
	Menu for entering math commands.
 (Chars)	Displays a palette of special characters. To type one, highlight it and tap  or press  . To copy a character <i>without</i> closing the Chars menu, select it and tap  .

### Entering uppercase and lowercase characters

The following table below describes how to quickly enter uppercase and lowercase characters.

Purpose	Keys
Make the next character upper-case	
Lock mode: make all characters uppercase until the mode is reset	 
With uppercase locked, make next character lowercase	
With uppercase locked, make all characters lowercase until the mode is reset	 
Reset uppercase lock mode	
Make the next character lower-case	 
Lock mode: make all characters lowercase until the mode is reset	  
With lowercase locked, make next character uppercase	
With lowercase locked, make all characters uppercase until the mode is reset	 
Reset lowercase lock mode	   

The left side of the notification area of the title bar will indicate what case will be applied to the character you next enter.

## Text formatting







You can enter text in different formats in the Note Editor. Choose a formatting option before you start entering text. The formatting options are described in “Formatting Options” below.

## Formatting Options

Formatting options are available from three touch buttons in the Note Editor and in the Info view of an app:



The formatting options are listed in the table below.

Category	Options
 Font Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10–22 pt</li> </ul>
 Foreground Color	Select from twenty colors.
 Background Color	Select from twenty colors.
 Align (text alignment)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Left</li> <li>• Center</li> <li>• Right</li> </ul>
 Font Style	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bold</li> <li>• Italic</li> <li>• Underline</li> <li>• Strikethrough</li> <li>• Superscript</li> <li>• Subscript</li> </ul>
 Bullets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• •</li> <li>• ◦</li> <li>• ▸</li> <li>• × [Cancels bullet]</li> </ul>



## To import a note

You can import a note from the Note Catalog into an app's Info view and vice versa.

Suppose you want to copy a note named *Assignments* from the Note Catalog into the Function Info view:

1. Open the Note Catalog.



2. Select the note *Assignments* and tap **Edit**.
3. Open the copy options for copying to the clipboard.



The menu buttons change to give you options for copying:

**Begin**: Marks where the copying or cutting is to begin.

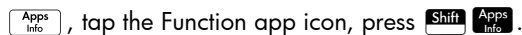
**End**: Marks where the copying or cutting is to end.

**All**: Select the entire program.

**Cut**: Cut the selection.

**Copy**: Copy the selection.

4. Select what you want to copy or cut (using the options listed immediately above).
5. Tap **Copy** or **Cut**.
6. Open the Info view of the Function app.



7. Move the cursor to the location where you want the copied text to be pasted and open the clipboard.



8. Select the text from the clipboard and press **OK**.

## Sharing notes

You can send a note to another HP Prime. See "Sharing data" on page 40.



# Programming

---

This chapter describes how to program the HP Prime. In this chapter you'll learn about:

- programming commands
- writing functions in programs
- using variables in programs
- executing programs
- debugging programs
- creating programs for building custom apps
- sending a program to another HP Prime

## HP Prime Programs

An HP Prime program contains a sequence of commands that execute automatically to perform a task.

## Command Structure

Commands are separated by a semicolon ( ; ). Commands that take multiple arguments have those arguments enclosed in parentheses and separated by a comma ( , ). For example,

```
PIXON (xposition, yposition);
```

Sometimes, arguments to a command are optional. If an argument is omitted, a default value is used in its place. In the case of the PIXON command, a third argument could be used that specifies the color of the pixel:

```
PIXON (xposition, yposition [,color]);
```

The last argument indicates which of four colors to use when lighting up the pixel. Here, the default value is 0 (black). In this manual, optional arguments to commands appear inside square brackets, as shown above. In the PIXON example, a graphics variable (G) could be specified as the first argument. The default is G0, which always contains the currently displayed screen. Thus, the full syntax for the PIXON command is:

```
PIXON ([G,] xposition, yposition [ ,color]);
```

Some built-in commands employ an alternative syntax whereby function arguments do not appear in parentheses. Examples include `RETURN` and `RANDOM`.

## Program Structure

Programs can contain any number of subroutines (each of which is a function or procedure). Subroutines start with a heading consisting of the name, followed by parentheses that contain a list of parameters or arguments, separated by commas. The body of a subroutine is a sequence of statements enclosed within a `BEGIN–END`; pair. For example, the body of a simple program, called `MYPROGRAM`, could look like this:

```
EXPORT MYPROGAM ()
BEGIN
PIXON (1,1) ;
END;
```

## Comments

When a line of a program begins with two forward slashes, `//`, the rest of the line will be ignored. This enables you to insert comments in the program:

```
EXPORT MYPROGRAM ()
BEGIN
PIXON (1,1) ;
//This line is just a comment.
END;
```

## The Program Catalog

The Program Catalog is where you run and debug programs, and send programs to another HP Prime. You can also rename and remove programs, and it is where you start the Program Editor. The Program Editor is where you create and edit programs. Programs can also be run from Home view or from other programs.

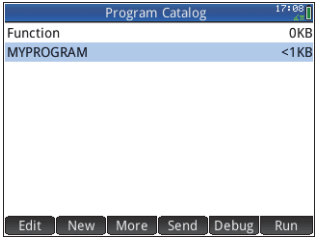
# Open the Program Catalog

Press **Shift** **F1** (Program Y)

Program) to open the Program Catalog.

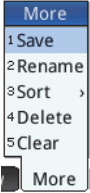



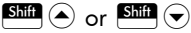


The Program Catalog displays a list of program names. The first item in the Program Catalog is a built-in entry that has the same name as the active app. This entry is the app

program for the active app, if such a program exists. See the "App programs" on page 459 for more information.



## Program Catalog: buttons and keys

Button or Key	Purpose
<p><b>Edit</b></p>	<p>Opens the highlighted program for editing.</p>
<p><b>New</b></p>	<p>Prompts for a new program name, then opens the Program Editor.</p>
<p><b>More</b></p>	<p>Opens further menu options for the selected program:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Save</li> <li>• Rename</li> <li>• Sort</li> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Clear</li> </ul> <p>These options are described immediately below.</p> <p>To redisplay the initial menu, press <b>On</b> or <b>Esc</b> <b>Clear</b>.</p>

Button or Key	Purpose (Continued)
            	<p><b>Save</b> creates a copy of the selected program with a new name you are prompted to give.</p> <p><b>Rename</b> renames the selected program.</p> <p><b>Sort</b> sorts the list of programs. (Sort options are alphabetical and chronological).</p> <p><b>Delete</b> deletes the selected program.</p> <p><b>Clear</b> deletes all programs.</p> <p>Transmits the highlighted program to another HP Prime or to a PC.</p> <p>Debugs the selected program.</p> <p>Runs the highlighted program.</p> <p>Moves to the beginning or end of the Program Catalog.</p> <p>Deletes the selected program.</p> <p>Deletes all programs.</p>

## Creating a new program

1. Open the Program Catalog and start a new program.

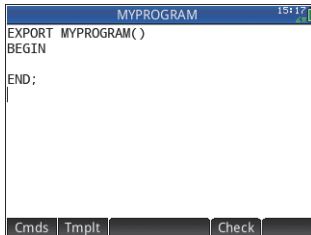
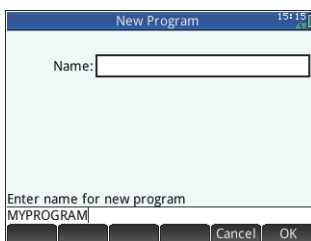
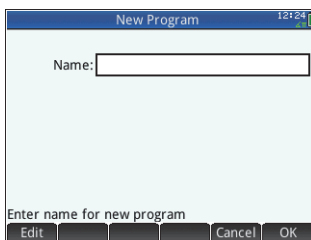
**Shift** **1** (Program Y) **New**

2. Enter a name for the program.

**ALPHA** **ALPHA** (to lock alpha mode)  
MYPROGRAM  
**OK**

3. Press **OK** again.

A template for your program is then automatically created. The template consists of a heading for a function with the same name as the program, `EXPORT MYPROGRAM()`, and a `BEGIN-END` pair that will enclose the statements for the function.



---

**HINT** A program name can contain only alphanumeric characters (letters and numbers) and the underscore character. The first character must be a letter. For example, `GOOD_NAME` and `Spin2` are valid program names, while `HOT STUFF` (contains a space) and `2Cool!` (starts with number and includes !) are not valid.

---









## The Program Editor

Until you become familiar with the HP Prime commands, the easiest way to enter commands is to select them from the Catalog menu (**Mem B** **Catlg**), or from the Commands menu in the Program Editor (**Cmds**). To enter variables,












symbols, mathematical functions, units, or characters, use the keyboard keys.



## Program Editor: buttons and keys

The buttons and keys in the Program Editor are:

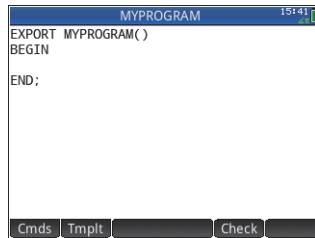
Button or Key	Meaning
<p></p> <p></p> <p>or</p> <p>  and</p> <p> </p> <p></p>	<p>Checks the current program for errors.</p> <p>If your programs goes beyond one screen, you can quickly jump from screen to screen by tapping either side of this button. Tap the left side of the button to display the previous page; tap the right side to display the next page. (The left tap will be inactive if you have the first page of the program displayed.)</p> <p>Opens a menu from which you can choose from common programming commands. The commands are grouped under the options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Strings</li> <li>• Drawing</li> <li>• Matrix</li> <li>• App Functions</li> <li>• Integer</li> <li>• I/O</li> <li>• More</li> </ul> <p>Press  to return to the main menu.</p> <p>The commands in this menu are described in “Commands under the Cmds menu”, beginning on page 470.</p>



Button or Key	Meaning (Continued)
<p></p> <p></p> <p> (Chars)</p> <p> and </p> <p></p> <p></p>	<p>Opens a menu from which you can select common programming commands. The commands are grouped under the options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Block</li> <li>• Branch</li> <li>• Loop</li> <li>• Variable</li> <li>• Function</li> </ul> <p>Press  to return to the main menu.</p> <p>The commands in this menu are described in “Commands under the Tmplt menu”, beginning on page 465.</p> <p>Displays menus for selecting variable names and values.</p> <p>Displays a palette of characters. If you display this palette while a program is open, you can choose a character and it will be added to your program at the cursor point. To add one character, highlight it and tap  or press . To add a character <i>without</i> closing the characters palette, select it and tap .</p> <p>Moves the cursor to the end (or beginning) of the current line.</p> <p>Starts a new line.</p> <p>Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.</p>

Button or Key	Meaning (Continued)
	Deletes the character to the right of the cursor.
	Deletes the entire program.

- To continue the MYPROGRAM example (which we began on page 441), use the cursor keys to position the cursor where you want to insert a



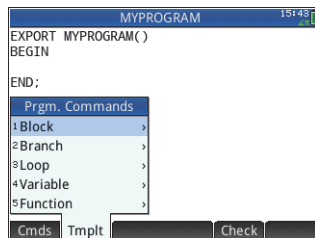
```

MYPROGRAM 15:41
EXPORT MYPROGRAM()
BEGIN
END;
  
```

Cmds Tmplt Check

command. In this example, you need to position the cursor between `BEGIN` and `END`.

- Tap **Tmplt** to open the menu of common programming commands for blocking, branching, looping, variables, and functions.



```

MYPROGRAM 15:43
EXPORT MYPROGRAM()
BEGIN
END;
  
```

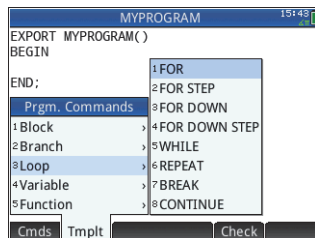
Prgm. Commands

- 1 Block >
- 2 Branch >
- 3 Loop >
- 4 Variable >
- 5 Function >

Cmds Tmplt Check

In this example we'll select a `LOOP` command from the menu.

- Select `Loop` and then select `FOR` from the sub-menu.



```

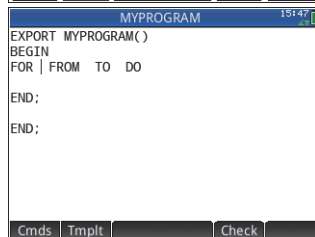
MYPROGRAM 15:43
EXPORT MYPROGRAM()
BEGIN
END;
  
```

Prgm. Commands

- 1 Block >
- 2 Branch >
- 3 Loop >
  - 1 FOR
  - 2 FOR STEP
  - 3 FOR DOWN
  - 4 FOR DOWN STEP
  - 5 WHILE
  - 6 REPEAT
  - 7 BREAK
  - 8 CONTINUE
- 4 Variable >
- 5 Function >

Cmds Tmplt Check

Notice that a `FOR_FROM_TO_DO` template is inserted. All you need do is fill in the missing information.



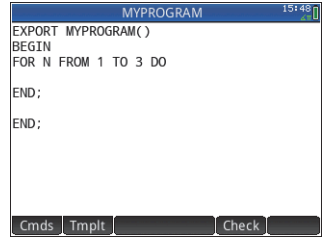
```

MYPROGRAM 15:47
EXPORT MYPROGRAM()
BEGIN
FOR | FROM TO DO
END;
  
```

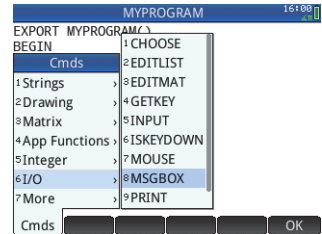
Cmds Tmplt Check

- Using the cursor keys and keyboard, fill in the missing parts of the command. In this case, make the statement match the following:

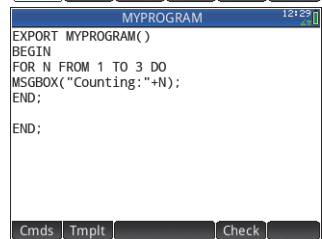
```
FOR N FROM 1 TO
3 DO
```



- Move the cursor to a blank line below the FOR statement.
- Tap **Cmds** to open the menu of common programming commands.
- Select I/O and then select MSGBOX from the sub-menu.



- Fill in the argument of the MSGBOX command, and type a semicolon at the end of the command.



- Tap **Check** to check the syntax of your program.
- When you are finished, press **Shift** **1** **Program** **Y** to return to the Program Catalog or **Settings** to go to Home view. You are ready now to execute the program.

## Run a Program


From Home view, enter the name of the program, with a pair of parentheses after it. If the program takes any arguments, insert these in the parentheses, separated by commas. To run the program, press **Enter**.

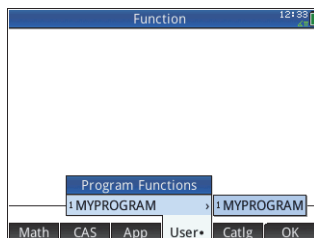
From the Program Catalog, highlight the program you want to run and tap **Run**. When a program is executed from the catalog, the system looks for a function named


START ( ) (no parameters). If it finds one, that function is run. Otherwise, it looks for a function with the same name as the program. If the system finds one, it runs it. Otherwise, nothing happens.

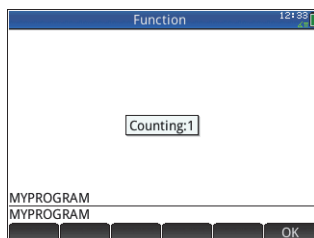
You can also run a program from the USER menu (one of the Toolbox menus):




Tap MYPROGRAM and MYPROGRAM appears on the entry line. Tap  and the program executes, displaying a message box.




Tap  three times to step through the FOR loop. Notice that the number shown increments by 1 each time.



After the program terminates, you can resume any other activity with the HP Prime.

If a program has arguments, when you press  a screen appears prompting you to enter the program parameters.

What you see will differ slightly depending on where you started the program. If you start the program from the Home view, the HP Prime displays the contents of Ans (Home variable containing the last result) when the program has finished. If you start the program from the Program Catalog by tapping the  button, the HP Prime returns you to the Program Catalog when the program ends.

## Multi-function programs

If there is more than one EXPORT function in a program, when  is tapped a list appears for you to choose which function to run. To see this feature, create a program with the text:

```
EXPORT NAME1 ( )
```

```

BEGIN

END;

EXPORT NAME2 ( )

BEGIN

END;

```

Now note that when you tap **Run** or **Debug**, a list with NAME1 and NAME2 appears.

## Debug a Program

You cannot run a program that contains syntax errors. If the program does not do what you expect it to do, or if there is a run-time error detected by the system, you can execute the program step by step, and look at the values of local variables.

Let's debug the program created above: MYPROGRAM.

1. In the Program Catalog, select MYPROGRAM.



Select MYPROGRAM

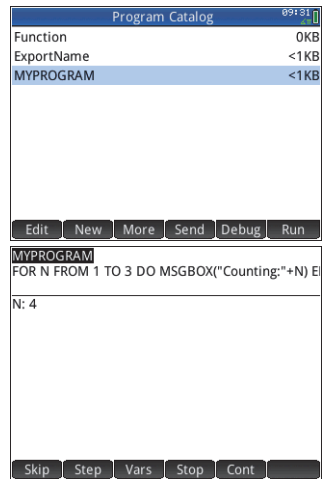
2. Tap **Debug**.

If there is more than one EXPORT function in a file, a list appears for you to choose which function to debug.

While debugging a program, the title of the program appears at the top of the display. Below that is the current line of the program being debugged. The current value of each variable is visible in the main body of the screen. The following menu buttons are available in the debugger:

**Skip**: Skips to the next line of the program

**Step**: Executes the current line



**Vars** : Opens a menu of variables

**Stop** : Closes the debugger

**Cont** : Continues program execution without debugging

- Execute the FOR loop command.

**Step**

The FOR loop starts and the top of the display shows the next line of the program (the MSGBOX command).

- Execute the MSGBOX command.

**Step**

The message box appears. Note that when each message box is displayed, you still have to dismiss it by tapping **OK** or pressing **Enter**.

Tap **Step** and press **Enter** repeatedly to execute the program step-by-step.

Tap **Stop** to close the debugger at the current line of the program, or tap **Cont** to run the rest of the program without using the debugger.

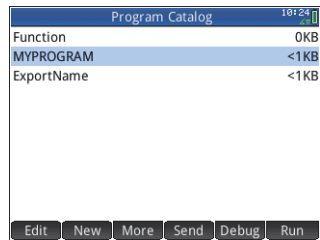
## Edit a program

You edit a program using the Program Editor, which is accessible from the Program Catalog.

- Open the Program Catalog.

**Shift** **T**  
Program Y

- Tap the program you want to edit (or use the arrow keys to highlight it and press **Enter**).



The HP Prime opens the Program Editor. The name of your program appears in the title bar of the display. The buttons and keys you can use to edit your program are listed in "Program Editor: buttons and keys" on page 442.

## Copy a program or part of a program

You can use the global `Copy` and `Paste` commands to copy part or all of a program. The following steps illustrate the process:

1. Open the Program Catalog.



2. Tap the program that has the code you want to copy.
3. Press **Shift** **View Copy** (`Copy`).

The menu buttons change to give you options for copying:

**Begin**: Marks where the copying or cutting is to begin.

**End**: Marks where the copying or cutting is to end.

**All**: Select the entire program.

**Cut**: Cut the selection.

**Copy**: Copy the selection.

4. Select what you want to copy or cut (using the options listed immediately above).
5. Tap **Copy** or **Cut**.
6. Return to the Program Catalog and open the target program.
7. Move the cursor to where you want to insert the copied or cut code.
8. Press **Shift** **Menu Paste** (`Paste`). The clipboard opens. What you most recently copied or cut will be first in the list and highlighted already, so just tap **OK**. The code will be pasted into the program, beginning at the cursor location.

## Delete a program

To delete a program:







1. Open the Program Catalog.



2. Highlight a program to delete and press **Del**.
3. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete the program or **Cancel** to cancel.







## Delete all programs

To delete all programs at once:

1. Open the Program Catalog.  
 
2. Press   (Clear).
3. At the prompt, tap  to delete all programs or  to cancel.

## Delete the contents of a program

You can clear the contents of a program without deleting the program. The program then just has a name and nothing else.

1. Open the Program Catalog.  
 
2. Tap the program to open it.
3. Press   (Clear).
4. At the prompt, tap  to delete the contents or  to cancel.

The text of the program is deleted, but the program name remains.

## To share a program

You can send programs between calculators just as you can send apps, notes, matrices, and lists. See “Sharing data” on page 40.

# The HP Prime programming language

## Variables and visibility

Variables in an HP Prime program can be used to store numbers, lists, matrices, graphics objects, and strings. The name of a variable must be a sequence of alphanumeric characters (letters and numbers), starting with a letter. Names are case-sensitive, so the variables named MaxTemp and maxTemp are different.


The HP Prime has built-in variables of various types, visible globally (that is, visible wherever you are in the calculator). For example, the built-in variables A to Z can be used to store real numbers, Z0 to Z9 can be used to store complex numbers, M0 to M9 can be used to store Matrices and vectors, and so on. These names are



reserved. You cannot use them for other data. For example, you cannot name a program M1, or store a real number in a variable named Z8. In addition to these reserved variables, each HP app has its own reserved variables. Some examples are `Root`, `Xmin`, and `Numstart`. Again, these names cannot be used to name a program. (A full list of system and app variables is given in chapter 21, “Variables”, beginning on page 373.)

In a program you can declare variables for use only within a particular function. This is done using a `LOCAL` declaration. The use of `LOCAL` variables enables you to declare and use variables that will not affect the rest of the calculator. `LOCAL` variables are not bound to a particular type, that is, you can store floating-point numbers, integers, lists, matrices, and symbolic expressions in a variable with any local name. Although the system will allow you to store different types in the same local variable, this is poor programming practice and should be avoided.

Variables declared in a program should have descriptive names. For example, a variable used to store the radius of a circle is better named `RADIUS` than `VGFTTRFG`. You are more likely to remember what the variable is used for if its name matches its purpose.

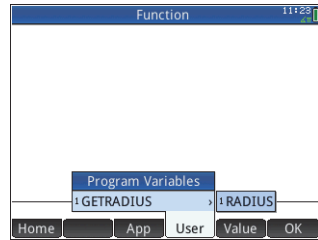
If a variable is needed after the program executes, it can be exported from the program using the `EXPORT` command. To do this, the first command in the program (that is, on a line above the program name) would be `EXPORT RADIUS`. Then, if a value is assigned to `RADIUS`, the name appears on the variables menu () and is visible globally. This feature allows for extensive and powerful interactivity among different environments in the HP Prime. Note that if another program exports a variable with the same name, the most recently exported version will be active.

The program below prompts the user for the value of `RADIUS`, and exports the variable for use outside the program.

```
EXPORT RADIUS;  
EXPORT GETRADIUS ()  
BEGIN
```

```
INPUT (RADIUS) ;  
END;
```

Note that `EXPORT` command for the variable `RADIUS` appears before the heading of the function where `RADIUS` is assigned. After you execute this program, a new variable named `RADIUS` appears on the `USER GETRADIUS` section of the Variables menu.



## Qualifying the name of a variable

The HP Prime has many system variables with names that are apparently the same. For example, the Function app has a variable named `Xmin`, but so too does the Polar app, the Parametric app, the Sequence app, and the Solve app. In a program, and in the Home view, you can refer to a particular version of these variables by qualifying its name. This is done by entering the name of the app (or program) that the variable belongs to, followed by a dot (`.`), and then the actual variable name. For example, the qualified variable `Function.Xmin` refers to the value of `Xmin` within the Function app. Similarly, the qualified variable `Parametric.Xmin` refers to the value of `Xmin` in the Parametric app. Despite having the same name—`Xmin`—the variables could have different values. You do likewise to declare a local variable in a program: specify the name of the program, followed by the dot, and then variable name.

## Functions, their arguments, and parameters

You can define your own functions in a program, and data can be passed to a function using parameters. Functions can return a value (using the `RETURN` statement) or not. When a program is executed from Home view, the program will return the value returned by the *last* statement that was executed.

Furthermore, functions can be defined in a program and exported for use by other programs, in much the same way that variables can be defined and used elsewhere.

In this section, we will create a small set of programs, each illustrating some aspect of programming in the HP Prime. Each program will be used as a building block for a custom app described in the next section, *App Programs*.

## Program ROLLDIE

We'll first create a program called `ROLLDIE`. It simulates the rolling of a single die, returning a random integer between 1 and whatever number is passed into the function.

In the Program Catalog create a new program named `ROLLDIE`. (For help, see page 441.) Then enter the code in the Program Editor.

```
EXPORT ROLLDIE(N)
BEGIN
RETURN 1+FLOOR(RANDOM(N));
END;
```

The first line is the heading of the function. Execution of the `RETURN` statement causes a random integer from 1 to `N` to be calculated and returned as the result of the function. Note that the `RETURN` command causes the execution of the function to terminate. Thus any statements between the `RETURN` statement and `END` are ignored.

In Home view (in fact, anywhere in the calculator where a number can be used), you can enter `ROLLDIE(6)` and a random integer between 1 and 6 inclusive will be returned.

## Program ROLLMANY

Another program could use the `ROLLDIE` function, and generate  $n$  rolls of a die with any number of sides. In the following program, the `ROLLDIE` function is used to generate  $n$  rolls of two dice, each with the number of sides given by the local variable `sides`. The results are stored in list `L2`, so that `L2(1)` shows the number of times the dies came up with a combined total of 1, `L2(2)` shows the number of times the dies came up with a combined total of 2, etc. `L2(1)` should be 0 (since the sum of the numbers on 2 dice must be at least 2).

```
EXPORT ROLLMANY(n,sides)
BEGIN
LOCAL k,roll;
```

```

// initialize list of frequencies
MAKELIST(0,X,1,2*sides,1)►L2;
FOR k FROM 1 TO n DO
  ROLLDIE(sides)+ROLLDIE(sides)►roll;
  L2(roll)+1►L2(roll);
END;
END;

```

By omitting the `EXPORT` command when a function is declared, its visibility can be restricted to the program within which it is defined. For example, you could define the `ROLLDIE` function inside the `ROLLMANY` program like this:

```

ROLLDIE();
EXPORT ROLLMANY(n,sides)
BEGIN
  LOCAL k,roll;
  // initialize list of frequencies
  MAKELIST(0,X,1,2*sides,1)►L2;
  FOR k FROM 1 TO n DO
    ROLLDIE(sides)+ROLLDIE(sides)►roll;
    L2(roll)+1►L2(roll);
  END;
END;
ROLLDIE(n)
BEGIN
  RETURN 1+FLOOR(RANDOM(N));
END;

```

In this scenario, assume there is no `ROLLDIE` function exported from another program. Instead, `ROLLDIE` is visible only to `ROLLMANY`. The `ROLLDIE` function must be declared before it is called. The first line of the program above contains the declaration of the `ROLLDIE` function. The definition of the `ROLLDIE` function is located at the end of the program.

Finally, the list of results could be returned as the result of calling `ROLLMANY` instead of being stored directly in the global list variable, `L2`. This way, if the user wanted to store the results elsewhere, it could be done easily.


```

EXPORT ROLLMANY(n,sides)
BEGIN
  LOCAL k,roll,results;
  MAKELIST(0,X,1,2*sides,1)►results;
  FOR k FROM 1 TO n DO
  ROLLDIE(sides)+ROLLDIE(sides)►roll;
    results(roll)+1►results(roll);
  END;
RETURN results;
END;

```

In Home view you would enter `ROLLMANY(100,6)►L5` and the results of the simulation of 100 rolls of two six-sided dice would be stored in list L5.

## The User Keyboard: Customizing key presses



You can assign alternative functionality to any key on the keyboard, including to the functionality provided by the shift and alpha keys. This enables you to customize the keyboard to your particular needs. For example, you could assign  to a function that is multi-nested on a menu and thus difficult to get to on a menu (such as `ALOG`).

A customized keyboard is called the *user keyboard* and you activate it when you go into *user mode*.

### User mode

There are two user modes:

- Temporary user mode: the next key press, and only the next, enters the object you have assigned to that key. After entering that object, the keyboard automatically returns to its default operation.

To activate temporary user mode, press   (User). Notice that **1U** appears in the title bar. The **1** will remind you that the user keyboard will be active for just one key press.

- Persistent user mode: each key press *from now until you turn off user mode* will enter whatever object you have assigned to a key.

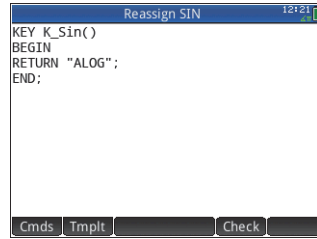
To activate persistent user mode, press

   . Notice that  appears in the title bar. The user keyboard will now remain active until you press   again.

If you are in user mode and press a key that hasn't been re-assigned, the key's standard operation is performed.

## Re-assigning keys




Suppose you want to assign a commonly used function—such as `ALOG`—to its own key on the keyboard. Simply create a new program that mimics the syntax in the image at the right.










```
Reassign SIN 12721
KEY_K_Sin()
BEGIN
RETURN "ALOG";
END;
```

The first line of the program specifies the key to be reassigned using its internal name. (The names of all the keys are given in “Key names” on page 456. They are case-sensitive.)

On line 3, enter the text you want produced when the key being re-assigned is pressed. This text must be enclosed in quote marks.

The next time you want to insert `ALOG` at the position of your cursor, you just press   .




























You can enter any string you like in the `RETURN` line of your program. For example, if you enter “M4”, matrix  $M_4$  will be returned when you press the re-assigned key. You can even get the program to return user-defined functions as well as system functions, and user-defined variables as well as system variables.






























You can also re-assign a shifted key combination. So, for example,    could be re-assigned to produce `SLOPE(F1(X), 3)` rather than the lowercase  $t$ . Then if    is entered in Home view and  is pressed, the gradient at  $X = 3$  of whatever function is currently defined as  $F1(X)$  in the Function app would be returned.

## Key names






The first line of a program that re-assigns a key must specify the key to be reassigned using its internal name.

The table below gives the internal name for each key. Note that key names are case-sensitive.

Internal name of keys and key states				
Key	Name	 + key	 + key	  + key
	K_0	KS_0	KA_0	KSA_0
	K_1	KS_1	KA_1	KSA_1
	K_2	KS_2	KA_2	KSA_2
	K_3	KS_3	KA_2	KSA_2
	K_4	KS_4	KA_4	KSA_4
	K_5	KS_5	KA_5	KSA_5
	K_6	KS_6	KA_6	KSA_6
	K_7	KS_7	KA_7	KSA_7
	K_8	KS_8	KA_8	KSA_8
	K_9	KS_9	KA_9	KSA_9
	K_Abc	KS_Abc	KA_Abc	KSA_Abc
	K_Alpha	KS_Alpha	KA_Alpha	KSA_Alpha
	K_Apps	KS_Apps	KA_Apps	KSA_Apps
	K_Bksp	KS_Bksp	KA_Bksp	KSA_Bksp
	K_Comma	KS_Comma	KA_Comma	KSA_Comma
	K_Cos	KS_Cos	KA_Cos	KSA_Cos
	K_Div	KS_Div	KA_Div	KSA_Div
	K_Dot	KS_Dot	KA_Dot	KSA_Dot
	K_Down	KS_Down	KA_Down	KSA_Down
	K_Enter	KS_Enter	KA_Enter	KSA_Enter
	K_Home	KS_Home	KA_Home	KSA_Home
	K_Left	KS_Left	KA_Left	KSA_Left
	K_Right	KS_Right	KA_Right	KSA_Right

Internal name of keys and key states				
Key	Name	 + key	 + key	  + key
	K_Ln	KS_Ln	KA_Ln	KSA_Ln
	K_Log	KS_Log	KA_Log	KSA_Log
	K_Minus	KS_Minus	KA_Minus	KSA_Minus
	K_Neg	KS_Neg	KA_Neg	KSA_Neg
	K_Num	KS_Num	KA_Num	KSA_Num
	K_On	KS_On	KA_On	KSA_On
	K_Plot	KS_Plot	KA_Plot	KSA_Plot
	K_Plus	KS_Plus	KA_Plus	KSA_Plus
	K_Power	KS_Power	KA_Power	KSA_Power
	K_Sin	KS_Sin	KA_Sin	KSA_Sin
	K_Sq	KS_Sq	KA_Sq	KSA_Sq
	K_Symb	KS_Symb	KA_Symb	KSA_Symb
	K_Tan	KS_Tan	KA_Tan	KSA_Tan
	K_Up	KS_Up	KA_Up	KSA_Up
	K_Vars	KS_Vars	KA_Vars	KSA_Vars
	K_View	KS_View	KA_View	KSA_View
	K_Xttn	KS_Xttn	KA_Xttn	KSA_Xttn
				
				
				
				
				
				
				
				
















Internal name of keys and key states			
Key	Name	 + key	 + key
			
			
			

## App programs

An app is a unified collection of views, programs, notes, and associated data. Creating an app program allows you to redefine the app's views and how a user will interact with those views. This is done with (a) dedicated program functions with special names and (b) by redefining the views in the Views menu.

## Using dedicated program functions


These programs are run when the keys shown in the table below are pressed. These program functions are designed to be used in the context of an app.

Program	Name	Equivalent Keystrokes
Symb	Symbolic view	
SymbSetup	Symbolic Setup	 
Plot	Plot view	
PlotSetup	Plot Setup	 
Num	Numeric view	
NumSetup	Numeric Setup	 
Info	Info view	 
START	Starts an app	
RESET	Resets or initializes an app	

## Redefining the Views menu



The Views menu allows any app to define views in addition to the standard seven views shown in the table above. By default, each HP app has its own set of additional views contained in this menu. The `VIEWS` command allows you to redefine these views to run programs you have created for an app. The syntax for the `VIEWS` command is:

```
VIEWS "text"
```

By adding `VIEWS "text"` before the declaration of a function, you will override the list of views for the app. For example, if your app program defines three views—`"SetSides"`, `"RollDice"` and `"PlotResults"`—when you press  you will see `SetSides`, `RollDice`, and `PlotResults` instead of the app's default view list.

## Customizing an app

When an app is active, its associated program appears as the first item in the Program Catalog. It is within this program that you put functions to create a custom app. A useful procedure for customizing an app is illustrated below:


1. Decide on the HP app that you want to customize. The customized app inherits all the properties of the HP app.
2. Go to the Applications Library () , highlight the HP app, tap  and save the app with a unique name.
3. Customize the new app if you need to (for example, by configuring the axes or angle measure settings).
4. Develop the functions to work with your customized app. When you develop the functions, use the app naming conventions described above.
5. Put the `VIEWS` command in your program to modify the app's Views menu.
6. Decide if your app will create new global variables. If so, you should `EXPORT` them from a separate user program that is called from the `start()` function in the app program. This way they will not have their values lost.
7. Test the app and debug the associated programs.

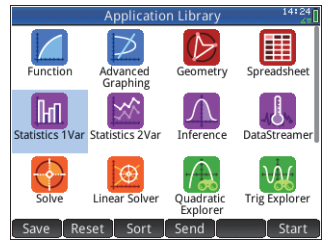
It is possible to link more than one app via programs. For example, a program associated with the Function app could execute a command to start the Statistics 1Var app, and a program associated with the Statistics 1Var app could return to the Function app (or launch any other app).



## Example

The following example illustrates the process of creating a custom app. The app is based on the built-in Statistics 1Var app. It simulates the rolling of a pair of dice, each with a number of sides specified by the user. The results are tabulated, and can be viewed either in a table or graphically.

1. In the Application Library, select the Statistics 1Var app but don't open it.

 Select  
Statistics  
1Var.



2. Tap .
3. Enter a name for the new app (such as DiceSimulation.)
4. Tap  twice.

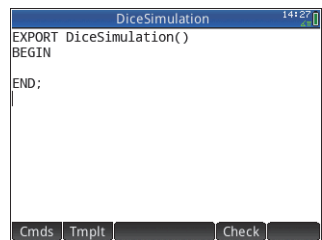
The new app appears in the Application Library.

5. Open the new app.
6. Open the Program Catalog.

7. Tap the program to open it.

Each customised app has one program associated with it. Initially, this program is empty. You customize the app by entering functions into that program.





At this point you decide how you want the user to interact with the app. In this example, we will want the user to be able to:

- start the app
- specify the number of sides (that is, faces) on each die
- specify number of times to roll the dice
- start the app again.

With that in mind, we will create the following views:

`START`, `SETSIDES`, and `SETNUMROLLS`.

The `START` option will initialize the app and display a note that gives the user instructions. The user will also interact with the app through the Numeric view and the Plot view. These views will be activated by pressing  and , but the functions `Num` and `Plot` in our app program will actually launch those views after doing some configuration.

The program discussed earlier in this chapter to get the number of sides for a dice is expanded here, so that the possible sums of two such die are stored in dataset `D1`. Enter the following sub-routines into the program for the `DiceSimulation` app.

## The program `DiceSimulation`

```
START ()
BEGIN
DICESIMVARS ();
{}►D1;
{}►D2;
SetSample (H1, D1);
SetFreq (H1, D2);
0►H1Type;
END;
VIEWS "Roll Dice", ROLLMANY ()
BEGIN
LOCAL k, roll;
MAKELIST (X+1, X, 1, 2*SIDES-1, 1)►D1;
MAKELIST (X+1, X, 1, 2*SIDES-1, 1)►D2;
FOR k FROM 1 TO ROLLS DO
roll:=ROLLDIE (SIDES)+ROLLDIE (SIDES);
D2 (roll-1)+1►D2 (roll-1);
END;
```

```

-1▶Xmin;
MAX(D1)+1▶Xmax;
0▶Ymin;
MAX(D2)+1▶Ymax;
STARTVIEW(1,1);
END;
VIEWS "Set Sides",SETSIDES()
BEGIN
REPEAT
INPUT(SIDES,"Die Sides","N=","ENTER
num sides",2);
FLOOR(SIDES)▶SIDES;
IF SIDES<2 THEN
MSGBOX("Must be >= 2");
END;
UNTIL SIDES >=2;
END;
VIEWS "Set Rolls",SETROLLS()
BEGIN
REPEAT
INPUT(ROLLS,"Num of rolls","N=","Enter
numrolls",25);
FLOOR(ROLLS)▶ROLLS;
IF ROLL<1 THEN
MSGBOX(" u must enter a num >=1");
END;
UNTIL ROLL>=1;
END;
PLOT()
BEGIN
-1▶Xmin;
MAX(D1)+1▶Xmax;
0▶Ymin;
MAX(D2)+1▶Ymax;
STARTVIEW(1,1);
END;


```

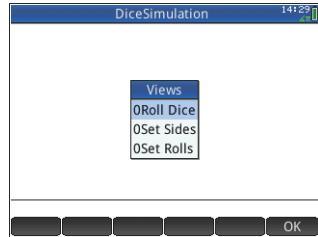
The `ROLLMANY()` routine is an adaptation of the program presented earlier in this chapter. Since you cannot pass parameters to a program called through a selection from a custom Views menu, the exported variables `SIDES` and `ROLLS` are used in place of the parameters that were used in the previous versions.


The program above calls two other user programs: `ROLLDIE()` and `DICESIMVARS()`. `ROLLDIE()` appears earlier in this chapter. Here is `DICESIMVARS`. Create a program with that name and enter the following code.

## The program DICESIMVARS

```
EXPORT ROLLS, SIDES;
EXPORT DICESIMVARS ()
BEGIN
  10 ► ROLLS;
  6 ► SIDES;
END;
```



Press  to see the custom app menu. Here you can set the number of sides of the dice, the number of rolls, and execute a simulation.



After running a simulation, press  to see a histogram of your simulation results.

Doesn't work in build 3105

## Program commands

This section describes each program command. The commands under the  menu are described first. The commands under the  menu are described in “Commands under the Cmds menu” on page 470.

# Commands under the Tmpl menu

## Block

The block commands determine the beginning and end of a sub-routine or function. There is also a `Return` command to recall results from sub-routines or functions.

**BEGIN END** Syntax: `BEGIN stmt1;stmt2;...stmtN; END;`

Defines a command or set of commands to be executed together. In the simple program:

```
EXPORT SQM1 (X)
BEGIN
RETURN X^2-1;
END;
```

the block is the single `RETURN` command.

If you entered `SQM1 (8)` in Home view, the result returned would be 63.

**RETURN** Syntax: `RETURN expression;`

Returns the current value of *expression*.

**KILL** Syntax: `KILL;`

Stops the step-by-step execution of the current program (with debug).

## Branch

In what follows, the plural word *commands* refers to both a single command or a set of commands.

**IF THEN** Syntax: `IF test THEN commands END;`

Evaluate *test*. If *test* is true (not 0), execute *commands*. Otherwise, nothing happens.

**IF THEN ELSE** Syntax: `IF test THEN commands 1 ELSE commands 2 END;`

Evaluate *test*. If *test* is true (non 0), execute *commands 1*, otherwise, execute *commands 2*

**CASE** Syntax:

`CASE`

```
IF test1 THEN commands1 END
```

```
IF test2 THEN commands2 END
```

```
...
```

```
[DEFAULT commands]
```

```
END;
```

Evaluates *test1*. If true, execute *commands1* and end the CASE. Otherwise, evaluate *test2*. If true, execute *commands2*. Continue evaluating tests until a true is found. If no true test is found, execute default *commands*, if provided.

Example:

```
CASE
```

```
IF  $x < 0$  THEN RETURN "negative"; END
```

```
IF  $x < 1$  THEN RETURN "small"; END
```

```
DEFAULT RETURN "large";
```

```
END;
```

**IFERR** IFERR *commands1* THEN *commands2* [ELSE *commands3*] END;

Executes sequence of *commands1*. If an error occurs during execution of *commands1*, executes sequence of *commands2*.

**IFERR ELSE** IFERR *commands1* THEN *commands2* ELSE *commands3* END;

Executes sequence of *commands1*. If an error occurs during execution of *commands1*, executes sequence of *commands2*. Otherwise, execute sequence of *commands3*.

## Loop

**FOR** Syntax: FOR *var* FROM *start* TO *finish* DO *commands*

Sets variable *var* to *start*, and for as long as this variable is less than or equal to *finish*, executes the sequence of *commands*, and then adds 1 (*increment*) to *var*. If **DOWNTO** is used the *start* value of the variable is decreased until the *finish* value is reached.

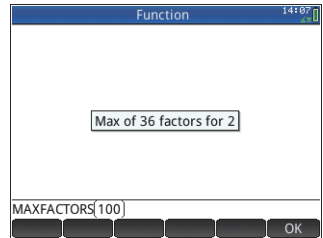


Example 1: This program determines which integer from 2 to N has the greatest number of factors.

```
EXPORT MAXFACTORS (N)
BEGIN
LOCAL cur, max, k, result;
1► max; 1► result;
FOR k FROM 2 TO N DO
SIZE(idivis(k)) ► cur;
IF cur > max THEN
cur ► max;
k ► result;
END;
END;
MSGBOX("Max of "+ max +" factors for "+result);
```

In Home, enter  
MAXFACTORS(100).

This syntax is not working as at build 3015.



**FOR STEP** Syntax: FOR *var* FROM *start* TO *finish* [STEP *increment*] DO *commands*

Sets variable *var* to *start*, and for as long as this variable is less than or equal to *finish*, executes the sequence of *commands*, and then adds 1 (*increment*) to *var*.

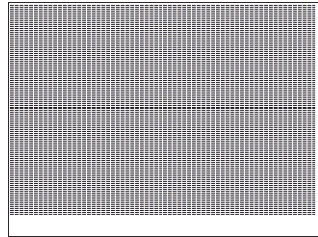
Example 2: This program draws an interesting pattern on the screen.

```
EXPORT DRAWPATTERN ()
BEGIN
LOCAL xincr, yincr, color;
STARTAPP("Function");
RECT();
xincr := (Xmax - Xmin)/254;
yincr := (Ymax - Ymin)/110;
FOR X FROM Xmin TO Xmax STEP xincr DO
```

```

FOR Y FROM Ymin TO Ymax STEP yincr DO
  color := FLOOR(X^2+Y^2) MOD 4;
  PIXON(X,Y,color);
END;
END;
FREEZE;
END;

```



**FOR DOWN** Syntax: `FOR var FROM start DOWNTO finish DO commands`

Sets variable *var* to *start*, and for as long as this variable is less than or equal to *finish*, executes the sequence of *commands*, and then adds 1 (*increment*) to *var*. If `DOWNTO` is used the *start* value of the variable is decreased until the *finish* value is reached.

**FOR DOWN STEP** Syntax: `FOR var FROM start DOWNTO finish [STEP increment] DO commands`

Sets variable *var* to *start*, and for as long as this variable is less than or equal to *finish*, executes the sequence of *commands*, and then adds 1 (*increment*) to *var*. If `DOWNTO` is used the *start* value of the variable is decreased until the *finish* value is reached.

**WHILE** Syntax: `WHILE test DO commands END;`

Evaluate *test*. If result is true (not 0), executes the *commands*, and repeat.

Example: A perfect number is one that is equal to the sum of all its proper divisors. For example, 6 is a perfect number because  $6 = 1+2+3$ . The example below returns true when its argument is a perfect number.

```

EXPORT ISPERFECT(n)
BEGIN
  LOCAL d, sum;
  2 ► d;
  1 ► sum;
  WHILE sum <= n AND d < n DO
    IF irem(n,d)==0 THEN

```

```

sum+d ► sum;
END;
d+1► d;
END;
RETURN sum==n;
END;

```

The following program displays all the perfect numbers up to 1000:

```

EXPORT PERFECTNUMS ()
BEGIN
LOCAL k;
FOR k FROM 2 TO 1000 DO
IF ISPERFECT(k) THEN
MSGBOX(k+" is perfect, press OK");
END;
END;
END;

```

**REPEAT** Syntax: REPEAT *commands* UNTIL *test*;

Repeats the sequence of *commands* until *test* is true (not 0).

The example below prompts for a positive value for SIDES, modifying an earlier program in this chapter:

```

EXPORT SIDES;
EXPORT GETSIDES ()
BEGIN
REPEAT
INPUT (SIDES, "Die Sides", "N = ", "Enter
num sides", 2);
UNTIL SIDES>0;
END;

```

**BREAK** Syntax: BREAK (*n*)

Exits from loops by breaking out of *n* loop levels. Execution picks up with the first statement after the loop. With no argument exit from a single loop.

**CONTINUE** Syntax: CONTINUE

Transfer execution to the start of the next iteration of a loop.

## Variable

These commands enable you to control the visibility of a user-defined variable.

**LOCAL** Local.

Syntax: `LOCAL var1,var2,...varn;`

Makes the variables `var1`, `var2`, etc. local to the program in which they are found.


**EXPORT** Exports the variable so that it is globally available.


## Function

These commands enable you to control the visibility of a user-defined function.

**EXPORT** Export.

Syntax: `EXPORT (FunctionName)`


Exports the function `FunctionName` so that it is globally available and appears on the User menu (  User ).

**VIEW** Sets text that the user can see by pressing .

**KEY** A prefix to a key name when creating a user keyboard. See “The User Keyboard: Customizing key presses” on page 455.

## Commands under the Cmds menu

### Strings

A string is a sequence of characters enclosed in double quotes (“”). To put a double quote in a string, use two consecutive double quotes. The `\` character starts an escape sequence, and the character(s) immediately following are interpreted specially. `\n` inserts a new line and two backslashes insert a single backslash. To put a new line into the string, press  to wrap the text at that point.

**ASC** Syntax: `asc (str)`  
 Returns a vector containing the ASCII codes of string *str*.  
 Example: `asc ("AB")` returns [65,66]

**CHAR** Syntax: `char (vector or int)`  
 Returns the string corresponding to the character codes in *vector*, or the single code *int*.  
 Examples: `char (65)` returns "A"; `char ([82,77,72])` returns "RMH"

**DIM** Syntax: `dim (str)`  
 Returns the number of characters in string *str*.  
 Example: `dim ("12345")` returns 5, `dim ("" )` and `dim ("\n")` return 1. (Notice the use of the two double quotes and the escape sequence.)

**STRING** Syntax: `string (object);`  
 Returns a string representation of the *object*. The result varies depending on the type of *object*.  
`string (2/3);` results in `string ("2/3")`  
 Examples:

String	Result
<code>string (2/3)</code>	"0.6666666666667"
<code>string (F1), when F1(X) = COS(X)</code>	"COS(X)"
<code>string (L1) when L1 = {1,2,3}</code>	"{1,2,3}"
<code>string (M1) when M1 =</code> $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$	"[[1,2,3],[4,5,6]]"

**INSTRING** Syntax: `inString (str1,str2)`  
 Returns the index of the first occurrence of *str2* in *str1*.  
 Returns 0 if *str2* is not present in *str1*. Note that the first character in a string is position 1.

Examples:

`inString ("vanilla", "van")` returns 1.

`inString ("banana", "na")` returns 3

`inString ("ab", "abc")` returns 0

**LEFT** Syntax: `left (str,n)`

Return the first  $n$  characters of string *str*. If  $n \geq \dim(str)$  or  $n < 0$ , returns *str*. If  $n == 0$  returns the empty string.

Example: `left ("MOMOGUMBO",3)` returns "MOM"

**RIGHT** Syntax: `right (str,n)`

Returns the last  $n$  characters of string *str*. If  $n \leq 0$ , returns empty string. If  $n > -\dim(str)$ , returns *str*

Example: `right ("MOMOGUMBO",5)` returns "GUMBO"

**MID** Syntax: `mid (str,pos, [n])`

Extracts  $n$  characters from string *str* starting at index *pos*.  $n$  is optional, if not specified, extracts all the remainder of the string.

Example: `mid ("MOMOGUMBO",3,5)` returns "MOGUM", `mid ("PUDGE",4)` returns "GE"

**ROTATE** Syntax: `rotate (str,n)`

Permutation of characters in string *str*. If  $0 \leq n < \dim(str)$ , shifts  $n$  places to left. If  $-\dim(str) < n \leq -1$ , shifts  $n$  spaces to right. If  $n > \dim(str)$  or  $n < -\dim(str)$ , returns *str*.

Examples:

`rotate ("12345",2)` returns "34512"

`rotate ("12345",-1)` returns "51234"

`rotate ("12345",6)` returns "12345"

**STRINGFROMID** Syntax: `STRINGFROMID(integer)`

Returns, in the current language, the built-in string associated in the internal string table with the specified *integer*.

Examples:

`STRINGFROMID(56)` returns "Complex"

`STRINGFROMID(202)` returns "Home Vars"

**REPLACE** Syntax: `REPLACE(object1, start, object2)`

Replaces part of object<sub>1</sub> with object<sub>2</sub> beginning at *start*. The objects can be matrices, vectors, or stings.

Example:

REPLACE ("12345",3,"99") returns "12995"

## Drawing

There are 10 built-in graphics variables in the HP Prime, called *G0–G9*. *G0* is always the current screen graphic.

*G1* to *G9* can be used to store temporary graphic objects (called *GROBs* for short) when programming applications that use graphics. They are temporary and thus cleared when the calculator turns off.

Twenty-six functions can be used to modify graphics variables. Thirteen of them work with Cartesian coordinates using the Cartesian plane defined in the current app by the variables *Xmin*, *Xmax*, *Ymin*, and *Ymax*.

The remaining thirteen work with pixel coordinates where the pixel 0, 0 is the top left pixel of the *GROB*, and 255, 126 is the bottom right. Functions in this second set have a *\_P* suffix to the function name.

**C→PX** Converts from Cartesian coordinates to screen coordinates.

**DRAWMENU** Syntax: DRAWMENU({text<sub>1</sub>, text<sub>2</sub>, ...})

Draws a menu showing the text items listed.

**FREEZE** Syntax: FREEZE

Pauses program execution until a key is pressed. This prevents the screen from being redrawn after the end of the program execution, leaving the modified display on the screen for the user to see.

**PX→C** Converts from screen coordinates to Cartesian coordinates.

### *Pixels and Cartesian*

**ARC\_P**

**ARC** Syntax: ARC (*G*, *x*, *y*, *r* [, *a1*, *a2*, *c*])

`ARC_P (G, x, y, r [, a1, a2, c])`

Draws an arc or circle on *G*, centered on point *x,y*, with radius *r* and color *c* starting at angle *a1* and ending on angle *a2*.

*G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is *GO*

*r* is given in pixels.

*c* is optional and if not specified black is used.

*a1* and *a2* follow the current angle mode and are optional. The default is a full circle.

## **BLIT\_P**

**BLIT** Syntax: `BLIT ([tgtGRB, dx1, dy1, dx2, dy2],  
srcGRB [,sx1, sy1, sx2, sy2, c])`  
`BLIT_P ([tgtGRB, dx1, dy1, dx2, dy2],  
srcGRB [,sx1, sy1, sx2, sy2, c])`

Copies the region of *srcGRB* between point *sx1, sy1* and *sx2, sy2* into the region of *trgtGRB* between points *dx1, dy1* and *dx2, dy2*. Do not copy pixels from *srcGRB* that are color *c*.

*trgtGRB* can be any of the graphics variables. *trgtGRB* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is *GO*.

*srcGRB* can be any of the graphics variables.

*dx2, dy2* are optional and if not specified will be calculated so that the destination area is the same size as the source area.

*sx2, sy2* are optional and if not specified will be the bottom right of the *srcGRB*.

*sx1, sy1* are optional and if not specified will be the top left of *srcGRB*.

*dx1, dy1* are optional and if not specified will be the top left of *trgtGRB*.

*c* can be 0 to 3 (0=black, 1= dark gray, 2= light gray, 3= white). *c* is optional. If not specified all pixels from *G2* will be copied.



---

**NOTE**

Using the same variable for *trgtGRB* and *srcGRB* can be unpredictable when the source and destination overlap.

---

**DIMGROB\_P****DIM\_GROB**

Syntax: `DIMGROB (G, w, h [,c])` or `DIMGROB (G [,line_1, line_2,...,line_h])`

`DIMGROB (G, w, h [,c])` or `DIMGROB (G [,line_1, line_2,...,line_h])`

Sets the dimensions of *GROB* *G* to *w*\**h*. Initializes the graphic *G* with color *c* or with the graphic data provided in the list. *G* can be any graphics variable except *G0*. *c* can be 0 to 3 (0=black, 1= dark gray, 2= light gray, 3= white). *c* is optional. The default is white.

If the graphic is initialized using graphic data, the list must have as many numbers as the height of the *GROB*. Each number, as seen in base 16, describes a line. Two bits are used for each pixel (00=black, 01=dark gray, 10=light gray, 11=white). Hence, each hex digit describes two pixels.

You can enter hexadecimal numbers using the `0xdigits` syntax.

The first pixel of the line is defined by the least significant bit of the number; the 2nd pixel by the second least significant bit, etc.

**GETPIX\_P****GETPIX**

Syntax: `GETPIX([G], xposition, yposition)`

`GETPIX_P ([G], xposition, yposition)`

Returns the color of the pixel *G* with coordinates *x*,*y*.

*G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is *G0*, the current graphic.

**GROBH\_P****GROBH**

Syntax: `GROBH (G)`

`GROBH_P (G)`

Returns the height of *G*.

*G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is *G0*.

## GROBW\_P

**GROBW** Syntax: `GROBW (G)`

`GROBW_P (G)`

Returns the width of *G*.

*G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional.  
The default is *GO*.

## INVERT\_P

**INVERT** Syntax: `INVERT ([G, x1, y1, x2, y2])`

`INVERT_P ([G, x1, y1, x2, y2])`

Inverts a rectangle on *G* between points *x1,y1* and *x2,y2*. This means that every black pixel becomes white and vice-versa. In the same way Light gray and dark gray are inverted. *G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is *GO*.

*x2, y2* are optional and if not specified will be the bottom right of the graphic.

*x1, y1* are optional and if not specified will be the top left of the graphic. If only one *x,y* pair is specified, it refers to the top left.

## LINE\_P

**LINE** Syntax: `LINE (G, x1, y1, x2, y2, c)`

`LINE_P (G, x1, y1, x2, y2, c)`

Draws a line of color *c* on *G* between points *x1,y1* and *x2,y2*.

*G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional.  
The default is *GO*.

*c* can be 0 to 3 (0=black, 1= dark gray, 2= light gray, 3= white). *c* is optional. The default is black.

## PIXOFF\_P

**PIXOFF** Syntax: `PIXOFF ([G], xposition, yposition)`

`PIXOFF_P ([G], xposition, yposition)`

Sets the color of the pixel *G* with coordinates *x,y* to white. *G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional.  
The default is *GO*, the current graphic

## PIXON\_P

**PIXON** Syntax: `PIXON ([G], xposition, yposition [ ,color])`  
`PIXON_P ([G], xposition, yposition [ ,color])`

Sets the color of the pixel *G* with coordinates *x,y* to *color*. *G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is *G0*, the current graphic. *Color* can be 0 to 3 (0=black, 1= dark gray, 2= light gray, 3= white) and is optional. The default is 0.

## RECT\_P

**RECT** Syntax: `RECT ([G, x1, y1, x2, y2, edgecolor, fillcolor])`  
`RECT_P ([G, x1, y1, x2, y2, edgecolor, fillcolor])`

Draws a rectangle on *G* between points *x1,y1* and *x2,y2* using *edgecolor* for the perimeter and *fillcolor* for the inside.

*G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is *G0*, the current graphic.

*x1, y1* are optional. The default values represent the top left of the graphic.

*x2, y2* are optional. The default values represent the bottom right of the graphic.

*edgecolor* and *fillcolor* can be -1 to 3 (-1= transparent, 0=black, 1= dark gray, 2= light gray, 3= white).

*edgecolor* is optional. The default is white.

*fillcolor* is optional. The default is *edgecolor*.

To erase a *GROB*, execute `RECT (G)`. To clear the screen execute `RECT ()`.

When optional arguments are provided in a command with multiple optional parameters (like `RECT`), the arguments provided correspond to the leftmost parameters first. For example, in the program below, the arguments 40 and 90 in the `RECT_P` command correspond to *x1* and *y1*. The argument 0 corresponds to *edgecolor*, since there is only the one additional argument. If there had been two additional arguments, they would have referred to *x2* and *y2* rather than *edgecolor* and *fillcolor*. The program produces the figure below.

```
EXPORT BOX ()
BEGIN
RECT ();
RECT_P (40, 90, 0)
;
FREEZE;
END;
```



The program below also uses the `RECT_P` command. In this case, the pair of arguments `0` and `3` correspond to `x2` and `y2`. The program produces the figure below to the right.

```
EXPORT BOX ()
BEGIN
RECT (); INVERT (G
0);
RECT_P (40, 90, 0,
3);
FREEZE;
END;
```



## SUBGROB\_P

### SUBGROB

Syntax: `SUBGROB (srcGRB [ ,x1, y1, x2, y2], tgtGRB)`

`SUBGROB_P (srcGRB [ ,x1, y1, x2, y2], tgtGRB)`

Sets `tgtGRB` to be a copy of the area of `srcGRB` between points `x1,y1` and `x2,y2`.

`srcGRB` can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is `G0`.

`tgtGRB` can be any of the graphics variables except `G0`.  
`x2, y2` are optional and if not specified will be the bottom right of `srcGRB`.

`x1, y1` are optional and if not specified will be the top left of `srcGRB`.

---

### NOTE

`SUBGROB (G1, G4)` will copy `G1` in `G4`.

---

## TEXTOUT\_P

### TEXTOUT

Syntax: `TEXTOUT (text [ ,G], x, y [ ,font, c1, width, c2])`

TEXTOUT\_P (*text* [, *G*], *x*, *y* [, *font*, *c1*, *width*,  
*c2*])

Draws text using color *c1* on graphic *G* at position *x*, *y* using *font*. Do not draw text more than *width* pixels wide and erase the background before drawing the text using color *c2*. *G* can be any of the graphics variables and is optional. The default is *G0*.

Font can be:

*0*: current font selected in mode screen, *1*: small font *2*: large font. Font is optional and if not specified is the current font selected in mode screen.

*c1* can be 0 to 3 (0=black, 1= dark gray, 2= light gray, 3= white). *c1* is optional. The default is black.

*width* is optional and if not specified, no clipping is performed.

*c2* can be 0 to 3 (0=black, 1= dark gray, 2= light gray, 3= white). *c2* is optional. If not specified the background is not erased.

Example:

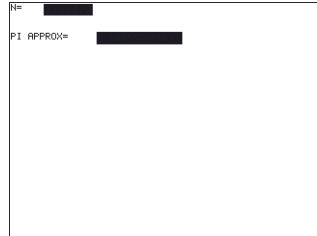
This program displays the successive approximations for using the series for the arctangent(1).

```
EXPORT RUNPISERIES ()
BEGIN
LOCAL sign;
2 ► K; 4 ► A;
-1 ► sign;
RECT ();
TEXTOUT_P ("N=", 0, 0);
TEXTOUT_P ("PI APPROX=", 0, 30);
REPEAT
A+sign*4/(2*K-1) ► A;
TEXTOUT_P (K, 35, 0, 2, 0, 100, 3);
TEXTOUT_P (A, 90, 30, 2, 0, 100, 3);
```

```

sign*-1 ►
sign;
K+1► K;
UNTIL 0;
END;

```



The program executes until the user presses



to terminate. The

spaces after  $K$  (the number of the term) and  $A$  (the current approximation) in the `TEXTOUT_P` commands are there to overwrite the previously displayed value.

## Matrix

Some matrix commands take as their argument the matrix variable name on which the command is applied. Valid names are the global variables `M0–M9` or a local variable that contains a matrix.

**ADDCOL** Syntax: `ADDCOL (name [ ,value ],...,valuen],column_number)`

Inserts values into a new column inserted before `column_number` in the specified matrix. You enter the values as a vector. (These are not optional arguments.) The values must be separated by commas and the number of values must be the same as the number of rows in the matrix name.

**ADDRROW** Syntax: `ADDRROW (name [ ,value ],...,valuen],row_number)`

Inserts values into a new row inserted before `row_number` in the specified matrix. You enter the values as a vector. (These are not optional arguments.) The values must be separated by commas and the number of values must be the same as the number of columns in the matrix name.

**DELROW** Syntax: `DELROW (name ,row_number)`

Deletes `column column_number` from matrix name.

**DELROW** Syntax: `DELROW (name ,row_number)`

Deletes row `row_number` from matrix name.

- EDITMAT** Syntax: `EDITMAT (name)`  
Starts the Matrix Editor and displays the specified matrix. If used in programming, returns to the program when user presses `OK`. Even though this command returns the matrix that was edited, `EDITMAT` cannot be used as an argument in other matrix commands.
- REDIM** Syntax: `REDIM (name, size)`  
Redimensions the specified matrix (*name*) or vector to *size*. For a matrix, *size* is a list of two integers ( $n1, n2$ ). For a vector, *size* is a list containing one integer (*n*). Existing values in the matrix are preserved. Fill values will be 0.
- REPLACE** Syntax: `REPLACE (name, start, object)`  
Replaces portion of a matrix or vector stored in *name* with an *object* starting at position *start*. *Start* for a matrix is a list containing two numbers; for a vector, it is a single number. `REPLACE` also works with lists, graphics, and strings. For example, `REPLACE("123456", 2, "GRM") -> "1GRM56"`
- SCALE** Syntax: `SCALE(name, value, rownumber)`  
Multiplies the specified *row\_number* of the specified matrix by *value*.
- SCALEADD** Syntax: `SCALEADD(name, value, row1, row2)`  
Multiplies the specified *row1* of the matrix (*name*) by *value*, then adds this result to the second specified *row2* of the matrix (*name*).
- SUB** Syntax: `SUB (name, start, end)`  
Extracts a sub-object—a portion of a list, matrix, or graphic—and stores it in *name*. *Start* and *end* are each specified using a list with two numbers for a matrix, a number for vector or lists, or an ordered pair, (*X*, *Y*), for graphics: `SUB (M1 {1, 2}, {2, 2})`
- SWAPCOL** Syntax: `SWAPCOL (name, column1, column2)`  
Swaps *column1* and *column2* of the specified matrix (*name*).
- SWAPROW** Syntax: `SWAPROW (name, row1, row2)`

Swaps *row1* and *row2* in the specified matrix (*name*).

## App Functions

These commands allow you to launch any HP app, bring up any view of the current app, and change the options in the Views menu.

**STARTAPP** Syntax: `STARTAPP ("name")`

Starts the app with *name*. This will cause the app program's `START` function to be run, if it is present. The app's default view will be started. Note that the `START` function is always executed when the user taps **Start** in the Application Library. This also works for user-defined apps.

Example: `STARTAPP ("Function")` launches the Function app.

**STARTVIEW** Syntax: `STARTVIEW (n [,draw?])`

Starts the *n*th view of the current app. If *draw?* is true (that is, not 0), it will force an immediate redrawing of the screen for that view.

The view numbers (*n*) are as follows:

```
Symbolic:0
Plot:1
Numeric:2
Symbolic Setup:3
Plot Setup:4
Numeric Setup:5
App Info: 6
Views Menu:7
First special view (Split Screen Plot Detail):8
Second special view (Split Screen Plot Table):9
Third special view (Autoscale):10
Fourth special view (Decimal):11
Fifth special view (Integer):12
Sixth special view (Trig):13
```

The special views in parentheses refer to the Function app, and may differ in other apps. The number of a special view corresponds to its position in the Views menu for that app. The first special view is launched by



STARTVIEW (8), the second with STARTVIEW (9), and so on.

You can also launch views that are not specific to an app by specifying a value for *n* that is less than 0:

```
HomeScreen:-1
Home Modes:-2
Memory Manager:-3
Applications Library:-4
Matrix Catalog:-5
List Catalog:-6
Program Catalog:-7
Notes Catalog:-8
```

**VIEW** Syntax: `VIEWES ("string"[,program_name])`  
Adds a view to the Views menu. When *string* is selected, runs *program\_name*.

## Integer

**BITAND** Syntax: `BITAND(int1, int2, ... intn)`  
Returns the bitwise logical AND of the specified integers.  
Example: `BITAND(20,13)` returns 4.

**BITNOT** Syntax: `BITNOT(int)`  
Returns the bitwise logical NOT of the specified integer.  
Example: `BITNOT(47)` returns 549755813840.

**BITOR** Syntax: `BITOR(int1, int2, ... intn)`  
Returns the bitwise logical OR of the specified integers.  
Example: `BITAND(9,26)` returns 27.

**BITSL** Syntax: `BITSL(int1 [,int2])`  
Bitwise Shift Left. Takes one or two integers as input and returns the result of shifting the bits in the first integer to the left by the number places indicated by the second integer. If there is no second integer, the bits are shifted to the left by one place,

Examples:

```
BITSL(28,2) returns 112
```

```
BITSL(5) returns 10.
```

**BITSR** Syntax: BITRL(int1 [,int2])

Bitwise Shift Right. Takes one or two integers as input and returns the result of shifting the bits in the first integer to the right by the number places indicated by the second integer. If there is no second integer, the bits are shifted to the right by one place,

Examples:

BITSR(112,2) returns 28

BITSR(10) returns 5.

**BITXOR** Syntax: BITXOR(int1, int2, ... intn)

Returns the bitwise logical exclusive OR of the specified integers.

Example: BITAND(9,26) returns 19.

**B→R** Syntax: B→R(#integerm)

Converts an integer in base *m* to a decimal integer (base 10). The base marker *m* can be *b* (for binary), *o* (for octal), or *h* (for hexadecimal).

Example: B→R(#1101b) returns 13

**GETBASE** Syntax: GETBASE(#integer[m])

Returns the base for the specified integer (in whatever is the current default base): 0 = default, 1 = binary, 2 = octal, 3 = hexadecimal.

Examples: GETBASE(#1101b) returns #1h (if the default base is hexadecimal) while GETBASE (#1101) returns #0h.

**GETBITS** Syntax: GETBITS(#integer)

Returns the number of bits used by *integer*, expressed in the default base.

Example: GETBITS(#22122) returns #20h (if the default base is hexadecimal)

**R→B** Syntax: R→B(integer)

Converts a decimal integer (base 10) to an integer in the default base.

Example: R→B(13) returns #1101b (if the default base is binary) or #Dh (if the default base is hexadecimal).

**SETBITS** Syntax: SETBITS(#integer[m] [,bits])

Sets the number of bits to represent *integer*. Valid values are in the range  $-64$  to  $65$ . If *m* or *bits* is omitted, the default value is used.

Example: `SETBITS (#1111, b15)` returns `#1111b:15`

**SETBASE** Syntax: `SETBASE (#integer [m] [c])`

Displays *integer* expressed in base *m* in whatever base is indicated by *c*, where *c* can be 1 (for binary), 2 (for octal), or 3 (for hexadecimal). Parameter *m* can be b (for binary), d (for decimal), o (for octal), or h (for hexadecimal). If *m* is omitted, the input is assumed to be in the default base. Likewise, if *c* is omitted, the output is displayed in the default base.

Examples: `SETBASE (#34o, 1)` returns `#11100b` while `GETBASE (#1101)` returns `#0h` (if the default base is hexadecimal).

## I/O

I/O commands are used for inputting data into a program, and for outputting data from a program. They allow users to interact with programs.

These commands start the Matrix and List editors.

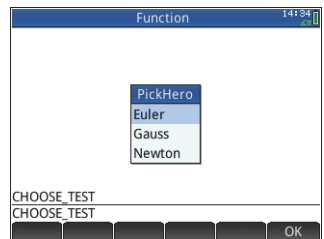
**CHOOSE** Syntax: `CHOOSE (var, "title", "item1", "item2", ..., "itemn")`

Displays a choose box with the *title* and containing the choose items. If the user selects an object, the variable whose name is provided will be updated to contain the number of the selected object (an integer, 1, 2, 3, ...) or 0 if the user taps **Cancel**.

Returns true (not zero) if the user selects an object, otherwise return false (0).

Example:


```
CHOOSE
(N, "PickHero",
"Euler", "Gauss",
", "Newton");
IF N==1 THEN
PRINT("You
picked
Euler"); ELSE
IF N==2 THEN PRINT("You picked
```



```
Gauss");ELSE PRINT("You picked
Newton");
END;
END;
```


After execution of `CHOOSE`, the value of *n* will be updated to contain 0, 1, 2, or 3. The `IF THEN ELSE` command causes the name of the selected person to be printed to the terminal.

**EDITLIST** Syntax: `EDITLIST (listvar)`

Starts the List Editor loading *listvar* and displays the specified list. If used in programming, returns to the program when user taps .

Example: `EDITLIST (L1)` edits list L1.

**EDITMAT** Syntax: `EDITMAT (matrixvar)`

Starts the Matrix Editor and displays the specified matrix. If used in programming, returns to the program when user taps .

Example: `EDITMAT (M1)` edits matrix M1.

**GETKEY** Syntax: `GETKEY`

Returns the ID of the first key in the keyboard buffer, or -1 if no key was pressed since the last call to `GETKEY`. Key IDs are integers from 0 to 50, numbered from top left (key 0) to bottom right (key 50) as shown in figure 26-1.

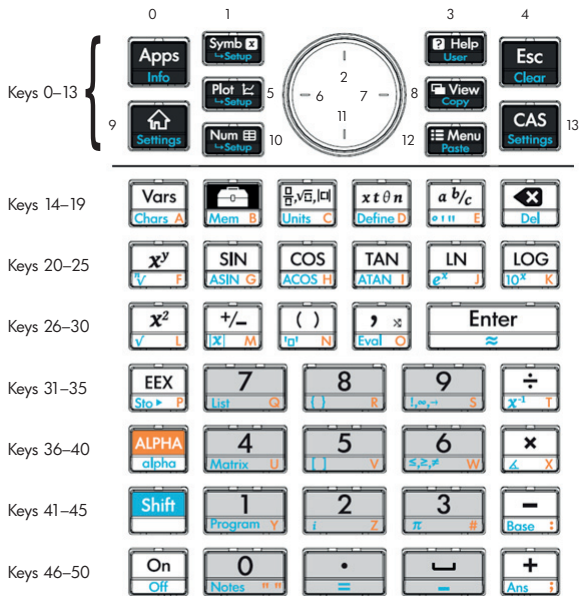


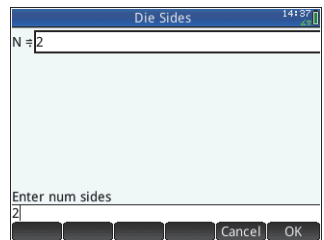
Figure 26-1: Numbers of the keys

**INPUT** Syntax: `INPUT (var [, "title", "label", "help", default]);`

Opens a dialog box with the title text *title*, with one field named *label*, displaying *help* at the bottom and using the *default* value. Updates the variable *var* if the user taps **OK** and returns 1. If the user taps **Cancel**, it does not update the variable, and returns 0.

Example:

```
EXPORT SIDES;
EXPORT
GETSIDES ()
BEGIN
INPUT (SIDES, "Die
ie Sides", "N =
", "Enter num
sides", 2);
END;
```



**ISKEYDOWN** Syntax: `ISKEYDOWN (key_id);`

Returns true (non-zero) if the key whose *key\_id* is provided is currently pressed, and false (0) if it is not.




**MOUSE** Syntax: `MOUSE [ (index) ]`



Returns two lists describing the current location of each potential pointer (or empty lists if the pointers are not used). The output is {x , y, original z, original y, type} where *type* is 0 (for new), 1 (for completed), 2 (for drag), 3 (for stretch), 4 (for rotate), and 5 (for long click).

The optional parameter *index* is the *n*th element that would have been returned—x, y, original x, etc.—had the parameter been omitted (or -1 if no pointer activity had occurred).

**MSGBOX** Syntax: `MSGBOX(expression or string [ ,ok_cancel?]);`

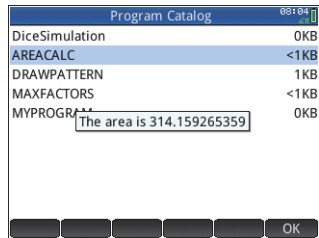
Displays a message box with the value of the given expression or *string*.

If *ok\_cancel?* is true, displays the  and  buttons, otherwise only displays the  button. Default value for *ok\_cancel* is false.

Returns true (non-zero) if the user taps , false (0) if the user presses .





```
EXPORT AREACALC ()
BEGIN
LOCAL radius;
INPUT(radius, "Radius of Circle", "r =
", "Enter radius", 1);
MSGBOX("The area is " +π*radius^2);
END;
```

If the user enters 10 for the radius, the message box shows this:



**PRINT** Syntax: `PRINT (expression or string);`

Prints the result of *expression* or *string* to the terminal.

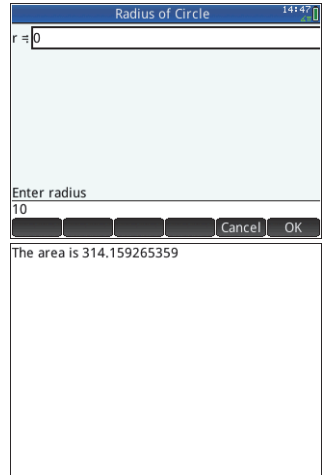
The terminal is a program text output viewing mechanism which is displayed only when `PRINT` commands are executed. When visible, you can press  or  to view the text,  to erase the text and any other key to hide the terminal. Pressing  stops the interaction with the terminal. `PRINT` with no argument clears the terminal.

There are also commands for outputting data in the Graphics section. In particular, the commands `TEXTOUT` and `TEXTOUT_P` can be used for text output.

This example prompts the user to enter a value for the radius of a circle, and prints the area of the circle on the terminal.

```
EXPORT AREACALC ()
BEGIN
LOCAL radius;
INPUT (radius,
"Radius of
Circle", "r =
", "Enter
radius", 1);

PRINT ("The
area is "
+ $\pi$ *radius^2);
END;
```



Notice the use of the `LOCAL` variable for the radius, and the naming convention that uses lower case letters for the local variable. Adhering to such a convention will improve the readability of your programs.

**WAIT** Syntax: `WAIT (n);`

Pauses program execution for  $n$  seconds. With no argument or with  $n = 0$ , pauses program execution for one minute.

## More

**%CHANGE** Syntax: `%CHANGE (x, y)`

The percentage change in going from  $x$  to  $y$ .

Example: `%CHANGE(20,50)` returns 150.

**%TOTAL** Syntax: `%TOTAL(x,y)`

The percentage of  $x$  that is  $y$ .

Example: `%TOTAL(20,50)` returns 250.

**CAS** Syntax: `CAS(Exp.)` or `CAS.function(...)` or `CAS.variable[...]`

Evaluates the expression or variable using the CAS.

**EVALLIST** Syntax: `EVALLIST({list})`

Evaluates the content of each element in a list and returns an evaluated list.

**EXECON** Creates a new list based on the elements in one or more *lists* by iteratively modifying each element according to an *expression* that contains the ampersand character (&). The syntax:

```
EXECON(expression with &, list1 [list2] ...  
[listn])
```

Where the expression is & plus an operator ( $o$ ) plus a number ( $n$ ), each element in the list is operated on by  $o$  and  $n$  and a new list created.

Examples:

```
EXECON("&+1", {1,2,3}) returns {2,3,4}
```

Where the & is followed directly by a number, the position in the list is indicated. For example:

```
EXECON("&2-&1", {1, 4, 3, 5}) returns {3, -1,  
2}
```

In the example above, &2 indicates the second element and &1 the first element in each pair of elements. The minus operator between them subtracts the first from the second in each pair until there are no more pairs. Note that numbers appended to & can only be from 1 to 9 inclusive.

EXECON can also operate on more than one list. For example:

```
EXECON("&1+&2", {1,2,3}, {4,5,6}) returns  
{5,7,9}
```



In the example above, &1 indicates an element in the first list and &2 indicates the corresponding element in the second list. The plus operator between them adds the two elements until there are no more pairs. Note that numbers appended to & can only be from 1 to 9 inclusive.

EXECON can also begin operating on a specified element in a specified list. For example:

```
EXECON("&23+&1", {1, 5, 16}, {4, 5, 6, 7}) returns  
{7, 12}
```

In the example above, &23 indicates that operations are to begin on the second list and with the third element. To that element is added the first element in the first list. The process continues until there are no more pairs.

Again, the digits appended to & can only be from 1 to 9 inclusive.

**→HMS** Syntax: →HMS (value)

Converts a decimal *value* to hexagesimal format; that is, in units subdivided into groups of 60. This includes degrees, minutes, and seconds as well as hours, minutes, and seconds.

Example: →HMS (54.8763) returns 54°52'34.68"

**HMS→** Syntax: HMS→ (value)

Converts a *value* expressed hexagesimal format to decimal format.

Example: HMS→ (54°52'34.68") returns 54.8763

**ITERATE** Syntax: ITERATE(expr, var, ivalue, #times)

For *#times*, repeatedly evaluate *expr* in terms of *var* beginning with *var* = *ivalue*.

Example: ITERATE (X^2, X, 2, 3) returns 256


**TICKS** Syntax: TICKS

Returns the internal clock value in milliseconds.

**TIME** Syntax: TIME(program\_name)

Returns the time in milliseconds required to execute the program *program\_name*. The results are stored in the variable **TIME**. The variable **TICKS** is similar. It contains the number of milliseconds since boot up.

## Variables and Programs

The HP Prime has four types of variables: Home variables, App variables, CAS variables, and User variables. You can retrieve these variables from the Variable menu ( Vars Chrs. A).

Home variables are used for real numbers, complex numbers, graphics, lists, and matrices among other things. Home variables keep the same value in Home and in apps.

App variables are those whose values depend on the current app. The app variables are used in programming to represent the definitions and settings you make when working with apps interactively.

CAS variables are exactly the same as Home variables except that they are used only when doing CAS operations. They can, however, be called by commands in Home view. The names for CAS variables mirror those for Home variables except that they must be lowercase.

User variables are variables created by the user or exported from a user program. They provide one of several mechanisms to allow programs to communicate with the rest of the calculator, and with other programs. Once a variable has been exported from a program, it will appear among the User variables in the Variables menu, next to the program that exported it.

This chapter deals with App variables and User variables. For information on Home and CAS variables, see chapter 21, “Variables”, beginning on page 373.

### App variables

Not all app variables are used in every app. S1Fit, for example, is only used in the Statistics 2Var app. However, most of the variables are used in common by the Function app, the Parametric app, the Polar app, the Sequence app, the Solve app, the Statistics 1Var app, the Statistics 2Var app, and others. If a variable is not available in all of these apps, or is available only in some other apps, then a list of the apps where the variable can be used appears under the variable name.

The following sections list the app variables by the view in which they are used. To see the variables listed by the

menus in which they appears on the Variables menu see “App variables”, beginning on page 378.

## Plot view variables

### Axes

Turns axes on or off.

In Plot Setup view, check (or uncheck) `AXES`.

In a program, type:

0 ► `Axes`—to turn axes on.

1 ► `Axes`—to turn axes off.

### Cursor

Sets the type of cursor. (Inverted or blinking is useful if the background is solid).

In Plot Setup view, choose `Cursor`.

In a program, type:

0 ► `CrossType`—for solid crosshairs (default).

1 ► `CrossType`—to invert the crosshairs.

2 ► `CrossType`—for blinking crosshairs.

### GridDots

Turns the background dot grid in Plot view on or off.

In Plot Setup view, check (or uncheck) `GRID DOTS`.

In a program, type:

0 ► `GridDots`—to turn the grid dots on (default).

1 ► `GridDots`—to turn the grid dots off.

### GridLines

Turns the background line grid in Plot View on or off.

In Plot Setup View, check (or uncheck) `GRID LINES`.

In a program, type:

0 ► `GridLines`—to turn the grid lines on (default).

1 ► `GridLines`—to turn the grid lines off.

### Hmin/Hmax *Statistics 1Var*

Defines the minimum and maximum values for histogram bars.

In Plot Setup View for one-variable statistics, set values for `HRNG`.

In a program, type:

$n_1$  ► Hmin

$n_2$  ► Hmax

where  $n_1 < n_2$

## Hwidth

### Statistics 1Var

Sets the width of histogram bars.

In Plot Setup View for one-variable statistics, set a value for Hwidth.

In a program, type:

$n$  ► Hwidth

## Labels

Draws labels in Plot View showing X and Y ranges.

In Plot Setup View, check (or uncheck) Labels.

In a program, type:

1 ► Labels—to turn labels on (default)

0 ► Labels—to turn labels off.

## Method

Defines the graphing method: adaptive, fixed-step segments, or fixed-step dots. (See “Graphing methods” on page 89 for an explanation of the difference between these methods.)

In a program, type:

0 ► Method—select adaptive

1 ► Method—select fixed-step segments

2 ► Method—select fixed-step dots

## Nmin/Nmax Sequence

Defines the minimum and maximum values for the independent variable.

Appears as the NRNG fields in the Plot Setup view. In Plot Setup View, enter values for NRNG.

In a program, type:

$n_1$  ► Nmin

$n_2$  ► Nmax

where  $n_1 < n_2$

## Recenter

Recenters at the cursor when zooming.

From Plot-Zoom-Set Factors, check (or uncheck) Recenter.

In a program, type:

- 0 ▶ Recenter— to turn recenter on (default).
- 1 ▶ Recenter— to turn recenter off.

**S1mark-S5mark**  
*Statistics 2Var*

Sets the mark to use for scatter plots.

In Plot Setup view for two-variable statistics, select one of S1mark-S5marks.

In a program, type:

?????

**SeqPlot**  
*Sequence*

Enables you to choose between a Stairstep or a Cobweb plot.

In Plot Setup view, select SeqPlot, then choose Stairstep or Cobweb.

In a program, type:

- 0 ▶ SeqPlot—for Stairstep.
- 1 ▶ SeqPlot—for Cobweb.

**$\theta_{\min}/\theta_{\max}$**   
*Polar*

Sets the minimum and maximum independent values.

In Plot Setup, View enter values for RNG.

In a program, type:

- $n_1$  ▶  $\theta_{\min}$
- $n_2$  ▶  $\theta_{\max}$

where  $n_1 < n_2$

**$\theta_{\text{step}}$**   
*Polar*

Sets the step size for the independent variable.

In Plot Setup view, enter a value for STEP.

In a program, type:

- $n$  ▶  $\theta_{\text{step}}$

where  $n > 0$

**Tmin/Tmax**  
*Parametric*

Sets the minimum and maximum independent variable values.

In Plot Setup View, enter values for TRNG.

In a program, type:

- $n_1$  ▶ Tmin
- $n_2$  ▶ Tmax

where  $n_1 < n_2$

**Tstep**  
*Parametric*

Sets the step size for the independent variable.

In Plot Setup View, enter a value for `TSTEP`.

In a program, type

$n \blacktriangleright$  Tstep

where  $n > 0$

**Xtick**

Sets the distance between tick marks for the horizontal axis.

In Plot Setup View, enter a value for `Xtick`.

In a program, type:

$n \blacktriangleright$  Xtick where  $n > 0$

**Ytick**

Sets the distance between tick marks on the vertical axis.

In Plot Setup View, enter a value for `Ytick`.

In a program, type:

$n \blacktriangleright$  Ytick where  $n > 0$

**Xmin/Xmax**

Sets the minimum and maximum horizontal values of the plot screen.

In Plot Setup View, enter values for `XRNG`.

In a program, type:

$n_1 \blacktriangleright$  Xmin

$n_2 \blacktriangleright$  Xmax

where  $n_1 < n_2$

**Ymin/Ymax**

Sets the minimum and maximum vertical values of the plot screen.

In Plot Setup View, enter the values for `YRNG`.

In a program, type:

$n_1 \blacktriangleright$  Ymin

$n_2 \blacktriangleright$  Ymax

where  $n_1 < n_2$

**Xzoom**

Sets the horizontal zoom factor.

In Plot View, press **MENU** then **ZOOM**. Scroll to Set Factors, select it and press **OK**. Enter the value for x zoom **OK**.

In a program, type:

$n \blacktriangleright X_{\text{zoom}}$

where  $n > 0$

The default value is 4.

## Yzoom

From Plot setup ( **Plot Setup** ), press **MENU** then **ZOOM**. Scroll to Set Factors, select it and press **OK**. Enter the value for Y zoom and press **OK**.

Or, in a program, type:

$n \blacktriangleright Y_{\text{zoom}}$

The default value is 4.

## Symbolic view variables

### AltHyp

*Inference*

Determines the alternative hypothesis used for a hypothesis testing. Choose an option from the Symbolic view.

In a program, type:

0  $\blacktriangleright$  AltHyp—for  $\mu < \mu_0$

1  $\blacktriangleright$  AltHyp—for  $\mu > \mu_0$

2  $\blacktriangleright$  AltHyp—for  $\mu \neq \mu_0$

### E0...E9

*Solve*

Can contain any equation or expression. Independent variable is selected by highlighting it in Numeric View.

Example:

$X+Y*X-2=Y \blacktriangleright E1$

### F0...F9

*Function*

Can contain any expression. Independent variable is  $x$ .

Example:

$SIN(X) \blacktriangleright F1$

**H1...H5***Statistics 1Var*

Contains the data values for a 1-variable statistical analysis. For example, H1(n) returns the nth value in the data set for the H1 analysis.

**H1Type...H5Type***Statistics 1Var*

Sets the type of plot used to graphically represent the statistical analyses H1 through H5. From the Symbolic setup, specify the type of plot in the field for Type1, Type 2, etc.

Or in a program, store one of the following constant integers or names into the variables H1Type, H2Type, etc.

- 0 Histogram (default)
- 1 Box and Whisker
- 2 Normal Probability
- 3 Line
- 4 Bar
- 5 Pareto

Example:

```
2▶H3Type
```

**Method***Inference*

Determines whether the Inference app is set to calculate hypothesis test results or confidence intervals.

In a program, type:

- 0 ▶ Method—for Hypothesis Test
- 1 ▶ Method—for Confidence Interval

**R0...R9***Polar*

Can contain any expression. Independent variable is  $\theta$ .

Example:

```
2*SIN(2*θ)▶R1
```

**S1...S5***Statistics 2Var*

Contains the data values for a 2-variable statistical analysis. For example, S1(n) returns the nth data pair in the data set for the S1 analysis. With no argument, returns a list containing the independent column name, the dependent column name and the number of the fit type.



## **S1Type...S5Type** *Statistics 2Var*

Sets the type of fit to be used by the `FIT` operation in drawing the regression line. From Symbolic Setup view, specify the fit in the field for `Type1`, `Type2`, etc.

In a program, store one of the following constant integers or names into a variable `S1Type`, `S2Type`, etc.

- 0 Linear
- 1 Logarithmic
- 2 Exponential
- 3 Power
- 4 Exponent
- 5 Inverse
- 6 Logistic
- 7 Quadratic
- 8 Cubic
- 9 Quartic
- 10 User Defined

Example:

Cubic ► `S2type`

or

8 ► `S2type`

## **Type** *Inference*

Determines the type of hypothesis test or confidence interval. Depends upon the value of the variable `Method`. Make a selection from the Symbolic view.

Or, in a program, store the constant number from the list below into the variable `Type`. With `Method=0`, the constant values and their meanings are as follows:

- 0 Z-Test:  $1 \mu$
- 1 Z-Test:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$
- 2 Z-Test:  $1 \pi$
- 3 Z-Test:  $\pi_1 - \pi_2$
- 4 T-Test:  $1 \mu$
- 5 T-Test:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

With `Method=1`, the constants and their meanings are:

- 0 Z-Int:  $1 \mu$
- 1 Z-Int:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$
- 2 Z-Int:  $1 \pi$
- 3 Z-Int:  $\pi_1 - \pi_2$
- 4 T-Int:  $1 \mu$
- 5 T-Int:  $\mu_1 - \mu_2$

## **X0, Y0...X9, Y9**

*Parametric*

Can contain any expression. Independent variable is T.

Example:

`SIN(4*T) ► Y1; 2*SIN(6*T) ► X1`

## **U0...U9**

*Sequence*

Can contain any expression. Independent variable is N.

Example:

`RECURSE (U, U(N-1)*N, 1, 2) ► U1`

## **Numeric view variables**

### **C0...C9**

*Statistics 2Var*

C0 through C9, for columns of data. Can contain lists.

Enter data in the Numeric view.

In a program, type:

`LIST ► Cn`

where  $n = 0, 1, 2, 3 \dots 9$  and `LIST` is either a list or the name of a list.

### **D0...D9**

*Statistics 1Var*

D0 through D9, for columns of data. Can contain lists.

Enter data in the Numeric view.

In a program, type:

`LIST ► Dn`

where  $n = 0, 1, 2, 3 \dots 9$  and `LIST` is either a list or the name of a list.

## **NumIndep**

*Function*  
*Parametric*  
*Polar*  
*Sequence*

Specifies the list of independent values to be used by *Build Your Own Table*. Enter your values one-by-one in the *Numeric* view.

In a program, type:

`LIST ► NumIndep`

`List` can be either a list itself or the name of a list.

Sets the starting value for a table in *Numeric* view.

From *Numeric Setup* view, enter a value for `NUMSTART`.

In a program, type:

`n ► NumStart`

## **NumStart**

*Function*  
*Parametric*  
*Polar*  
*Sequence*

## **NumStep**

*Function*  
*Parametric*  
*Polar*  
*Sequence*

Sets the step size (increment value) for an independent variable in *Numeric* view.

From *Numeric Setup* view, enter a value for `NUMSTEP`.

In a program, type:

`n ► NumStep`

where  $n > 0$

## **NumType**

*Function*  
*Parametric*  
*Polar*  
*Sequence*

Sets the table format.

From *Numeric Setup* view, enter 0 or 1.

In a program, type:

`0 ► NumType—for Automatic (default).`

`1 ► NumType—for BuildYourOwn.`

## **NumZoom**

*Function*  
*Parametric*  
*Polar*  
*Sequence*

Sets the zoom factor in the *Numeric* view.

From *Numeric Setup* view, type in a value for `NUMZOOM`.

In a program, type:

`n ► NumZoom`

where  $n > 0$

## **Inference app variables**

The following variables are used by the *Inference* app. They correspond to fields in the *Inference* app *Numeric* view. The set of variables shown in this view depends on the hypothesis test or the confidence interval selected in the *Symbolic* view.

## **Alpha**

Sets the alpha level for the hypothesis test. From the *Numeric* view, set the value of `Alpha`.

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright \text{Alpha}$

where  $0 < n < 1$

## **Conf**

Sets the confidence level for the confidence interval. From the Numeric view, set the value of `Conf`.

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright \text{Conf}$

where  $0 < n < 1$

## **Mean1**

Sets the value of the mean of a sample for a 1-mean hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a 2-mean test or interval, sets the value of the mean of the first sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of `Mean1`.

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright \text{Mean1}$

## **Mean2**

For a 2-mean test or interval, sets the value of the mean of the second sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of `Mean2`.

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright \text{Mean2}$

The following variables are used to set up hypothesis test or confidence interval calculations in the Inference app.

## $\mu_0$

Sets the assumed value of the population mean for a hypothesis test. From the Numeric view, set the value of  `$\mu_0$` .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright \mu_0$

where  $0 < \mu_0 < 1$

## **n1**

Sets the size of the sample for a hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the size of the first sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of `n1`.

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright n1$

**$n2$**

For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the size of the second sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $n2$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright n2$

**$\pi0$**

Sets the assumed proportion of successes for the One-proportion Z-test. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $\pi0$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright \pi0$

where  $0 < \pi0 < 1$

**Pooled**

Determine whether or not the samples are pooled for tests or intervals using the Student's T-distribution involving two means. From the Numeric view, set the value of `Pooled`.

In a program, type:

0  $\triangleright$  `Pooled`—for not pooled (default).

1  $\triangleright$  `Pooled`—for pooled.

**$s1$**

Sets the sample standard deviation for a hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the sample standard deviation of the first sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $s1$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright s1$

**$s2$**

For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the sample standard deviation of the second sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $s2$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright s2$

**$\sigma1$**

Sets the population standard deviation for a hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a test or interval involving

the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the population standard deviation of the first sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $\sigma_1$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright \sigma_1$

$\sigma_2$

For a test or interval involving the difference of two means or two proportions, sets the population standard deviation of the second sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $\sigma_2$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright \sigma_2$

$x_1$

Sets the number of successes for a one-proportion hypothesis test or confidence interval. For a test or interval involving the difference of two proportions, sets the number of successes of the first sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $x_1$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright x_1$

$x_2$

For a test or interval involving the difference of two proportions, sets the number of successes of the second sample. From the Numeric view, set the value of  $x_2$ .

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright x_2$

## Finance app variables

The following variables are used by the Finance app. They correspond to the fields in the Finance app Numeric view.

CPYR

Compounding periods per year. Sets the number of compounding periods per year for a cash flow calculation. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for C/YR.

In a program, type:

$n \triangleright \text{CPYR}$

where  $n > 0$

- END** Determines whether interest is compounded at the beginning or end of the compounding period. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, check or uncheck **END**.
- In a program, type:
- 1 ► **END**—for compounding at the end of the period (Default)
  - 0 ► **END**—for compounding at the beginning of the period
- FV** Future value. Sets the future value of an investment. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for **FV**.
- In a program, type:
- $n$  ► **FV**
- Note: positive values represent return on an investment or loan.
- IPYR** Interest per year. Sets the annual interest rate for a cash flow. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for **I%YR**.
- In a program, type:
- $n$  ► **IPYR**
- where  $n > 0$
- NbPmt** Number of payments. Sets the number of payments for a cash flow. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for **N**.
- In a program, type:
- $n$  ► **NbPmt**
- where  $n > 0$
- PMT** Payment value. Sets the value of each payment in a cash flow. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for **PMT**.
- In a program, type:
- $n$  ► **PMT**
- Note that payment values are negative if you are making the payment and positive if you are receiving the payment.

## PPYR

Payments per year. Sets the number of payments made per year for a cash flow calculation. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for  $P/YR$ .

In a program, type:

`n ▶PPYR`

where  $n > 0$

## PV

Present value. Sets the present value of an investment. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for  $PV$ .

In a program, type:

`n ▶PV`

Note: negative values represent an investment or loan.

## GSize

Group size. Sets the size of each group for the amortization table. From the Numeric view of the Finance app, enter a value for `Group Size`.

In a program, type:

`n ▶GSize`

## Linear Solver app variables

The following variables are used by the Linear Solver app. They correspond to the fields in the app's Numeric view.

### LSystem

Contains a  $2 \times 3$  or  $3 \times 4$  matrix which represents a  $2 \times 2$  or  $3 \times 3$  linear system. From the Numeric view of the Linear Solver app, enter the coefficients and constants of the linear system.

In a program, type:

`matrix ▶LSystem`

where `matrix` is either a matrix or the name of one of the matrix variables  $M0$ - $M9$ .

### Size

Contains the size of the linear system. From the Numeric view of the Linear Solver app, press `2X2` or `3X3`.

In a program, type:

`2 ▶Size`—for a  $2 \times 2$  linear system

`3 ▶Size`—for a  $3 \times 3$  linear system



## Triangle Solver app variables

The following variables are used by the Triangle Solver app. They correspond to the fields in the app's Numeric view.

### SideA

The length of Side A. Sets the length of the side opposite the angle A. From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for A.

In a program, type:

```
n ▶ SideA
```

where  $n > 0$

### SideB

The length of Side B. Sets the length of the side opposite the angle B. From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for B.

In a program, type:

```
n ▶ SideB
```

where  $n > 0$

### SideC

The length of Side C. Sets the length of the side opposite the angle C. From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for C.

In a program, type:

```
n ▶ SideC
```

where  $n > 0$

### AngleA

The measure of angle  $\alpha$ . Sets the measure of angle  $\alpha$ . The value of this variable will be interpreted according to the angle mode setting (Degrees or Radians). From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for angle  $\alpha$ .

In a program, type:

```
n ▶ AngleA
```

where  $n > 0$

### AngleB

The measure of angle  $\beta$ . Sets the measure of angle  $\beta$ . The value of this variable will be interpreted according to the angle mode setting (Degrees or Radians). From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for angle  $\beta$ .

In a program, type:

$n$  ► AngleB

where  $n > 0$

## AngleC

The measure of angle  $\delta$ . Sets the measure of angle  $\delta$ . The value of this variable will be interpreted according to the angle mode setting (Degrees or Radians). From the Triangle Solver Numeric view, enter a positive value for angle  $\delta$ .

In a program, type:

$n$  ► AngleC

where  $n > 0$

## RECT

Corresponds to the status of **Rect** in the Numeric view of the Triangle Solver app. Determines whether a general triangle solver or a right triangle solver is used. From the Triangle Solver view, tap **Rect**.

In a program, type:

0 ► RECT—for the general Triangle Solver

1 ► RECT—for the right Triangle Solver

## Modes variables

The following variables are found in the Home Modes input form. They can all be over-written in an app's Symbolic setup.

### Ans

Contains the last result calculated in the Home view.

### HAngle

Sets the angle format for the Home view. From Modes view, choose Degrees or Radians for angle measure.

In a program, type:

0 ► HAngle—for Degrees.

1 ► HAngle—for Radians.

### HDigits

Sets the number of digits for a number format other than Standard in the Home view. From the Modes view, enter a value in the second field of Number Format.

In a program, type:

$n$  ► HDigits, where  $0 < n < 11$ .

- HFormat** Sets the number display format used in the Home view. From the Modes view, choose *Standard*, *Fixed*, *Scientific*, or *Engineering* in the *Number Format* field.
- In a program, store one of the following the constant numbers (or its name) into the variable `HFormat`:
- 0 *Standard*
  - 1 *Fixed*
  - 2 *Scientific*
  - 3 *Engineering*
- HComplex** Sets the complex number mode for the Home view. From Modes, check or uncheck the *Complex* field. Or, in a program, type:
- 0 ► `HComplex`—for OFF.
  - 1 ► `HComplex`—for ON.
- Date** Returns the system date. The format is YYYY.MMDD. This format is used irrespective of the format set on the **Home Settings** screen.
- Time** Returns the system time or sets the system time.
- `HHMMSS` ► *Time*
- Language** Sets the language. From Modes, choose a language for the *Language* field.
- In a program, store one of the following constant numbers into the variable `Language`:
- 1 ► *Language (English)*
  - 2 ► *Language (Chinese)*
  - 3 ► *Language (French)*
  - 4 ► *Language (German)*
  - 5 ► *Language (Spanish)*
  - 6 ► *Language (Dutch)*
  - 7 ► *Language (Portuguese)*
- Entry** Sets the entry mode. In a program, enter:
- 0 ► `Entry`—for *Textbook*

- 1 ▶ Entry—for Algebraic
- 2 ▶ Entry—for RPN

## ***Integer***

### **Base**

Returns or sets the integer base. In a program, enter:

- 0 ▶ Base—for Binary
- 1 ▶ Base—for Octal
- 2 ▶ Base—for Decimal
- 3 ▶ Base—for Hexadecimal

### **Bits**

Returns or sets the number of bits for representing integers. In a program, enter:

- $n$  ▶ Bits where  $n$  is the number of bits.

### **Signed**

Returns or sets a flag indicating that the integer wordsize is signed or not. In a program, enter:

- 0 ▶ Signed—for unsigned
- 1 ▶ Signed—for signed

The following variables are found in the Symbolic setup of an app. They can be used to overwrite the value of the corresponding variable in Home Modes.

### **AAngle**

Sets the angle mode.

From Symbolic setup, choose *System*, *Degrees*, or *Radians* for angle measure. *System* (default) will force the angle measure to agree with that in Modes.

In a program, type:

- 0 ▶ AAngle—for System (default).
- 1 ▶ AAngle—for Degrees.
- 2 ▶ AAngle—for Radians.

### **AComplex**

Sets the complex number mode.

From Symbolic setup, choose *System*, *ON*, or *OFF*. *System* (default) will force this setting to agree with the corresponding setting in Home Modes.

In a program, type:

0 ▶ `AComplex`—for System (default).

1 ▶ `AComplex`—for ON.

2 ▶ `AComplex`—for OFF.

## **ADigits**

Defines the number of decimal places to use for the `Fixed` number format in the app's Symbolic Setup. Affects results in the Home view.

From Symbolic setup, enter a value in the second field of `Number Format`.

In a program, type:

```
n ▶ ADigits
```

where  $0 < n < 11$

## **AFormat**

Defines the number display format used for number display in the Home view and to label axes in the Plot view.

From Symbolic setup, choose `Standard`, `Fixed`, `Scientific`, or `Engineering` in the `Number Format` field.

In a program, store the constant number (or its name) into the variable `AFormat`.

```
0 System
```

```
1 Standard
```

```
2 Fixed
```

```
3 Scientific
```

```
4 Engineering
```

Example:

```
Scientific ▶ AFormat
```

or

```
3 ▶ AFormat
```

## **Results variables**

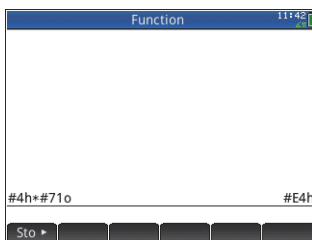
The `Function`, `Linear Solver`, `Statistics 1Var`, `Statistics 2Var`, and `Inference` apps offer functions that generate results that can be re-used outside those apps (such as in a program). For example, the `Function` app can find a root of a function, and that root is written to a variable called `Root`. That variable can then be used elsewhere.

The results variables are listed with the apps that generate them. See “App variables” on page 378.

## Integer arithmetic

The common number base used in contemporary mathematics is base 10. By default, all calculations performed by the HP Prime are carried out in base 10, and all results are displayed in base 10.

However, the HP Prime enables you to carry out integer arithmetic in four bases: decimal (base 10), binary (base 2), octal (base 8), and hexadecimal (base 16). For example, you could multiply 4 in base 16 by 71 in base 8 and the answer is E4 in base 16. This is equivalent in base 10 to multiplying 4 by 57 to get 228.



You indicate that you are about to engage in integer arithmetic by preceding the number with the pound symbol (#, got by pressing  $\text{ALPHA}$   $\text{alpha}$   $\text{3}$   $\text{#}$ ). You indicate what base to use for the number by appending to the appropriate base marker:

Base marker	Base
[blank]	Adopt the default base (see "The default base" on page 514)
d	decimal
b	binary
o	octal
h	hexadecimal

Thus #11b represents  $3_{10}$ . The base marker *b* indicates that the number is to be interpreted as a binary number:  $11_2$ . Likewise #E4h

represents  $228_{10}$ . In this case, the base marker  $h$  indicates that the number is to be interpreted as a hexadecimal number:  $E4_{16}$ .

Note that with integer arithmetic, the result of any calculation that would return a remainder in floating-point arithmetic is truncated: only the integer portion is presented. Thus  $\#100b/\#10b$  gives the correct answer:  $\#10b$  (since  $4_{10}/2_{10}$  is  $2_{10}$ ). However,  $\#100b/\#11b$  gives just the integer component of the correct result:  $\#1b$ .

Note too that the accuracy of integer arithmetic can be limited by the integer wordsize. The wordsize is the maximum number of bits that can represent an integer. You can set this to any value between 1 and 64. The smaller the wordsize, the smaller the integer that can be accurately represented. The default wordsize is 32, which is adequate for representing integers up to approximately  $2 \times 10^9$ . However, integers larger than that would be truncated, that is, the most significant bits (that is, the leading bits) would be dropped. Thus the result of any calculation involving such a number would not be accurate.

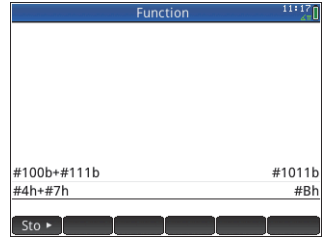
## The default base

Setting a default base only affects the entry and display of numbers being used in integer arithmetic. If you set the default base to binary, 27 and 44 will still be represented that way in Home view, and result of those numbers being added will still be represented as 71. However, if you entered  $\#27b$ , you would get a syntax error, as 2 and 7 are not integers found in binary arithmetic. You would have to enter 27 as  $\#11011b$  (since  $27_{10} = 11011_2$ ).

Setting a default base means that you do not always have to specify a base marker for numbers when doing integer arithmetic. The exception is if you want to include a number from the non-default base: it will have to include the base marker. Thus if your default base is 2 and you want to enter 27 for an integer arithmetic operation, you could enter just  $\#11011$  without the  $b$  suffix. But if you wanted to enter  $E4_{16}$ , you need to enter it with the suffix:  $\#E4h$ . (The HP Prime adds any omitted base markers when the calculation is displayed in history.)



Note that if you change the default base, any calculation in history that involves integer arithmetic *for which you did not explicitly add a base marker* will be resisplayed in the new base. In the example at the right, the first calculation explicitly included base markers (*b* for each operand). The second calculation was a copy of the first but without the base markers. The default base was then changed to hex. The first calculation remained as it was, while the second—without base markers being explicitly added to the operands—was redisplayed in base 16.



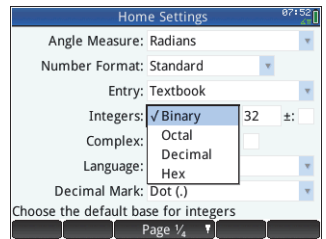
## Changing the default base

The calculator's default base for integer arithmetic is 16 (hexadecimal). To change the default base:

1. Display the **Home Settings** screen:



2. Choose the base you want from the **Integers** menu: Binary, Octal, Decimal or Hex.



3. The field to the right of Integers is the wordsize field. This is the maximum number of bits that can represent an integer. The default value is 32, but you can change it any value between 1 and 64.
4. If you want to allow for signed integers, select the  $\pm$  option to the right of the wordsize field. Choosing this option reduces the maximum size of an integer to one bit less than the wordsize.

## Examples of integer arithmetic

The operands in integer arithmetic can be of the same base or of mixed bases.

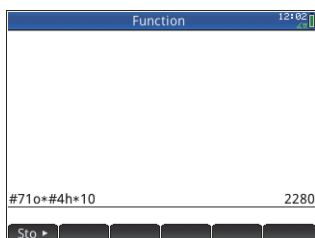
Integer calculation	Decimal equivalent
$\#10000b + \#10100b = \#1100b$	$8 + 20 = 28$
$\#71o - \#10100b = \#45o$	$57 - 20 = 37$
$\#4Dh * \#11101b = \#8B9h$	$77 \times 29 = 2233$
$\#32Ah / \#5o = \#A2h$	$810 / 5 = 162$

## Mixed-base arithmetic

With one exception, where you have operands of different bases, the result of the calculation is presented in the base of the first operand. The example at the right shows two equivalent calculations: the first multiplies  $4_{10}$  by  $57_{10}$  and the second multiplies  $57_{10}$  by  $4_{10}$ . Obviously the results too are mathematically equivalent. However, each is presented in the base of the operand entered first: 16 in the first case and 8 in the second.



The exception is if an operand is not marked as an integer by preceding it with #. In these cases, the result is presented in base 10.



## Integer arithmetic in the CAS

You can perform integer arithmetic in the CAS. However, the result is always displayed in base 10 (and the operands are

converted to base 10). [\[This seems odd. If everything is converted to base 10, why is there an integer-base setting in the CAS settings? And why is binary missing as an option in the CAS settings?\]](#)

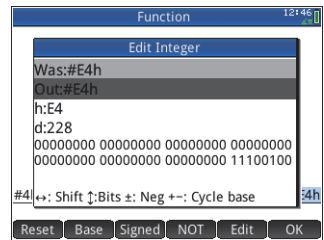
## Integer manipulation

The result of integer arithmetic can be further analysed, and manipulated, by viewing it in the **Edit Integer** dialog.

1. In Home view, use the cursor keys to select the result of interest.
2. Press **Shift** **[-]** (Base).

The **Edit Integer** dialog appears. The **Was** field at the top shows the result you selected in Home view.

The hex and decimal equivalents are shown under the **Out** field, followed by a bit-by-bit representation of the integer.




Symbols beneath the bit representation show the keys you can press to edit the integer. (Note that this doesn't change the result of the calculation in Home view.) The keys are:

- **←** or **→** (Shift): these keys shift the bits one space to the left (or right). With each press, the new integer represented appears in the **Out** field (and in the hex and decimal fields below it).
- **▲** or **▼** (Bits): these keys increase (or decrease) the wordsize. The new wordsize is appended to the value shown in the **Out** field.
- **⌘** (Neg): returns the two's complement (that is, each bit in the specified wordsize is inverted and one is added. The new integer represented appears in the **Out** field (and in the hex and decimal fields below it).
- **Ans** **+** or **Base** **[-]** (Cycle base): displays the integer in the **Out** field in another base.

Menu buttons provide some additional options:


**Reset**: returns all changes to their original state



**Base**: cycles through the bases; same as pressing 

**Signed**: toggles the wordsize between signed and unsigned

**NOT**: returns the one's complement (that is, each bit in the specified wordsize is inverted: a 0 is replaced by 1 and a 1 by 0. The new integer represented appears in the **Out** field (and in the hex and decimal fields below it).

**Edit**: activates edit mode. A cursor appear sand you can move about the dialog using the cursor keys. The hex and decimal fields can be modified, as can the bit representation. A change in one such field automatically modifies the other fields.

**OK**: closes the dialog and saves your changes. If you don't want to save your changes, press  instead.

3. Make whatever changes you want.
4. To save your changes, tap ; otherwise press .

### Note

---

If you save changes, the next time you select that same result in Home view and open the **Edit Integer** dialog, the value shown in the **Was** field will be the value you saved, not the value of the result.

---

## Base functions

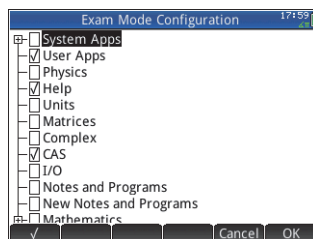
Numerous functions related to integer arithmetic can be invoked from Home view, CAS view, and within programs:

- BITAND
- BITNOT
- BITOR
- BITS�
- BITSR
- BITXOR
- B→R
- GETBASE
- GETBITS
- R→B
- SETBASE
- SETBITS

These are described in "Integer", beginning on page 483.

## Limiting functionality

Certain functions of the calculator can be disabled for a set period, with the disabling controlled by a password. This feature will primarily be of interest to teachers,



proctors, and invigilators who want to ensure that the calculator is used appropriately by students sitting an examination. In the illustration above, user-customized apps, the help system and the computer algebra system have been selected for disabling.

The settings, and a list of the functions that can be disabled, are accessible from the **Home Settings** screen. When you disable functions, you put the calculator into *exam mode*.

Before initiating exam mode, you can choose to activate a light on the calculator that will flash periodically during exam mode. The light is on the top edge of the calculator. The light will help the supervisor of the examination detect if any particular calculator has dropped out of exam mode. (The flashing of lights on all calculators placed in exam mode will be synchronised so that all will flash at the same time.)

## Exam configurations

A particular set of enabled and disabled functions is called an *exam mode configuration*. You can create a default exam mode configuration. You can also create any number of additional configurations (each with a name of your choosing).



A configuration named `Default Exam` appears when you first access the **Exam Mode** screen. This configuration has no functions disabled. If only one configuration is needed, you can simply modify the default exam configuration. If you envisage the need for a number of configurations—different ones for different examinations, for example—modify the default configuration so that it matches the settings you will most often need, and then create other configurations for the settings you will need less often.

There are two ways to access the screen for configuring and activating exam mode:

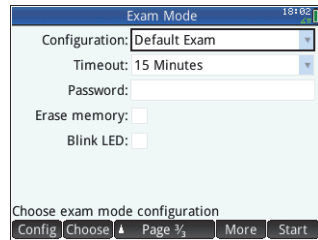
- press  +  + 
- choose the third page of the **Home Settings** screen.


The procedure below illustrates the second method.

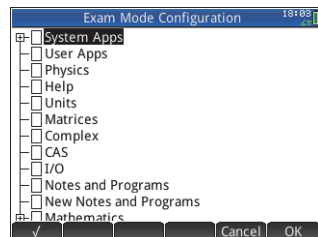
## Modifying the default configuration

1. Press  . The **Home Settings** screen appears.
2. Tap .
3. Tap .


The **Exam Mode** screen appears. You use this screen to activate a particular configuration (just before an examination begins, for example).




4. Tap . The **Exam Mode Configuration** screen appears.
5. Select those functions you want disabled, and make sure that those functions you don't want disabled are not selected.






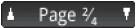


An expand box at the left of a function indicates that there are sub-functions that you can individually disable. (Notice that there is an expand box beside **System Apps** in the example shown above.) Tap on the expand box to see the sub-functions. You can then select the sub-functions individually. If you want to disable all the sub-functions, just select the top-level function.

You can select (or deselect) an option either by tapping on the check box beside it, or by using the cursor keys to scroll to it and tapping .

6. When you have finished selecting the functions to be disabled, tap .

If you want to activate exam mode now, continue with “Activating Exam Mode” below.

## To return to the default configuration

1. Press  . The **Home Settings screen** appears.
2. Tap .
3. Tap . The **Exam Mode** screen appears.
4. Choose **Default Exam** from the **Configuration** list.
5. Tap , select **Reset** from the menu and tap  to confirm your intention to return the configuration to its default settings.

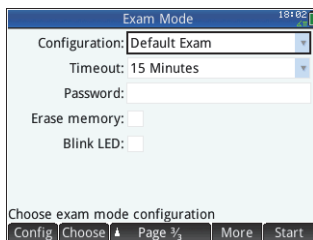
## Creating a new configuration

You can modify the default exam configuration when new circumstances require a different set of disabled functions. Alternatively, you can retain the default configuration and create a new configuration. When you create a new configuration, you choose an existing configuration on which to base it.

1. Press  . The **Home Settings screen** appears.

2. Tap **Page 1/4**.
3. Tap **Page 2/4**.

The **Exam Mode** screen appears.






4. Choose a base configuration from the **Configuration** list. If you have not created any exam mode configurations before, the only base configuration will be `Default Exam`.
5. Tap **More**, select `Copy` from the menu and enter a name for the new configuration. See “Adding text” on page 20 if you need help with entering alphabetic characters.
6. Tap **OK** twice.
7. Tap **Config**. The **Exam Mode Configuration** screen appears.
8. Select those functions you want disabled, and make sure that those functions you don’t want disabled are not selected.
9. When you have finished selecting the functions to be disabled, tap **OK**.  
If you want to activate exam mode now, continue with “Activating Exam Mode” below.

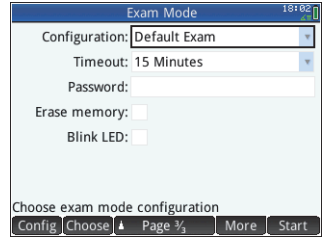
## Activating Exam Mode


When you activate exam mode you prevent users of the calculator from accessing those features you have disabled. The features become accessible again at the end of the specified time-out period or on entry of the exam-mode password, whichever occurs sooner.

To activate exam mode:



1. If the **Exam Mode** screen is not showing, press , tap  and tap .








2. If a configuration other than **Default Exam** is required, choose it from the **Configuration** list.
3. Select a time-out period from the **Timeout** list.  
Note that 8 hours is the maximum period. If you are preparing to supervise a student examination, make sure that the time-out period chosen is greater than the duration of the examination.
4. Enter a password of between 1 and 10 characters. The password must be entered if you—or another user—wants to cancel exam mode before the time-out period has elapsed.
5. If you want to erase the memory of the calculator, select **Erase memory**. This will erase all user entries and return the calculator to its factory default settings.
6. If you want the exam mode indicator to flash periodically while the calculator is in exam mode, select **Blink LED**.
7. Using the supplied USB cable, connect a student's calculator.  
Insert the micro-A connector—the one with the rectangular end—into the USB port on the sending calculator, and the other connector into the USB port on the receiving calculator.
8. To activate the configuration on an attached calculator, tap . The **Exam Mode** screen closes. The connected calculator is now in exam mode, with the specified disabled features not accessible to the user of that calculator.

- Repeat from step 7 for each calculator that needs to have its functionality limited.

## Canceling exam mode




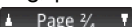


If you want to cancel exam mode before the set time period has elapsed, you will need to enter the password for the current exam mode activation.

- Connect the calculator that is in exam mode.
- If the **Exam Mode** screen is not showing, press  , tap  and tap .
- Enter the password for the current exam mode activation and tap  twice.

## Modifying configurations




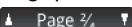
Exam mode configurations can be changed. You can also restore the default configuration.

### To change a configuration

- If the **Exam Mode** screen is not showing, press  , tap  and tap .
- Select the configuration you want to change from the Configuration list.
- Tap .
- Make whatever changes are necessary and then tap .

### Deleting configurations

You cannot delete the default exam configuration (even if you have modified it). You can only delete those that you have created. To delete a configuration:

- If the **Exam Mode** screen is not showing, press  , tap  and tap .
- Select the configuration you want to delete from the **Configuration** list.

3. Tap **More** and choose `Delete`.
4. When asked to confirm the deletion, tap **OK** or press **Enter**.





## Glossary

---

app	A small application, designed for the study of one or more related topics or to solve problems of a particular type. The built-in apps are Geometry, Function, Solve, Statistics 1Var, Statistics 2Var, Inference, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Finance, Linear Solver, Triangle Solver, Linear Explorer, Quadratic Explorer, Trig Explorer, Spreadsheet, Advanced Graphing and Datastreamer. An app can be filled with the data and solutions for a specific problem. It is reusable (like a program, but easier to use) and it records all your settings and definitions.
button	An option or menu shown at the bottom of the screen and activated by touch. Compare with key.
CAS	Computer Algebra System. Use the CAS to perform calculations in symbolic mode. Such calculations always return exact answers (unlike calculations done in Home view, which yield numeric approximations). You can share results and variables between the CAS and Home view (and vice versa).
catalog	A collection of items, such as matrices, lists, programs and the like. New items you create are saved to a catalog, and you choose a specific item from a catalog to work on it. A special catalog that lists the apps is called the Application Library.

command	An operation for use in programs. Commands can store results in variables, but do not display results.
expression	A number, variable, or algebraic expression (numbers plus functions) that produces a value.
function	An operation, possibly with arguments, that returns a result. It does not store results in variables. The arguments must be enclosed in parentheses and separated with commas.
Home view	The basic starting point of the calculator. Most calculations can be done in Home view. However, such calculations only return numeric approximations. For exact results, you can use the CAS. You can share results and variables between the CAS and Home view (and vice versa).
input form	A screen where you can set values or choose options. Another name for a dialog box.
key	A key on the keypad (as opposed to a button, which appears on the screen and needs to be tapped to be activated).
Library	A collection of items, more specifically, the the apps. See also <i>catalog</i> .
list	A set of values separated by commas and enclosed in braces. Lists are commonly used to enter statistical data and to evaluate a function with multiple values. Created and manipulated by the List Editor and.
matrix	A two-dimensional array of values separated by commas and enclosed in nested square brackets. Created and manipulated by the Matrix Editor. Vectors are also handled by the Matrix Editor.

menu	A choice of options given in the display. It can appear as a list or as a set of touch buttons across the bottom of the display.
note	Text that you write in the Note Editor. It can be a general, standalone note or a note specific to an app.
program	A reusable set of instructions that you record using the Program Editor.
variable	A name given to an object—such as a number, list, matrix, graphic and so on—to assist in later retrieving it. The  command assigns a variable, and the object can be retrieved by selecting the associated variable from the variables menu (  ).
vector	A one-dimensional array of values separated by commas and enclosed in single square brackets. Created and manipulated by the Matrix Editor.
views	The six primary environments for creating and manipulating apps: Plot, Plot Setup, Numeric, Numeric Setup, Symbolic, and Symbolic Setup.





## Troubleshooting

---

### Calculator not responding

If the calculator does not respond, you should first try to reset it. This is much like restarting a PC. It cancels certain operations, restores certain conditions, and clears temporary memory locations. However, it does not clear stored data (variables, apps, programs, etc.).




#### To reset

Press and hold  and  simultaneously, and then release them.

If this doesn't work, you should restore factory settings (see below).

#### To restore factory settings













If the calculator does not respond to a reset (see above), you should restore factory settings. This will entirely erase the calculator's memory. *You will lose everything you have stored.*

1. Press and hold  then  and then .
2. Release all keys in the reverse order.

### If the calculator does not turn on.

If the HP Prime does not turn on, follow the steps below until the calculator turns on. You may find that the calculator turns on before you have completed the procedure. If the calculator still does not turn on, contact Customer Support for further information.

1. Press and hold  for 10 seconds, then release.

2. Press and hold  and  simultaneously, then release , then release .
3. Press and hold ,  and  simultaneously. Release , then release , and then release .
4. Remove the batteries, press and hold  for 10 seconds, then put the batteries back in and press .

## Operating limits

**Operating temperature:** 0° to 45°C (32° to 113°F).

**Storage temperature:** -20° to 65°C (-4° to 149°F).

**Operating and storage humidity:** 90% relative humidity at 40°C (104°F) maximum. *Avoid getting the calculator wet.*

Battery operates at 6.0V dc, 80mA maximum.

## Status messages

Message	Meaning
Bad Argument Type	Incorrect input for this operation.
Bad Argument Value	The value is out of range for this operation.
Infinity error	Math exception, such as 1/0.
Insufficient Memory	You must recover some memory to continue operation. Delete one or more customized apps, matrices, lists, notes, or programs.
Insufficient Statistics Data	Not enough data points for the calculation. For two-variable statistics there must be two columns of data, and each column must have at least four numbers.

<b>Message</b>	<b>Meaning (Continued)</b>
Invalid Dimension	Array argument had wrong dimensions.
Invalid Statistics Data	Need two columns with equal numbers of data values.
Invalid Syntax	The function or command you entered does not include the proper arguments or order of arguments. The delimiters (parentheses, commas, periods, and semi-colons) must also be correct. Look up the function name in the index to find its proper syntax.
Name Conflict	The   (where) function attempted to assign a value to the variable of integration or summation index.
No equations checked	You must enter and check an equation in the Symbolic view before entering the Plot view.
Receive Error	Problem with data reception from another calculator. Re-send the data.
Too Few Arguments	The command requires more arguments than you supplied.
Undefined Name	The global variable named does not exist.
Undefined Result	The calculation has a mathematically undefined result (such as 0/0).
Out of Memory	You must recover a lot of memory to continue operation. Delete one or more customized apps, matrices, lists, notes, or programs.



## Product Regulatory Information

---

### Federal Communications Commission Notice

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio or television technician for help.

#### **Modifications**

The FCC requires the user to be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Hewlett-Packard Company may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### **Cables**

Connections to this device must be made with shielded cables with metallic RFI/EMI connector hoods to maintain compliance with FCC rules and regulations. Applicable only for products with connectivity to PC/laptop.

#### **Declaration of Conformity for products Marked with FCC**

**Logo, United States Only**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

If you have questions about the product that are not related to this declaration, write to:

Hewlett-Packard Company  
P.O. Box 692000, Mail Stop 530113  
Houston, TX 77269-2000

For questions regarding this FCC declaration, write to:

Hewlett-Packard Company  
P.O. Box 692000, Mail Stop 510101 Houston, TX 77269-2000 or call HP at 281-514-3333

To identify your product, refer to the part, series, or model number located on the product.

**Canadian Notice**

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

**Avis Canadien**

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

# European Union Regulatory Notice

Products bearing the CE marking comply with the following EU Directives:

- Low Voltage Directive 2006/95/EC
- EMC Directive 2004/108/EC
- Ecodesign Directive 2009/125/EC, where applicable

CE compliance of this product is valid if powered with the correct CE-marked AC adapter provided by HP.

Compliance with these directives implies conformity to applicable harmonized European standards (European Norms) that are listed in the EU Declaration of Conformity issued by HP for this product or product family and available (in English only) either within the product documentation or at the following web site: [www.hp.eu/certificates](http://www.hp.eu/certificates) (type the product number in the search field).

The compliance is indicated by one of the following conformity markings placed on the product:



For non-telecommunications products and for EU harmonized telecommunications products, such as Bluetooth® within power class below 10mW.



For EU non-harmonized telecommunications products (If applicable, a 4-digit notified body number is inserted between CE and !).

Please refer to the regulatory label provided on the product.

The point of contact for regulatory matters is:  
Hewlett-Packard GmbH, Dept./MS: HQ-TRE, Herrenberger Strasse 140, 71034 Boeblingen, GERMANY.

## Japanese Notice

この装置は、クラスB情報技術装置です。この装置は、家庭環境で使用することを目的としていますが、この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して使用されると、受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。

取扱説明書に従って正しい取り扱いをして下さい。 VCCI-B

## Korean Class Notice

B급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기기)	이 기기는 가정용(B급)으로 전자파적합등록을 한 기기로서 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.
-----------------------	--

## Disposal of Waste Equipment by Users in Private Household in the European Union



This symbol on the product or on its packaging indicates that this product must not be disposed of with your other household waste. Instead, it is your responsibility to dispose of your waste equipment by handing it over to a designated collection point for the recycling of waste electrical and electronic equipment. The separate collection and recycling of your waste equipment at the time of disposal will help to conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service or the shop where you purchased the product.



# Chemical Substances

HP is committed to providing our customers with information about the chemical substances in our products as needed to comply with legal requirements such as REACH (*Regulation EC No 1907/2006 of the European Parliament and the Council*). A chemical information report for this product can be found at:

<http://www.hp.com/go/reach>

Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply  
 This calculator's Memory Backup battery may contain perchlorate and may require special handling when recycled or disposed in California.

**产品中有毒有害物质或元素的名称及含量**  
 根据中国《电子信息产品污染控制管理办法》

部件名称	有毒有害物质或元素					
	铅 (Pb)	汞 (Hg)	镉 (Cd)	六价铬 (Cr(VI))	多溴联苯 (PBB)	多溴二苯醚 (PBDE)
PCA	X	O	O	O	O	O
外框盖 / 字键	O	O	O	O	O	O

O : 表示该有毒有害物质在该部件所有均质材料中的含量均在SJ/T 11363-2006标准规定的限量要求以下。

X : 表示该有毒有害物质至少在该部件的某一均质材料中的含量超出SJ/T 11363-2006标准规定的限量要求。

表中标有“X”的所有部件都符合欧盟RoHS法规

“欧洲议会和欧盟理事会2003年1月27日关于电子电器设备中限制使用某些有害物质的2002/95/EC号指令”

注：环保使用期限的参考标识取决于产品正常工作的温度和湿度等条件



# Index

## A

absolute value 303  
add 299  
Advanced Graphing 197  
Advanced Graphing app variables  
    summary 486  
algebraic entry 31  
angle measure 28  
annunciators 12  
Ans (last answer) 36  
antilogarithm  
    common 300  
    natural 300  
applet  
    key 17  
applet views  
    canceling operations in 10  
app  
    attaching notes 296  
    commands 410  
    definition of 479  
    delete 82  
    deleting 297  
    Explorer 217  
    Finance 203  
    Function 119  
    functions 460  
    HP Apps 79, 471  
    Inference 167  
    library 81  
    Linear Solver 211  
    open 81  
    Parametric 187  
    Polar 193  
    reset 81  
    resetting 296  
    sending and receiving 296  
    Sequence 199

    sorting 81, 82  
    sorting the app list 297  
    Triangle Solver 213  
app functions 502  
    Common 468  
    Finance 464  
    Function 460  
    Inference 464  
    Linear Solver 466  
    Statistics 1Var 462  
    Statistics 2Var 463  
    Triangle Solver 467  
app variables  
    list of 484  
    Mode 455  
    Numeric view 445  
    Plot view 437  
    Results 456  
    Symbolic view 441  
app views  
    Symbolic view 83  
arc cosine 301  
arc sine 301  
arc tangent 301  
area  
    between curves 128  
arguments  
    conventions 355

## B

backspace 18  
bad argument 510  
bar plot 149  
battery indicator 14  
block commands 412  
Boolean operators 18  
box-and-whisker plot 149  
branch commands 413  
butons  
    menu 17  
buttons  
    command 17

## C

- calculus functions 306
- CAS 479
- CAS variables 495
- catalog 479
- clearing
  - an app 296
  - characters 34
  - display 34
- clone
  - memory 381
- cobweb graph 199
- coefficient of determination 163
- command button 17
- commands
  - app 410
  - assignment 413
  - block 412
  - branch 413
  - definition of 410, 480
  - drawing 414
  - I/O 422
  - loop 426
  - matrix 429
  - string 431
  - test 433
  - variable 435
- complex number 307
- complex number functions 307
- complex numbers 38
  - storing 39
- confidence interval 168
- confidence intervals 180
- constants 307–308
  - mathematical 307
  - physical 331, 509
  - program 508
- context sensitive menu 17
- copying
  - display 35
  - notes 369
  - programs 396

- correlation coefficient 163
- covariance 161
- critical value(s) displayed 170

## D

- data set definition 154
- DataStreamer 80
- debugging programs 394
- decimal
  - changing format 28
- default value, returning to 18
- define your own fit 160
- defining functions 325
- definite integral
  - definition of 306
- degree symbol 18
- delete 18
- delete an app 82
- deleting
  - lists 336
  - matrices 346
  - notes 364
  - programs 386
  - statistical data 146, 158
- derivatives
  - definition of 306
- determinant 355
- display
  - annunciator line 12
  - clearing 11
  - engineering 28
  - fixed 28
  - fraction 28
  - history 35
  - line 35
  - matrices 349
  - one element in a list 338
  - one element in a matrix 349
  - parts of 12
  - scientific 28
  - soft key labels 12
  - standard 28
- divide 299

DMS format 18  
drawing commands 414–421

## E

editing  
    lists 333  
    matrices 346  
    notes 363  
    programs 385  
editors 39  
Eigen values 356  
Eigen vectors 356  
element  
    storing 350  
engineering number format 28  
entry methods 31  
equations  
    definition of 133  
Explorer apps 217  
exponent  
    fit 159  
    minus 1 313  
    raising to 302  
exponential 300  
expression  
    definition of 480  
extremum 130

## F

factorial (!) 319  
Finance app 203  
Finance app variables  
    Numeric view 449–451  
    summary 494  
finding statistical values 343  
fixed number format 28  
flick 14  
format  
    hexagesimal 22  
fractions 37  
full-precision display 28  
function  
    definition of 480  
    entering 32

    syntax 306

Function app 119  
Function app functions 460  
Function app variables  
    results 456  
    summary 485  
functions  
    app 502  
    area 128  
    creating your own 325  
    definition of 119  
    intersection point 127  
    Math menu 497  
    slope 128  
    tracing 122

## G

Geometry app variables  
    summary 485  
gestures 14  
glossary 479  
graph  
    bar 149  
    box-and-whisker 149  
    cobweb 199  
    histogram 148  
    line 149  
    normal probability 149  
    pareto 149  
    stairsteps 199  
    statistical data  
        one-variable 148  
graphics  
    copying into an app 369  
    storing and recalling 414  
Greek characters 18

## H

header 12  
hexagesimal format 22  
histogram 148  
Home 11  
    calculating in 31  
    reusing lines 35

- settings 27
- variables 371, 483
- variables categories 377

Home variables

- list of 483

horizontal zoom 99, 111

hyperbolic trig 56–??, 56–??, 57–??, 312–313

hypothesis

- alternative hypothesis 168
- tests 168

**I**

I/O commands 422

implied multiplication 33

importing graphics 369

inference

- confidence intervals 180
- hypothesis tests 173
- One-Proportion Z-Interval 182
- One-Proportion Z-Test 175
- One-Sample T-Interval 184
- One-Sample T-Test 178
- One-Sample Z-Interval 180
- One-Sample Z-Test 173
- Two-Proportion Z-Interval 183
- Two-Proportion Z-Test 176
- Two-Sample T-Interval 184
- Two-Sample T-Test 179
- Two-Sample Z Test 174
- Two-Sample Z-Interval 181

Inference app variables

- Numeric view 446
- Results 460
- summary 490

infinite result 510

insufficient memory 510

insufficient statistics data 510

integer functions 313, ??–314, ??–317

integral

- definite 306

invalid

- dimension 510
- statistics data 510
- syntax 510

inverse hyperbolic trig 312

**K**

key 480

keyboard

- customizing 403
- editing keys 17
- entry keys 17
- inactive keys 23
- list
  - catalog keys 335

**L**

Library 480

line plot 149

Linear Explorer app variables

- summary 494

linear fit 159

Linear Solver

- app 211

Linear Solver app variables

- Numeric view 451
- Results 457
- summary 494

list

- deleting 336
- displaying one element 337
- editing 335
- evaluating 337
- functions 338
- list variables 333
- sending and receiving 338, 381
- storing one element 338
- syntax 339
- variables 333

logarithm 300

logarithmic

- fit 159
- functions 300

loop commands 426–429

- loop functions 317
- lowercase characters 366
- M**
- mantissa 322
- Math functions
  - calculus 306
  - complex number 307
  - distribution 308–312
  - hyperbolic trig 312
  - list 317
  - logical operators 324
  - loop 317
  - Math menu summary 497
  - on keyboard 299
  - polynomial 318
  - probability 319
  - real-number 320
  - test 324–??
  - trigonometry 324
- math functions
  - menu 25
- math operations 31
  - enclosing arguments 33
  - in scientific notation 22
  - negative numbers in 33
- math templates 21
- matrices
  - adding rows 347
  - addition and subtraction 350
  - arithmetic operations in 350
  - column norm 355
  - commands 429–431
  - condition number 355
  - create identity 359
  - deleting 346
  - deleting columns 347
  - deleting rows 347
  - determinant 355
  - displaying 349
  - displaying matrix elements 349
  - dividing by a square matrix 352
  - dot product 355
  - functions 354–359
  - inverting 352
  - matrix calculations 345
  - multiplying and dividing by scalar 351
  - multiplying by vector 351
  - negating elements 353
  - raised to a power 352
  - sending or receiving 350
  - singular value decomposition 359
  - size 358
  - storing matrix elements 350
  - swap row 431
  - transposing 360
  - variables 345
- maximum real number 34, 308
- memory
  - clearing all 482
  - memory management 293
  - out of 511
  - saving 36
  - viewing available memory 372
- menu
  - context sensitive 17
- menu button 17
- menu lists
  - searching 24
- menu shortcuts 24
- minimum real number 308
- minutes symbol 18
- mixed numbers 37
- modes
  - angle measure 28
  - decimal mark 29
  - number format 28
- Modes app variables 455
- modes See settings 27
- multiplication 299
  - implied 33

## N

name conflict 510  
natural exponential 56, 300, 313  
natural log plus 1 313  
natural logarithm 300  
navigation 14  
negation 303  
negative numbers 33  
no equations checked 511  
normal probability plot 149  
Normal Z-distribution, confidence intervals 180

note

- copying 368
- creating 364
- creating in an app 116, 365
- editing 365–369
- importing from note catalog 368

*n*th root 302

number format

- engineering 28
- fixed 28
- scientific 28
- Standard 28

Numeric view app variables 436

## O

off

- automatic 11
- power 10

on/cancel 10

One-Proportion Z-Interval 182

One-Proportion Z-Test 175

One-Sample T-Interval 184

One-Sample T-Test 178

One-Sample Z-Interval 180

One-Sample Z-Test 173

order of precedence 33

## P

$\pi$  308

Parametric app 187

- define the expression 188

- exploring the graph 190

parametric app variables 490

parentheses

- to close arguments 33
- to specify order of operation 33

pareto plot 149

permutations 319

physical constants 331, 509

pinch 15

plot

- box-and-whisker 149

- cobweb 199

- histogram 148

- line 149

- one-variable statistics 148

- pareto 149

- scatter 162

- stairsteps 199

- statistical data

  - one-variable 148

  - two-variable 162

Plot view app variables 437–441

Polar app 193

Polar app variables 492

power (*x* raised to *y*) 302

precedence 34

probability functions 319–320

## Q

Quadratic Explorer app variables

- summary 495

quadratic fit 160

quotes in strings 431

## R

random numbers 320

real number

- maximum 308

- minimum 308

real-number functions 320–324

receive error 511

reduced-row echelon form 360

regression 159



- reset app 81
- resetting
  - app 296
  - calculator 481
  - memory 482
- result
  - copying to edit line 35
  - reusing 35
- reverse polish notation, See RPN 29
- root
  - n*th 302
- RPN 29, 31, 41
- S**
- scientific number format 22, 28
- scrolling
  - move between relations in Trace mode 104
- searching
  - menu lists 24
  - speed searches 24
- seconds symbol 18
- sending
  - apps 296
  - lists 338
  - matrices 350
  - notes 369
  - programs 396
- Sequence app 199
  - graphs 199
- Sequence app variables
  - in menu map 492
- settings
  - Home 27
- shortcuts
  - menus 24
- Show button 33
- sign reversal 139
- sine 301
- sine cosine tangent 301
- Solve app function 462
- Solve app variables 486
  - summary 486
- sort apps 81, 82
- split-screen 116
- Spreadsheet app variables
  - summary 486
- square root 302
- stack 42
- stairsteps graph 199
- standard number format 28
- statistical data
  - two variable 162
- Statistics 1Var
  - data set definition 142
  - deleting data 146, 158
  - editing data 146, 158
  - histogram
    - range 150
    - width 150
  - inserting data 146, 158
  - plot types 148
  - sorting data 146, 158
- Statistics 1Var app variables
  - Results 456
  - summary 488
- Statistics 2Var
  - adjusting plotting scale 162
  - choosing the fit 159
  - curve fitting 159
  - define your own fit 160
  - defining a fit 159
  - defining a regression model 159
  - fit models 159, 160
  - getting started 153
  - inserting data 158
  - plot setup 164
  - predicted values 165
  - regression curve (fit) models 159
  - tracing a scatter plot 162
  - troubleshooting plots 166
- Statistics 2Var app variables
  - Results 458

- summary 489
- storing
  - a value in Home view 372
  - list element 338
  - matrix elements 350
- subtract 299
- syntax of functions 306
- T**
- tangent 301
- template key 21
- templates 18
- textbook entry 31
- the 335
- time 13
- times sign 33
- too few arguments 511
- touch options 14
- tracing
  - more than one curve 104
- transmitting
  - lists 338
  - matrices 350
  - notes 369
  - programs 396
- Triangle Solver app 213
- Triangle Solver app functions 467
- Triangle Solver app variables
  - Numeric view 452
  - summary 494
- Trig Explorer app variables
  - summary 495
- trigonometric
  - fit 160
  - functions 324
- Two-Proportion Z-Interval 183
- Two-Proportion Z-Test 176
- Two-Sample T-Interval 184
- Two-Sample T-test 179
- Two-Sample Z-Interval 181
- Two-Sample Z-Test 174

- U**
- undefined

- name 511
- result 511
- uppercase characters 366
- Upper-Tail Chi-Square probability 320
- Upper-Tail Normal Probability 320
- Upper-Tail Snedecor's F probability 320
- Upper-Tail Student's t-probability 320
- user defined
  - regression fit 160
  - variables 399
- user keyboard 403
- user variables 379, 495
- V**
- value
  - recall 374
- variable
  - definition of 481
- variables
  - App 436
  - CAS 54, 374, 495
  - categories 371, 377
  - Home 377
  - list of 483
  - Modes 455
  - Numeric view 445
  - Plot view 437
  - previous result (Ans) 35
  - Results 456–460
  - Symbolic view 441–444
  - types of in programming 436
  - use in calculations 374
  - User 436
  - user 495
- variables user 379
- variables, shared 374
- Vars menu 374
- vectors
  - definition of 345, 481

views

definition of 481

## **W**

warning symbol 23

Where command (|) 306

## **Z**

Z-Intervals 180–183

zoom

examples of 101